For my Parents

QAIDU AND THE RISE OF THE INDEPENDENT MONGOL STATE IN CENTRAL ASIA

Michal Biran

CURZON

First Published in 1997
by Curzon Press
15 The Quadrant, Richmond
Surrey, TW9 1BP

© 1997 Michal Biran

Typeset in Sabon by LaserScript Ltd, Mitcham
Printed and bound in Great Britain by
TJ International, Padstow, Cornwall

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record of this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalog record for this book has been requested

ISBN 0-7007-0631-3

Contents

List of maps and tables vi
Acknowledgements vii
Notes on dates and transliterations ix
List of abbreviations x

Introduction 1

I The Rise of Qaidu 19

II Qaidu and the Mongol *uluses* 37
1 The Confrontation with the Qa'an 37
2 The Ilkhans 57
3 The Jochids: the Golden Horde and the White Horde 63

III The Shift into the Chaghadaids: the Collapse of Qaidu's Kingdom after his Death 69

IV The Mongol State of Central Asia: Internal Administration under Qaidu 81
1 The Army 81
2 Religion 92
3 Economy and Administration 95

Conclusion 107

Maps 113
Genealogical Tables 119
Glossary of Chinese Characters 127
Notes 131
Bibliography 179
Index 191

List of Maps and Tables

Maps
1. The Mongol Empire after the death of Möngke's (1259)
2. Qaidu and the Yuan (1280)
3. The Yuan Dynasty and the Chaghadaid Khanate (1330)
4. Greater Iran in the thirteenth century
5. Turkestan under the Mongols

Genealogical Tables
1. The Great Khans
2. The House of Ögödei
3. The Chaghadaids
4. Yuan emperors
5. The Ilkhans
6. Khans of the Golden Horde

Acknowledgments

This study had its origins as an MA thesis which was submitted to the Hebrew University of Jerusalem in 1993. I would like first and foremost to thank my thesis advisors Prof. David Ayalon and Dr Reuven Amitai-Preiss. Both of them devoted much of their time, patience and knowledge to this study, guiding me in the complexities of the Mongol empire. I owe a special debt to Dr Amitai-Preiss for his close accompanying of this project from its very initial stages to its final version, for reading several drafts and always coming up with a good suggestion, and for his permission to use a map and tables from his own book *Mongols and Mamluks* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1995). Special thanks are also due to Prof. Michael Zand, who steered me through the picturesque metaphors of the Persian historians as well as through the publishing world. For my sinological education I owe a great debt to the continuous support and assistance of Prof. Irene Eber (Jerusalem). In my research I have benefited greatly from the advice and comments of Prof. Herbert Franke (Munich) and Prof. Liu Yingsheng, the head of the Institute for Study of the Yuan at Nanjing University, China. Prof. Peter K. Bol (Cambridge, Mass.) and Prof. Elizabeth Endicott-West (Middlebury) kindly answered my questions about the *wenji*. In addition, I am indebted to Prof. Endicott-West for her help in transcribing the Mongolian names, and would also like to thank her, as well as Dr Peter Jackson (Keele) and Prof. Beatrice Forbes Manz (Boston), for having read the whole draft of the manuscript and adding many valuable suggestions and comments.

I would also like to thank Dr Shirin Akiner, who introduced the manuscript to the publisher.

Thanks go also to Stephanie Nakkash, who translated the first version of this study into English; to Mark Hamilton, who edited my

English; and to Michal Kidron and Tami Sofer, who produced the maps. Needless to say, despite the help of so many qualified people, and many others I do not have a place to record, I alone am responsible for the study's shortcomings.

I am grateful to the staffs of the following institutions for assisting my research: the Jewish National and University Library (Jerusalem), Shandong University's library (Jinan, China), Nanjing University's library; the Harvard-Yenching library (Cambridge, Mass.) and the library of the Research Institute for Inner Asian Studies at Indiana University (Bloomington).

I would also like to express my gratitude to the following bodies that assisted in financing the research: the Institute for Asian and African Studies, Hebrew University of Jerusalem; the Israeli Academy of Science and Humanities and the Israel Foreign Ministry, whose grant allowed me to spend a year in China for working on this study; the Rothchsild Foundation that financed the translation of the first version of this study into English and whose grant, together with a Fulbright fellowship, enabled me to spend a year at Harvard University in which most of the revision of this work took place.

The final gratitude goes to my husband, Iftah, who went after me to China for this study. His wise advice and useful criticism were as indispensable as his continuous encouragement and support.

Note on Dates and Transliterations

Dates are generally given according to the Gregorian calendar. *Hijri* and Chinese dates are given only when they have a specific importance to the study.

Names and terms of Mongolian origin have been transliterated according to Antoine Mostaert's scheme as modified by F.W. Cleaves, except for these deviations: č is rendered as ch; š is sh; ğ is gh; and ǰ is j. I have not changed the q into a kh except in the word Khan and its derivatives, which look more familiar to the English reader in this fashion. * to the left of a name represents an uncertain transliteration.

Chinese names and terms have been transliterated according to the Pinyin system. Wherever relevant, the Chinese form of a Mongolian name was added in parentheses after its Mongolian form.

Arabic words, titles, and names have been transliterated according to the system used in *International Journal of Middle Eastern Studies*. Words and names of Persian origin have been transliterated as if they were Arabic (e.g. Juwaynī, not Juvaynī, ᶜAlīzādah not ᶜAlīzāde). Common words and place names, such as sultan, mamluk, Bukhara, Kashgar, etc., are written without diacritical points.

List of Abbreviations

CAJ	*Central Asiatic Journal*
EI1	*Encyclopedia of Islam*, 1st edition. Leiden and London, 1913–36 (Rpt. 1987).
EI2	*Encyclopedia of Islam*, 2nd edition. Leiden and London. 1960–
EIr	*Encyclopedia Iranica*. London, Boston and Hanley, 1985–
HJAS	*Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies*
POFEH	*Papers of Far Eastern History*
YS	Song, Lian. *Yuan shi*. Rpt. Beijing, 1976.

Introduction

Qaidu (1236–1301), one of the great Mongol Khans, is better known as a rebel than as a state builder. Grandson of Chinggis Khan's designated heir, Ögödei (r. 1229–41), Qaidu became an active player in the Mongol arena only after the house of Ögödei lost its supremacy to the Toluids, descendants of Chinggis's younger son. The coup of the Toluids culminated in 1251 with the ascension of Tolui's son, Möngke, to the post of the Qa'an, the Great Khan of the Mongol empire.[1] It was accompanied by purges of many of the Ögödeids, who had to give up most of their army and territories. Against this background Qaidu strove to revive the Ögödeid cause. By virtue of his political and military skills, from the 1270s onward Qaidu succeeded in establishing a kingdom of the house of Ögödei in Central Asia and in becoming a formidable adversary to the Great Khan Qubilai, Möngke's brother and successor (1260–94) and his successor, Temür Öljeitu (1294–1307). Qaidu's activities undermined the Qa'an's authority, shifted the balance of power in the Mongol empire and accelerated its dismemberment. Though the house of Ögödei departed from the stage of history after Qaidu's death, the Mongol state that he established in Central Asia, a state independent of the Qa'an's authority, survived him under the rule of the Chaghadaids, his erstwhile rivals, allies, and successors.

We know hardly anything about Qaidu as an individual. The sources left us a sketch of his physical appearance, according to which he was of medium height and build, his beard consisted only of nine grey hairs, and (unlike his father and grandfather) he never took wine, kumyss, or salt.[2] The sources also record that Qaidu preferred Islam to other religions, held discussions with the learned and wise and used to rise every night before dawn and meditate. He is also credited for his kindness and generosity.[3] Apart from those general details, the

only anecdotes that seem to reveal glimpses of Qaidu's character are those that are related to his daughters, the energetic Qutulun and her unfortunate sister Qutuchin. Qutulun, Qaidu's favourite, took part in her father's campaigns and excelled over most of his generals. Qaidu allowed her to chose her own husband, and she declared she would only marry the one who would win her by beating her in battle. Many princes responded to the challenge, but were unable to vanquish the damsel, and had to pay with many horses for their defeat. Even when a real prince charming appeared, and the parents begged the girl to allow him to win so that she could marry him, Qutulun could not resist the temptation to show her power. Only when her long celibacy gave rise to rumors about her relations with her father, did she choose to marry his steward.[4]

Qutuchin married earlier, but when she was pregnant her husband fell in love with a slave girl. The princess found out, and while rebuking her husband was bitten by him and died on the spot. Qaidu's sons demanded to avenge their sister's death and forced him to summon his son-in-law. The latter's father sent him in chains to Qaidu's court. The sons insisted on killing him, but Qaidu asked if this could benefit their sister, and suggested instead to set him free due to the important services his father had provided him in the past. The son-in-law's punishment was reduced to 100 lashes, and he was given another of Qaidu's daughters to marry since Qaidu's sons "could not allow a stranger to take their sister's place."[5]

While Qutulun's story can be viewed as representing Qaidu as a typical nomadic chief, enchanted by fights and horses, who gives plenty of freedom to the women in his family,[6] her sister's fate reveals a pragmatic Qaidu who, unlike previous Mongols, is not motivated by revenge and who care little for a woman's life.[7] The two anecdotes, however, resemble folk stories so much that the best interpretation of them seems to be that legends and myths began to circulate around Qaidu during his lifetime and certainly after his death.[8]

Yet myths are not necessarily absent from the way in which Qaidu is treated by modern historians. Modern scholarship, Western and Chinese, repeatedly presents Qaidu as a defender of traditional Mongol nomadic values against the trend of sedentarization and identification with the local, non-Mongol sedentary populations, represented by Qubilai and to some extent by the Ilkhans, the Mongol rulers of Iran. Qaidu is also portrayed as an aspiring rival Qa'an to Qubilai, laying claim to this position by virtue of the rights of the house of Ögödei to the throne.[9] In other words, modern research

presents the confrontation between Qaidu and the other Mongol branches on one hand as an ideological conflict, and on the other as a struggle for the office of Qa'an. Those evaluations, however, appear in studies dealing mainly with the Mongol empire in general or with Yuan China, that discuss Qaidu only in passing. To the best of my knowledge, no attempt has been made to focus on Qaidu alone while thoroughly integrating information from East and West.[10] While I will certainly deal with the ideological questions, I believe that it is worthwhile examining the more practical aspects of Qaidu's activities, such as the economic and territorial considerations behind his revolt, and that this will lead to the conclusion that the Chaghadaid Khanate in Central Asia was in a real sense Qaidu's legacy.

The Sources

The lacuna in the research on Qaidu, and on the Mongol state in Central Asia in general, derives from the limited nature of the sources dealing with this region, which is in a sharp contrast to the detailed chronicles of the Mongol states in China and Persia. The only work known to have been written in Qaidu's territory is Jamāl Qarshī's *Mulḥaqāt al-ṣurāḥ* ("Supplement to the *ṣurāḥ*"), written in Kashgar in the first years of the fourteenth century independently of the Mongol court. This Arabic book was intended as an appendix to Qarshī's Persian commentary (*ṣurāḥ*) to the famous lexicon of Jawharī, that he had translated from Arabic into Persian. It contains historical information on various dynasties in Central Asia,[11] including the Mongols, together with biographical references to prominent Central Asian sheikhs and scholars and descriptions of various cities. Some of the material has a legendary quality, but Qarshī also provides valuable historical and chronological information.[12] Despite the importance of Qarshī's book, it is, as its name implies, merely an appendix to a dictionary, and cannot substitute for an orderly chronicle.

For a more complete picture of Qaidu's life, one must gather information from sources that were written in other parts of the Mongol empire, mainly in the Toluid states in China and Persia, and elsewhere, under the Mamluks in Egypt, or by European and other travellers. In collating this material, the limitations of these sources must be taken into full consideration. Both Persian and Chinese works were written by people who saw Qaidu as a rebel and enemy, and are consequently highly tendentious. Moreover, and this is especially true

for the Chinese sources, their information is mostly limited to those activities of Qaidu that directly influenced their own country. Other sources which there is no reason to suspect were prejudiced against Qaidu (such as Mamluk or Armenian texts) lack full and detailed information about him, although their sparse data is valuable. Even more important is the information preserved in the travelogues, prominent among which is that of Marco Polo, who dedicated a long chapter to "King Caidu, The King of Great Turkey."[13] But even for travellers, Qaidu's realm was only a station in their journey, not a prominent destination.

The most important Persian sources for Qaidu's life are Rashīd al-Dīn's *Jāmi[c] al-tawārīkh* ("Collection of Histories") and Waṣṣāf's work, known usually simply as *Ta'rīkh-i Waṣṣāf* ("The History of Waṣṣāf"), both completed in the first decades of the fourteenth century. Rashīd al-Dīn (1247–1318), a vizier in the Ilkhanid realm who prepared his work at the request of his Mongol patrons, wrote a sweeping universal history, the major part of which was dedicated to the Mongols. This part included not only a history of the Ilkhanate but also the history of the Mongol and Turkic tribes, and the life of Chinggis Khan and his successors up to the first years of the fourteenth century. The information about Qaidu is scattered among those different parts. As a devout supporter of the Toluid line, Rashīd al-Dīn stressed the illegitimacy of Qaidu's actions, portraying him as a rebel and abrogator of the *jasagh*[14], though even he had to acknowledge his merits.[15] Waṣṣāf, on the other hand, though also an official in the Ilkhanate realm and Rashīd al-Dīn's protégé, compiled a very different history. His work, covering the years 1257–1328, purports to be a continuation of the work of the great Persian historian Juwaynī.[16] Though his focus was on Iran, Waṣṣāf dedicated considerable space to the Mongols in Central Asia. Waṣṣāf is much more sympathetic towards Qaidu, perhaps counting on the fact that his over-flowery style would prove incomprehensible to the Mongol rulers.[17] Together with Waṣṣāf, Qāshānī's *Ta'rīkh-i Ūljāitū*, compiled in the 1320s, is of special importance for the study of the turmoil in Central Asia following Qaidu's death. Among later, post-fourteenth-century Persian sources, Mīrkhwānd, as noted already by Barthold, is of distinct importance, since he preserved unique information about Qaidu that is unavailable in earlier sources.[18]

The most important Chinese source for the study of Qaidu is the official history of the Yuan (the Mongol dynasty in China), the *Yuan*

shi, compiled about 1370 during the first two years of the subsequent Ming dynasty.[19] Despite his importance to Yuan history, as a rebel Qaidu was ineligible to have his own biography in this work.[20] Yet information about him is scattered among the different chapters of the *Yuan Shi*, mostly among the annals and the biographies sections. The literary collections of Yuan scholar-officials sometimes add important contemporary data about Qaidu. Yet these sources, mostly epitaphs dedicated to generals who fought against Qaidu, seek, just like the biographies in the *Yuan shi*, to praise their subjects and should not always be taken at face value.

Later Chinese scholarship certainly contributed to our knowledge of Qaidu. The first attempt to collate the references to Qaidu scattered through the *Yuan Shi* was done by Chen Bangzhan (d. 1636) in his 1606 work, *Yuanshi jishi benmo* (The *Official History of the Yuan* retold in topical format), which is considered to be the most important contribution to Yuan history compiled under the Ming (1368–1644).[21]

The study of Yuan history flourished in the Qing period (1644–1911) both because the Manchus, themselves foreign invaders, took an interest in the fate of the first nomadic dynasty that conquered all of China, and out of recognition that the *Yuan shi* does not exhaust the history of the period, not least because of its hasty composition. Among the Qing works that devoted a biography to Qaidu, two types of studies can be discerned: the first includes works based only on Chinese sources such as the books of Shao Yuanping, (ca. 1664); of Wei Yuan (1794–1857); and of Zeng Lian, (b.1860), whose work is highly dependent on Wei's. In addition to the *Yuan shi* these writers used Yuan period writings of many kinds (travel accounts, collections of documents, literary collections, etc.), the *Secret History of the Mongols* and works on dynasties preceding the Yuan.[22] The second type includes works that also integrated "Western" information on the Mongols such as the books of Hong Jun (1840–93), Tu Ji (1856–1921) and Ke Shaomin (1850–1933).[23] The book by Hong Jun, who served as a Chinese diplomat in Berlin and St Petersburg, is merely a collection of passages translated into Chinese mostly from the works of Rashīd al-Dīn (in Russian translation) and of d'Ohsson's classic study on the Mongols,[24] accompanied by notes on whether or not they correspond to passages appearing in the *Yuan shi*.[25] Tu Ji's book, the most detailed work on the history of the Mongol nation in Chinese, is important above all for its attempt to collate and integrate fragments of information from various Chinese sources. It is weaker on Western

sources. Although Tu Ji, who relied heavily on Hong Jun, quotes Marco Polo and nineteenth-century European scholarship (e.g. d'Ohsson, Howorth, Curtin), he had read them only in the sometimes inaccurate Chinese translations prepared for him. He did not have access to primary sources not written in Chinese. Yet his biography of Qaidu is the most comprehensive one from China.[26] In 1921 Ke Shaomin's *Xin Yuan shi* ("The New Official History of the Yuan") took its place among the official histories alongside the *Yuan shi*. Among its sources are Erdman's German translation of Rashīd al-Dīn's work, d'Ohsson's book (both in translation to Chinese) and Japanese scholarship. He refers extensively to the works of Wei Yuan and Hong Jun, but unlike Tu Ji, does not bother to document his sources.[27] In the biographies that they devoted to Qaidu, the Qing dynasty historians considerably augmented the information on Qaidu, but not always accurately. I have, accordingly, cited the Ming and Qing works in the footnotes only when they can supplement the Yuan sources.

Among modern studies, apart from the classic works of Barthold,[28] one should mention especially Dardess' article, "From Mongol Empire to Yuan Dynasty: Changing Forms of imperial rule in Mongolia and Central Asia", which reviews Yuan efforts to control Mongolia and Central Asia and their significance to Yuan legitimation, and the various articles by Liu Yingsheng that combine Chinese and Muslim information to explicate Yuan-Chaghadai relations.[29]

The purpose of this study

This book attempts to put together a substantial portion of the various pieces of information on Qaidu that appear in the sources. Its aim is to construct through systematical comparison as complete a picture as possible of Qaidu's deeds and motives. It will also sketch some aspects of the internal administration of the independent Mongol state in Central Asia in its formative stages under Qaidu. On the foundation of this picture I will then attempt to assess Qaidu's impact on the Mongol world of his time, and to examine the fate of the entire Ögödeid *ulus*[30] after it lost its leading position. I will also reexamine the prevailing views of Qaidu in the literature and try to reinterpret his objectives, i.e., whether he indeed aspired to the position of Qa'an, and if he was indeed a defender of nomadic values.

In view of the nature of the sources it is clear that parts of the picture will be missing, that other parts will not fit, and that sometimes the connections among the pieces of information will be open to differing interpretations. Presumably, however, a correlation of the Arabic, Persian and Chinese sources will provide a clearer picture than the one regnant today in the study of Qaidu's deeds and motives, of thirteenth-century Central Asia and of the Mongol empire in its stages of disintegration.

Historical Background

A short sketch of the relations among the major Mongol *uluses* on the eve of Qaidu's rise to power will provide a useful background for Qaidu's activities. This outline covers the period from the death of Chinggis (1227) to the death of Möngke (1259). One should bear in mind, however, that just as in the case of Qaidu, the mostly Toluid sources for this period retained the "official version" of the winners and should therefore be treated with a certain amount of skepticism.[31]

Chinggis and his successor Qa'ans were the supreme rulers of the Mongol empire. Yet according to the Mongol tradition this empire was a joint property of the whole family of Chinggis Khan, among whom the Qa'an was only *primus inter pares*. The conquered lands were regarded as a common pool of wealth, that should benefit all the family members, and this principle was expressed in granting to individual princes local rights, mainly revenues from the conquered areas or lordship over a certain segment of the population. The collegiality of the empire was further manifested in the *tamma* system of the organization of the armies: the prince in command of an army detailed to conquer new territories was accompanied by representative of the other major branches of the family. A diet (*quriltai*) of all the princes under the responsibility of the Qa'an planned the campaigns; and from the time of Ögödei, the government of the conquered sedentary territories had representatives of the main *uluses* and the Great Khan working in cooperation.[32]

The collegial concept certainly limited the Qa'an's centralized control over the empire. Moreover, it was at odds with the need of each prince to use a wide and specific area for the grazing of his herds. As a compromise, apart from the scattered appanages, each of Chinggis's four sons by his chief wife received from his father rights to a specific region that would serve as his territorial base. Those rights were apparently limited to the pasture lands while the sedentary

territories remained under the joint authority of the family. The coexistence of regional and collective rights encouraged internal and personal tensions: due to the *tamma* system, sizeable portions of the troops stationed within the *ulus* of a certain prince owed alliance not to him but to some external authority whether the Qa'an or another prince.[33] In addition, there was an inherent tension between the Qa'an and the regional khans, each of them tempted to extend his authority at the expense of the other, and a greater regional independence was especially apparent in the interregnums following the death of each Qa'an.

The situation was further complicated by the fact that the Mongols, like other nomads, lacked an orderly system of succession. According to the Mongol custom, the youngest son by the chief wife succeeded to his father's hearth, but not necessarily to his political superiority.[34] Seniority played a certain role, but it could have been expressed not merely in primogeniture but also in lateral succession: the elder male in the family, the *aqa*, usually the late Khan's brother, was preferred candidate for the throne, or at least played an influential role in the election process.[35] In fact the succession was decided by "tanistry," as Fletcher termed the principle according to which the most talented male member of the royal clan should inherit the throne. Any transfer of power was an open-to-all struggle among the different branches of the family.[36] The Mongol custom demanded that after the succession struggles were concluded, the election was formally reconfirmed by representatives of all the lines of the family in a *quriltai*.[37]

Chinggis had tried to avoid the instability caused by the lack of an ordered succession system by adding a new principle, nomination;[38] and in his lifetime he appointed his third son, Qaidu's grandfather, Ögödei, to be his heir. Although the sources portray the succession as a matter determined only among Chinggis's sons by his chief wife (Jochi, Chaghadai, Ögödei and Tolui), it can be attested that Chinggis's brothers as well as his sons by other wives saw themselves as eligible candidates.[39] Ögödei's election was due to his qualities as a generous and peaceful man, talents thought to have the best chance of preserving the unity of the Mongol empire.[40] He was preferred to his senior brothers, Jochi and Chaghadai.

Jochi was passed over probably because of his questionable legitimacy: he was born soon after Chinggis's wife was released from a period of captivity among the Merkids, and it had been always open to doubt whether he was really Chinggis's son. In any case, Jochi had

died in early 1227, a few months before his father, and was therefore obviously excluded from the potential successors.[41]

Chaghadai is described as a strict adherent of the *Jasagh*, known for his harsh character,[42] not an advantage for someone who had to practice the delicate art of keeping the family together. Moreover, his bitter dissensions with Jochi, mostly based on the same legitimacy issue, made it obvious that neither of the two would willingly accept the elevation of the other.[43] Chaghadai, too, was therefore disqualified from being Qa'an. Tolui, the best fighter of the family, might have been a serious candidate. Yet Chinggis's hesitation in choosing between Ögödei and Tolui and his final decision in favor of the former, as Rashīd al-Dīn alleged, can be a mere interpolation that foreshadows later developments.[44] In the course of the nomination, Chinggis stressed the priority of his sons over his brothers in regard to succession rights.[45] Ögödei's nomination allegedly received the solemn and wholehearted acceptance of his brothers. Though the sources retained different versions about the time, place, and participants in the nomination's scene or scenes,[46] Chinggis's nomination of Ögödei remained an undisputed fact even in the course of the Toluid effort to deny the right of the Ögödeids to a permanent occupation of the Qa'an's throne.[47]

Another measure taken by Chinggis during his lifetime, as already mentioned, was to assign territories and people to his sons: Jochi, the eldest, was the first to receive his territory, the Irtish valley, already in 1208, and his territory was to be extended to the northwest "as far in that direction as the hoof of the Tatar horse had penetrated".[48] Under his descendants this territory was extended to Western Eurasia and the Russian principalities and was known as the Golden Horde. The other family members got their territories later, probably in the early 1220s. Chaghadai received the region between the land of Uighuria and Samarkand and Bukhara, i.e., Western Turkestan and the Tarim Basin, to which Transoxania was added during Ögödei's reign. Ögödei received Jungaria and the western slopes of the Altai mountains, and Tolui, as the youngest son, received his father's original land in Mongolia.[49] In this allocation most of North China and the lands south of the Oxus, both of which were incorporated into the empire well before Chinggis's death, remained unassigned. Those probably remained under Chinggis's supreme authority, and were due to be passed subsequently to his successor.[50]

Besides the territories, Chinggis also divided the army among his relatives, assigning 4,000 troops to each of his three eldest sons and

lesser numbers to other kinsmen. The lion's share of the army, 101,000 soldiers, fell to Tolui, again because he was the youngest son.[51] Tolui's control of most of the army certainly contributed to the victory of his descendants in later succession struggles.[52]

Chinggis's death in 1227 was followed by an interregnum of two years; only at its end was Ögödei's elevation confirmed by a *quriltai*. The *Yuan Shi* attributes the delay to the opposition of Tolui, who according to the same source served as the regent until his brother's enthronement.[53] Even though Rashīd al-Dīn testifies to a certain confusion during the interregnum, when the issue of electing a Great Khan was raised, Chinggis's nomination made Ögödei the sole candidate, and he was elected without discord.[54]

Ögödei was enthroned by his potential competitors: Chaghadai, Tolui, and Temüge Odchigin, Chinggis's younger brother. During the enthronement ceremony he received from his brothers the "domain of the centre", probably the previously undivided territories under Chinggis's authority, and Chinggis's personal guard (*kesig*), containing more than 18,000 soldiers.[55]

When Ögödei was elected, he took the title Qa'an to express his supreme authority *vis-à-vis* his brothers. As Qa'an, Ögödei had the exclusive right to conduct foreign relations on behalf of the empire, and the right to nominate, or confirm the nomination of, the heads of his brothers' *uluses*.[56] Yet in order to maintain his primacy over the other *uluses*, Ögödei had to find means to support his establishment and his power base, i.e. to fill the empty treasury he inherited from his father. He tried to ensure a steady stream of revenue by initiating a reform in the regional administration of the empire. In 1229, Ögödei established two branch secretariats[57] in his richest sedentary territories, Turkestan and North China, and another was established in Iran in the 1240s. Unlike the regional administration under Chinggis, these branch secretariats were led by civilians, who replaced the former military commanders as the administrative authority. Their main task was to regulate the assessment and the collection of taxes in the territories under their jurisdiction. Through them and the legal and organizational changes associated with their introduction, Ögödei was able to concentrate the lion's share of the local revenues in the hands of his imperial agents, thereby strengthening his powers *vis-à-vis* the regional khans.[58] The latters' rights, however, could not be ignored, and a dispute between the Qa'an's agents and the regional Khan in Turkestan encouraged the development of a joint administration in the sedentary territories toward the end of Ögödei's reign:

each of the branch secretariats included representatives of Chinggis's four sons. The influence of the local khan was greater than that of the others in each region, while the Qa'an remained *primus inter pares*, and held the power to nominate the chief officials in the branch secretariats.[59]

The collegial character of the empire found further expression in generous grants of private appanages from the conquered states to the princes, especially from the middle 1230s. This measure in the long run undermined the Qa'an's authority as well as his reform measures.[60]

Another institution that preserved its collegial character was the army. Mongol expansion continued under Ögödei and its main achievements were the final destruction of the Jin dynasty in north China (1234), the conquest of the Qipchaq steppe and the Russian principalities (1237–41) and continuous advancement into Western Asia.[61] The list of princes that took part in these campaigns decisively proves Ögödei's ability to allocate and dispatch troops from all the *uluses*.[62] It is also possible that already in his time there were certain units, probably those originating from Chinggis's *kesig*, that were directly subject to the Qa'an *ex-officio*.[63]

Ögödei was, however, aware of Tolui's military superiority. Rashīd al-Dīn mentions his attempt to transfer Toluid troops to the command of his son Köten, an attempt that even after Tolui's death could not have been implemented without the troops' opposition.[64] This superiority might also have been a major reason for Ögödei's offer to marry his eldest son, Güyüg, to Sorghaghtani Beki, Tolui's widow since 1233, thus hoping to unite the two important Mongol lines, an offer which Sorghaghtani proudly dismissed.[65] Making his capital in the vicinity of Qara Qorum, originally in Tolui's territory, Ögödei could keep a close watch on Tolui's domains, especially since the latter spent most of his time fighting in north China.[66] There was nevertheless no open conflict between Ögödei and Tolui and, in general, Ögödei's reign was a time of achievements and internal peace.[67]

Ögödei died in December 1241 and according to the Mongol custom his wife, Töregene, served as a regent until a *quriltai* could nominate his successor. This time the interregnum was much longer, and it took Töregene almost five years to secure the throne for her eldest son, Güyüg. Rashīd al-Dīn and the *Yuan shi* claim that Ögödei nominated Shiremün, his grandson by his deceased third son, Köchü, to be his heir, and the Ögödeids' abrogation of the Qa'an's will later

served as one of the main Toluid arguments to justify their elevation to the Qa'anate.[68] Shiremün's nomination might not have been as clear-cut a matter as Rashīd al-Dīn would have us believe.[69] Even if Shiremün was nominated, installing a "mere child"[70] (as he was at the time of Ögödei's death) at the head of the Mongol empire was a highly problematic decision, especially for those who wanted the Qa'an to retain his power. Güyüg had seniority on his side, and he also enjoyed the support of the military commanders. Güyüg might have tried to secure a formal nomination from his father, hurrying back to Mongolia when he heard about Ögödei's illness, but death reached the Qa'an before him. The main factor that delayed Güyüg's election was the opposition of Batu, Jochi's son and, since Chaghadai's death in 1242, the *aqa* of the Mongol empire.

The enmity between Batu and Güyüg originated in personal dissensions that arose during the Russian campaign (1237–41), when Güyüg and the Chaghadaid prince Büri refused to accept Batu's leadership despite the latter's seniority, probably due to the Jochids' questionable legitimacy. The discord was so grave, that it forced Ögödei to intervene in favor of Batu; this episode might have caused him to refrain from nominating Güyüg as his heir. Batu did his best to postpone his rival's nomination, declining invitations to attend the *quriltai* on the excuse of ill health. Even after Töregene had managed to recruit enough support for her son and a *quriltai* was convened in the summer of 1246, Batu did not take part in it.[71]

Even though so far the contestors for the Qa'an's post came only from among the Ögödeids, the first who during the interregnum had tried to seize the throne "without election" was Chinggis's brother, Temüge Odchigin.[72] Although he was foiled and eventually brought to trial and executed, this episode implies that already the exclusive right of the Ögödeids to the Qa'anate was not beyond question. Indeed, after Temüge's incident Güyüg insisted on getting from his kinsmen a written commitment that the Qa'anate would thereafter reside in his family.[73]

Despite this written commitment, the newly enthroned Qa'an was much weaker than his predecessors, and yet he had to cope with the daunting task of restoring the central authority, which had eroded considerably during Töregene's regency. Güyüg started by renominating the heads of the branch secretariats, previously deposed by his mother, and by asserting the collegial character of these bodies.[74] He also deposed the Chaghadaid khan, Qara Hülegü, a nomination of both Chaghadai and Ögödei, in favour of his personal friend,

Chaghadai's eldest living son, Yesü Möngke, claiming that a grandson (like Qara Hülegü) could not succeed to the throne as long as a son was alive.[75] This claim, perhaps indirectly referring also to Shiremün, reflects Güyüg's attempt to enhance the seniority principle and attests to the fluid position of nominations in the Mongolian society. No action of Güyüg against the Toluids is recorded, and they are praised in the sources as the only ones who did not offend the Qa'an's prerogatives during the interregnum.[76]

Nonetheless, it was harder to enforce the Qa'an's authority on his old enemy, Batu. This was true especially since the latter's territories were significantly enlarged after the conquests in Europe during Ögödei's last years, conquests that were incorporated into the Jochid realm in accordance with Chinggis's previous instructions. Juwaynī attests to Batu's general liberality in regard to the issue of *jarlighs* (edicts) and of assignment of revenues, functions that should have been determined by the joint administration. Perhaps the fact that no branch secretariat is known to exist in Batu's newly conquered territories was the reason for Güyüg's decision to cope with his rival. Güyüg sent troops to the West to arrest Batu's viceroys in the Caucasus, and he himself went from Mongolia to "inspect" the Ili region, apparently to prepare himself for a showdown with Batu. Batu was warned in advance about Güyüg's intentions by Sorghaghtani Beki, Tolui's widow, and he gathered his troops to oppose the Qa'an. Open conflict was avoided only by Güyüg's death on the road in 1248.[77]

Güyüg's death found the Ögödeids divided among several candidates: Güyüg's sons, Naqu and Qoja, both saw themselves as rightful heirs of their father. They formed different courts, separated from that of their mother, Güyüg's wife, the regent Oghul Qaimish. This might have been related to the latter's support for Shiremün, now an adult, who was another leading candidate.[78] More important than those struggles, however, was the fact that by the time of Güyüg's demise, Batu was still the *aqa* of the Mongol empire, and he was determined to solve the succession problem quickly and according to his own interests. After Güyüg's death, Batu called for the convening of a *quriltai* in his own territories. Most of the Ögödeids, together with the Chaghadaid princes that supported them, refrained from participating in this assembly, claiming that the nominating *quriltai* should take place in the area of the Onon-Kerulen rivers where Chinggis Khan was enthroned in 1206. At last Güyüg's sons, Qoja and Naqu, were persuaded to send representatives, whom they

instructed to agree to any decision accepted by the majority. The *quriltai* was held in the summer of 1250. The Ögödeids seemed to have expected another internal Ögödeid contest for the Qa'anate, and Batu's proclamation that Möngke, Tolui's eldest son, would be the next Qa'an, came to them as a complete surprise.[79] Batu justified his choice on the basis of Möngke's being of the lineage of Chinggis Khan and of his merits as an experienced fighter famous for his bravery and sagacity.[80] The other princes accepted this decision probably owing to Batu's prestige (according to Juwaynī he chose Möngke only after he declined having the throne for himself[81]), and to the firm advocacy of Möngke's candidacy by his assertive mother, Sorghaghtani Beki.[82] Other important factors might have been the recent edict issued by Oghul Qaimish in July 1250, that multiplied the tax levied on the nomad's herds tenfold[83] as well as the decline of the Ögödeid prestige due to Güyüg's ineffectual rule and the disunity among the Ögödeids.

The surprising news eventually led the Ögödeids to close ranks behind Shiremün, but this unity came too late. Moreover, Güyüg's sons had, theoretically at least, accepted the majority decision through their representatives.[84]

After Möngke had accepted the nomination, it was decided to hold another *quriltai* in the Onon-Kerulen region to reconfirm the election "constitutionally". Most of the Ögödeids and Chaghadaids refused to come, trying to delay the nomination just as Batu had done prior to 1246. Gradually, the Toluids and Jochids, counting on personal grudges and opportunist interests, convinced several minor Ögödeid and Chaghadaid princes to attend the *quriltai*. Their presence gave the diet, held in the Mongol lands in 1251, its required legitimate character.[85] Möngke's election was reconfirmed and he launched a propaganda campaign to ensure his legitimacy, and that of the transfer of the Qa'anate from the Ögödeids to the Toluids. The crucial issue was whether Chinggis Khan, while indubitably nominating Ögödei to be his heir, had meant the post of the Qa'an to be reserved exclusively for the Ögödeids thereafter. The Toluids naturally argued, that although Chinggis Khan had designated Ögödei to be his heir, he explicitly meant that after him the post would settle upon the most talented candidate among the whole Chingissid family. The *Secret History* puts this argument into Chinggis's mouth as an integral part of the nomination scene, yet even external textual evidence implies that it was fabricated.[86] The Toluids therefore emphasized Möngke's qualification for the position of the Qa'an, stressing his fidelity to the *jasagh* and the Mongol traditions, and portraying him as "a true

universal sovereign in the Chingissid mold, endowed with heaven's favor and protection."[87]

To strengthen further their legitimacy certain aspects in both Möngke's and Tolui's biographies were adjusted to accord with Möngke's new position. The propaganda emphasized Tolui's special position as Chinggis's youngest son, celebrated him as the successful regent and even posthumously conferred the title Qa'an upon him. Möngke initiated special rites in his memory as well as another cult for Chinggis Khan. Möngke's biography specially emphasized his close relationship with Ögödei and the latter's high appreciation of his merits. The Toluids also enhanced Möngke's legitimacy by stressing the fact that he was elected in a properly conducted *quriltai* and that he enjoyed the consensus of all the Chinggisid lines.[88] The mere need to conduct such a legitimation campaign asserts that the Ögödeid claim, later revived by Qaidu, still enjoyed a certain support.

Indeed, Möngke did not limit himself to this rather successful propaganda campaign. The rivals were literally purged, and it was at this stage that the Toluids benefitted greatly from their military superiority. The convenient justification for the purges was an alleged attempt of Shiremün and Naqu to assassinate Möngke, a plot revealed by mere chance.[89] Using this excuse Möngke started a comprehensive purge directed against the Ögödeids and their supporters, the Chaghadaids. Troops of Möngke and Batu marched to various locations in Mongolia, Jungaria and Central Asia to track down and arrest the suspected conspirators. They were brought to trial, and after being found guilty were mostly exiled, many of them with the troops that went to China. Möngke ordered Shiremün executed shortly after his exile, and he exiled the Chaghadaids Büri and Yesü Möngke to Batu's camp, where they were also executed. Oghul Qaimish and Shiremün's mother were put to death in Sorghaghtani Beki's *ordo*. Nothing more is heard about the other exiled princes. The purges were by no means limited to the conspirators or to the imperial family, but included leading members in the Ögödeid central administration, many of whom were executed. Travelling tribunals were sent to China, Central Asia and even as far as Iran to judge Ögödeid loyalists in the army and the administrative apparatus; and local rulers loyal to the former Qa'ans also paid with their lives for supporting the losing side. Although the exact number of the victims is unknown, it was certainly large, and the sources make it clear that the ranks of the Ögödeids and Chaghadaid princes, as well as their supporters, were significantly thinned.[90]

The Ögödeids were the big losers of the purges. They lost both their private property and the rights held in their *ulus ex-officio*, i.e. the territories and armies that were under the Qa'an's direct control. The Ögödeid territories were mostly incorporated into the new Qa'an's domains. Only a few princes who had supported Möngke, and among them Qaidu, received small, widely spaced territories (about which see Chapter I). Most of the Ögödeid troops, with the exception of the Toluid army of Köten, were taken away and redistributed among the other branches of the imperial family.[91] There is no indication that after Möngke's accession the Ögödeids retained their *ulus* structure: no Ögödeid regional khan or head of *ulus* was elected and Ögödeid princes had no representation in the regional administrations or in the *tamma* forces that were sent under Möngke to conquer West Asia. This was the situation from which Qaidu had to start in his efforts to revive the Ögödeid cause.

Unlike the Ögödeids, the Chaghadaids retained their *ulus* structure after the purges. Möngke rewarded Qara-Hülegü, the senior Chaghadaid prince who supported him, by nominating him to be the head of the Chaghadaid *ulus*, the office he had held in 1244–46 prior to his deposition by Güyüg. Qara Hülegü, however, died before reaching Turkestan, and Möngke appointed his widow, Orghina (who was related by marriage to both the Toluids and the Jochids), to act as a regent for their infant son, Mubārak Shāh.[92] Although the Chaghadaid army was not redistributed, many of their military commanders went into exile.[93] Yet one Chaghadaid prince, Tegüder, accompanied Hülegü on his Western campaign,[94] and though no Chaghadaid representative is mentioned for the regional administration of China or Iran, they might have had representatives in the Turkestan administration about which no data survive. The Chaghadaids relative weakness was quickly manipulated by the Jochids to extend their control to Transoxania and Western Turkestan, hitherto important parts of the Chaghadaid realm.[95]

The Jochid lot was quite different from that of the Ögödeids and the Chaghadaids, due to their contribution to Möngke's rise. Nonetheless, as Allsen shows, Batu and Möngke did not hold the Mongol empire as a condominium, and the Great Khan was certainly able to enforce his authority in the Golden Horde. Yet a branch secretariat was apparently installed in Russia only after Batu's death in 1257, and even after that Möngke had to work in close cooperation with the regional khan.[96]

After his accession Möngke placed his brothers Qubilai and Hülegü in charge of China and West Asia respectively, thereby

creating the basis for two new regional khanates.[97] Those regions seem to be the territories previously held by the Qa'an *ex-officio*. By thus installing his brothers, Möngke assured Toluid dominance on the most productive areas of the empire, and his own relatively firm control over them.[98] Möngke's brothers expanded the empire's borders each in his own direction: Qubilai subdued the Yunnan kingdom of Dali in 1254, and together with Möngke he attacked Song posts in Sichuan in 1258-59. Hülegü wiped out the Assassins in 1256, the Abbasid Khalifate in 1258 and continued to advance into Syria.[99] This impressive, twofold expansion, that was halted by Möngke's death in 1259, was possible because of the Qa'an's efficient control of the empire's resources. In the long run, the swift expansion encouraged regional ambitions.

Möngke's administration was basically modelled on the Ögödeid one, but his firm central control and his administrative measures enabled the system to function much more effectively.[100] In the central secretariat Toluid loyalists, mainly recruited from Möngke's personal guard, replaced the former Ögödeid officials. In the regional administration, however, the main administrators of the branch secretariat retained their posts due to their experience and qualifications. A certain nominal collegiality survived in the regional administrations, since the interested princes could add their representatives to the branch secretariat, though, significantly enough, the sources mention only Toluid or Jochid representatives. Yet outside the Golden Horde the influence of those representatives, or their nominators, was rather meager. The administrators in China, Iran and Turkestan owed their positions to Möngke alone, and the Qa'an kept them under close surveillance lest they take the collegial aspects of their duties too seriously. The greater centralization, therefore, came to a certain extent at the expense of the collegial principle. [101]

On the eve of Möngke's death the Mongol empire was apparently a unified body under a strong Toluid–Jochid dominance, and the Ögödeids and Chaghadaids were reduced to various degrees of impotency. Nonetheless, the old tensions between the center and the regional khans, the lack of an effective succession system and personal grudges were still apparent behind the scenes, and even tended to increase due to the broad expansion of the empire. The Toluid–Jochid rivalry regarding the right to rule in Iran[102] was one manifestation of the inherent problems. Much more decisive, however, was the intra-Toluid succession struggle that followed Möngke's death.[103] Möngke's

brothers, Qubilai and Arigh Böke, both saw themselves qualified to succeed him. The bitter contest between them changed once more the balance among the different *uluses*, and gave Qaidu his chance to step into the front lights of Mongol history.

Chapter I

The Rise of Qaidu

Qaidu (Haidu) was born circa 1235–36,[1] the son of Ögödei's fifth son Qashi (Heshi) and Sebkine of the Bekrin, a tribe that dwelt in the mountains near Uighuria, but which was neither Uighur nor Mongol.[2] Qashi, the youngest son of Ögödei by his chief wife, Töregena, was named after the land of the Tanguts (Chinese: Hexi) to which Chinggis had led a victorious campaign just before his birth. It may thus be concluded that he was born circa 1210.[3] Xu Ting, a Chinese traveller who visited Qara Qorum in the year 1235, indicates that Ögödei viewed Qashi as his heir.[4] Yet Qashi died of drink in Khurāsān at an early age,[5] soon after Xu Ting's visit.

Qaidu was born after his father's death and grew up in Ögödei's *ordo*.[6] Qarshī relates how the infant Qaidu was brought before Ögödei, who kissed him and said: "Would that my young son will succeed me." He ordered that the child's every need be provided.[7] At the time of Ögödei's death (1241), however, Qaidu was about six years old, far too young to take part in any succession struggles. Rashīd al-Dīn notes that after Ögödei's death Qaidu accepted Möngke's authority,[8] and indeed we know nothing of Qaidu's reaction to Güyüg's death (1248) and the subsequent power struggle between the houses of Ögödei and Tolui, which concluded with Möngke's rise to power (1251). The reason may well have been that Qaidu judged that he could not obtain much at his young age, and thus preferred to wait and see what the outcome would be.

Qaidu's patience bore fruit: Möngke eliminated and banished many Ögödeid princes who opposed him,[9] but in 1252 he distributed appanages to Ögödeid princes who had not contested his succession:[10]

Qadan (Hedan), the sixth son of Ögödei by a concubine, received Besh Baliq (Bieshi bali), the capital of the Uighurs. Melik (Mieli), the seventh son of Ögödei, also by a concubine, received the region of the

Irtish river (Yeerdeshi he). Qaidu received Qayaliq (Haiyali) north-west of Almaliq (Alimali), between the Emil and the Ili rivers, in the region of present-day Kopal in Southern Kazakhstan.[11] Totaq (Tuotuo), the son of Qarachar, the fourth son of Ögödei, received the region of the Emil river (Yemili).[12] Möngetü (Menggedu), the son of Ögödei's second son, Köten, received together with Ögödei's wife, an appanage in the west of Köten's dominion. According to Rashīd al-Dīn, Köten's appanage was in the land of the Tanguts,[13] and during Möngke's reign he also ruled a portion of Tibet.[14]

The Muslim sources indicate the distribution of lands only to Qadan, Melik and the sons of Köten. They give no details as to the location of their territories, but implies that they were originally part of Ögödei's appanage. Juwaynī, who refers only to Qadan and Melik, adds that with the land they also received some of Ögödei's personal troops.[15]

Certain troops may well have been distributed to, or have joined Qaidu as well, since the *Shajarat al-atrāk* mentions that a senior Ögödeid commander, the head of the Arulad tribe, accompanied Qaidu.[16] In any case, Möngke must have ensured that the troops distributed to the far-flung dominions of the princes could pose no threat to his rule.[17]

Qayaliq constituted Qaidu's first territorial base, and from there he could begin to assemble men and build up his force. The *Yuan shu* describes Qayaliq as a rich grazing, fishing and hunting land.[18] William of Rubruck, who visited Qaidu's Qayaliq in 1253, describes it as a city with busy markets, churches and temples.[19] Despite its resources Qayaliq was, however, a small restricted base even in relation to the appanages distributed to other Ögödeid princes such as Besh Baliq or the Irtish region. Indeed, there is no evidence that Qaidu occupied a senior position among the Ögödeids, although achieving such a position was not that difficult after Möngke's purges. At this stage it is clear that Qaidu could not constitute any threat to the Qa'an.

Yan Fu, a Yuan scholar (1236–1312), claimed that Qaidu was recalcitrant since Möngke's time.[20] The only evidence of tension between Qaidu and Möngke is the fact that in 1256, when Möngke sent the judge Shi Tianlin to Qayaliq, Qaidu took him captive and released him only some twenty years later.[21] The object of the mission, and the reason for Shi's captivity are both unclear. The very sending of the envoy may, however, have constituted an expression of a certain tension in relations, as in the case of Möngke's envoys to Qubilai in 1257 or other envoys sent by Möngke to enforce his authority, as

indicated in the *Yuan shi*.[22] Möngke did not respond to the holding of his envoy, perhaps because he was occupied with his campaigns against the southern Song dynasty.[23]

The important stages in Qaidu's rise were thus in the 1260s and 1270s, years for which the chronology of the many recorded events is not always clear. Reconstruction of the order of events is, accordingly, somewhat problematic.

Möngke's death in August 1259 led to a struggle for the throne between two of his brothers, Qubilai and Arigh Böke (Ali buge), and in 1260 two rival *quriltais* enthroned both brothers as rival Qa'ans.[24] According to Rashīd al-Dīn and later scholarship, Qaidu supported Arigh Böke,[25] but his support may not have been unqualified, since by 1260 Qaidu was also among the princes to whom Qubilai distributed allowances a short time after his enthronement. This custom continued, according to the *Yuan shi*, subsequently every year.[26] The princes who received allowances were mainly from the *uluses* of the descendants of Chinggis Khan's brothers and several Chaghadaid and Ögödeid princes. Most of them supported Qubilai subsequently as well.[27] There is evidence that later Qubilai, as the undisputed Qa'an, also gave allowances to a prince who had previously rebelled against him,[28] but it is doubtful whether at this stage he could be so generous or had a special reason to seek Qaidu's support. The *Yuan shi* does not mention Qaidu supporting Arigh Böke. Possibly this is because Qaidu's position was not important at this stage, but clearly, the evidence of Qaidu's support of Arigh Böke is not as decisive as modern scholars have maintained.

The fact that Qaidu received an allowance may indicate that initially he adopted a neutral stance in the struggle between Qubilai and Arigh Böke. If he did remain neutral, then Alghu's subsequent revolt gave him a good reason to go over to Arigh Böke's side: Alghu, the grandson of Chaghadai, was appointed by Arigh Böke as head of the Chaghadaid *ulus* and in 1261 the latter sent him westward to organize supply shipments from Transoxania and Turkestan to Mongolia. Alghu rapidly imposed his rule over Central Asia, seizing control of areas taken from the Chaghadaid *ulus* in Möngke's time and of areas that were never in their possession, at the expense (especially) of the Golden Horde and of the remains of the Ögödeid dominion. He also sent his commissioners to the cities of Samarkand and Bukhara, which until then had been ruled by the joint administration, i.e., were subject to the Qa'an. After accruing power

and territories, Alghu openly rebelled against Arigh Böke and fought several battles against him in 1262–63. Alghu obtained the support of Masʿūd Beg, head of the regional administration in Turkestan under the Qa'ans, who entered his service and helped him to recruit the resources his army required. He also found a supporter and wife in Orghina, the widow and successor of Qara Hülegü, the previous head of the Chaghadaid *ulus*. Alghu's revolt was thus one of the main reasons for Arigh Böke's surrender to Qubilai, who sought the support of the new head of the Chaghadaid *ulus*.[29]

Alghu, whose base in the region of the Ili and of Almaliq[30] was not far from Qayaliq, presented a greater danger to Qaidu than did the struggle between the Qa'ans. Rashid al-Din claims that after turning to Qubilai (ca. 1263), Alghu attacked Qaidu for his siding with Arigh Böke.[31] This is the only evidence for Qaidu's active support of Arigh Böke, albeit not on the former's initiative. Yet these battles can also be interpreted in terms of local Central Asian politics as part of Alghu's struggle to consolidate his rule in the region. Inevitably, Qaidu's program was to support whoever opposed Alghu.

When Arigh Böke's power weakened and he capitulated to Qubilai, Qaidu turned to Berke, the Khan of the Golden Horde (1257–67), for assistance against their shared enemy, Alghu. Berke agreed to accept Qaidu as an ally, according to Mīrkhwānd only after verifying that Qaidu's horoscope was promising. He provided Qaidu with an army and wealth, and promised him the leadership of the Chaghadaid *ulus* if he vanquished Alghu.[32] With Berke's aid, Qaidu seized control of new territories and attacked Alghu. He was victorious in the first battle, but was defeated in the second one, and only Alghu's death in late 1265 or early 1266 prevented him from paying a heavier price for this defeat.[33]

Earlier, in 1264, Arigh Böke surrendered to Qubilai. Qubilai thus consolidated his position as the Qa'an and summoned the Mongol princes to his court to recognize his authority. Qaidu ignored Qubilai's repeated summonses to the court, claiming that the distance between them was great and his cattle too thin to cover it.[34] The great distance was partially the result of Qubilai's transferral of the Mongol capital from Qara Qorum to Shangdu in Northern China, a step that impaired the Qa'an's ability to rule effectively in Central Asia, and enabled Qaidu to refuse his summons.[35] Despite this refusal, in 1266 Qubilai distributed to Qaidu part of the revenues of the newly conquered province of Nanjing, those of the city of Caizhou (Kaifeng).[36] Still Qaidu had good reasons not to come to the court:

even before Arigh Böke's surrender, Qubilai had divided the empire among its major leaders, with the aim of ensuring their support: the territory from the banks of the Oxus to the gates of Egypt went to Hülegü, the Qipchaq plain and the other areas related to Batu's name to Berke, the area between the Altai mountains and the banks of the Oxus to Alghu, and everything from the Altai eastward was under Qubilai's direct authority.[37] Under this new arrangement troops and territories were allocated to the sons of Tolui, Chaghadai and Jochi but not to the house of Ögödei, whose appanage was absorbed into that of Qaidu's rival, Alghu.

Alghu's death (1265/6) occurred in close proximity to the deaths of Berke (1266/7) and Hülegü (1265), and consequently the great Mongol *uluses* were occupied with matters of succession. As already mentioned, the transfer of Qubilai's capital to China further complicated matters. The vacuum thus created in Central Asia provided Qaidu with the opportunity that he needed to expand his jurisdiction.

There is no clear evidence regarding the territories of which Qaidu then seized control, but it may be supposed that in the west he reached at least Talas, which subsequently became his power center.[38] He also may well have exploited the struggles among the sons of Chaghadai in order to continue to advance in the direction of the Jaxartes river.[39] Yet it seems that most of Qaidu's expansion in this period was eastward: he seized control of Almaliq, where Alghu had been buried circa 1266 and from which Qaidu's forces were expelled by Yuan armies about two years later.[40] From Almaliq he advanced towards Uighuria. At that time or perhaps earlier, he became the leader of his mother's tribe, the Bekrins, who inhabited the mountains near Uighuria.[41] Qaidu's troops did great harm to the Uighurs, thereby encouraging them to abandon their cities,[42] and they even threatened their capital Besh Baliq. As already noted, Besh Baliq was allotted to Ögödei's son Qadan, whose son Qipchaq was already one of Qaidu's supporters in the late 1260s.[43] After the abortive attempt to invade Besh Baliq, Qaidu was constrained to retreat in 1268 before the Qa'an's army, first to Almaliq and subsequently more than two thousand *li* further.[44] The movement of the Qa'an's army against him compelled Qaidu to move west from Talas.[45]

Qaidu reached the west after new rulers had already consolidated themselves in the Mongol *uluses*. Once again, Qaidu had to deal with events in the house of Chaghadai: after Alghu's death, his widow Orghina enthroned as leader of the Chaghadaid *ulus* Mubārak Shāh,

her son from her first marriage to Qara Hülegü, apparently without the Qa'an's authorization.[46] According to Qarshī, The enthronement occurred in March 1266, but by September Mubārak Shāh was banished by Baraq, Chaghadai's great-grandson, who emerged as the Chaghadaid Khan.[47]

Baraq was to play an important role in Qaidu's rise. Baraq's father had supported the house of Ögödei during the succession struggle of 1251,[48] and had been exiled by Möngke to China. Baraq grew up in Qubilai's camp and won his favor by performing "praiseworthy services" for him.[49] In 1263, according to the *Yuan shi*, Qubilai ordered that 129 horses be given to Baraq's soldiers who had remained without mounts.[50] Rashīd al-Dīn states that when Qubilai heard that Mubārak Shāh had been crowned without his authorization, he sent Baraq with a *jarligh* (decree) appointing him as joint ruler with Mubārak Shāh over the Chaghadaid *ulus*.[51] Another motive for sending Baraq, Rashīd al-Dīn and al-ʿUmarī indicate, was the Qa'an's wish to send a loyal follower to fight against Qaidu. Rashīd al-Dīn also suggests that the initiative for the mission came from Baraq, who felt that he deserved a reward for his services.[52] When Baraq arrived and found that Mubārak Shāh and Orghina had firmly established their power, he kept the decree in his possession a secret and presented himself as returning to his appanage and seeking refuge. Mubārak Shāh allowed him to settle on his patrimonial estate (apparently in the Chaghāniyān region north of the Oxus, near Tirmidh). Baraq gradually gained the loyalty of the members of Mubārak Shāh's army and finally fought against him, and on the pretext of some crime sent him into exile with the rank of hunting inspector.[53]

Rashīd al-Dīn's narrative does not correspond with Qarshī's dates: it is improbable that the rumor of Mubārak Shāh's enthronement could have reached Qubilai, that he responded by appointing Baraq as a joint ruler, and that the latter could then have reached Mubārak Shāh in the Jaxartes region, won his trust and then exiled him, all within the space of six months. (According to Waṣṣāf, the journey from Qubilai's territories to Qaidu's territories alone took six months[54].) It may be assumed that Baraq returned to the region earlier, perhaps when he heard of Alghu's illness and perhaps close to the date on which the *Yuan shi* notes that he received horses, 1263.[55] It is difficult to determine whether and when he received the decree from Qubilai, which is not mentioned at all in the *Yuan shi*. Inasmuch as he rebelled against the Qa'an's army immediately after Mubārak

Shāh's banishment, it seems unlikely that the decree played a decisive role in his attaining the *ulus* leadership.

If Qubilai expected Baraq to represent his interests faithfully, he was to be disappointed: according to Rashīd al-Dīn, Baraq sent his own governor to replace Moghultai, the representative of the Qa'an in Chinese Turkestan. At the sight of the fighting force, the latter fled back to China to acquaint his master with the situation. To restore order, the Qa'an then sent an officer, *Qonichi, to his aid with 6,000 horsemen. When Baraq sent out a far larger force against him, *Qonichi preferred to retreat without fighting and allowed Baraq's forces to plunder a now defenceless Khotan, which had hitherto been under Qubilai's rule.[56] Nevertheless, in 1268 Baraq received a grant from Qubilai,[57] perhaps designed to win his loyalty or at least his neutrality in the impending fight against Qaidu.

Baraq had his own reasons for attacking Qaidu: when the latter moved westward from Talas and advanced towards Baraq, Baraq feared that he was interested in Samarkand and Bukhara and decided to attack him.[58] As already noted, Qubilai had allocated to Alghu and the Chaghadaid house the territories ruled by Qaidu, and this was also a reason for tension.[59] It would thus seem that it is very doubtful whether Rashīd al-Dīn is right to suggest that fulfilling the Qa'an's mission was the main reason for the confrontation between Baraq and Qaidu.[60]

In the first battle between Qaidu and Baraq, on the banks of the Jaxartes, the latter set an ambush for Qaidu's troops, who suffered a crushing defeat. Qaidu subsequently turned for assistance to the Golden Horde, whose new ruler, Möngke Temür (1267–80), perhaps fearing the rise of a second Alghu, sent his uncle Berkecher to Qaidu with 50,000 men. In the second battle Qaidu and his reinforcements won a victory over Baraq near Khojand on the banks of the Jaxartes and apparently overran Transoxania.[61]

The defeated Baraq fled to Samarkand and to Bukhara. He tried to rebuild his force by plundering the cities and employing craftsmen around the clock to prepare new weapons. While he was still preparing for battle, Qaidu's envoy Qipchaq, who was Ögödei's grandson and Baraq's friend, arrived with a proposal for peace in the name of the unity of Chinggis Khan's family.[62] The sources agree that the main reason for Qaidu's peace proposal was fear that the demands that Baraq was making on Samarkand and Bukhara and the war that must follow would bring further destruction of a region already greatly harmed by Alghu's revolt.[63] It is also possible that Qaidu was

interested in minimizing the confrontation with Baraq so that he could devote maximum efforts to consolidation in the east and perhaps to war against Qubilai.

Under the influence of the governors of the populated areas of his kingdom (Masᶜūd Beg and Daifu[64]), Baraq accepted the peace proposal. It also seems that he felt unable to defeat Qaidu on the battlefield. The princes agreed to hold a *quriltai* in the spring, and indeed this took place either in the spring of 1269 in Talas (according to Rashīd al-Dīn), or around 1267 on the plain of Qatwān, south of Samarkand (according to Waṣṣāf).[65] In addition to Qaidu and Baraq, Berkecher, Möngke Temür's representative, also participated in the *quriltai*.[66] At the *quriltai* Qaidu appealed for unity in the name of the shared heritage of Chinggis Khan. Baraq maintained that in the name of that same heritage the Chaghadaids were also entitled to an appanage and pasture lands that others would not menace. It was determined that two-thirds of Transoxania would devolve to Baraq, and one third to Qaidu and Möngke Temür. Qaidu and Baraq divided the "Thousands" (*hizārah*)[67] and the workshops (*kārkhānah*)[68] of Samarkand and Bukhara between them, and this would seem to have been the spoil that Qaidu demanded for his victory in battle. For Baraq's army, and possibly also for the other armies, pasture areas were assigned for summer and winter. Qaidu stationed forces in the Bukhara region and thus prevented Baraq's army from encamping there. The princes decided that henceforth they would dwell only in the mountains and deserts and not in the cities; they would not graze their cattle in cultivated areas and would not make exaggerated demands on their subjects. The sedentary area was entrusted to Masᶜūd Beg, who was ordered to restore it to prosperity. The decisions were submitted for Möngke Temür's approval (or the approval of his representative). Baraq, who could not deploy his forces eastward and northward, proposed to traverse the Oxus the following spring, and take possession of some of Abaqa's lands, which he defined as areas seized by force, and not by virtue of an inheritance. Qaidu and the Golden Horde agreed to this proposal, by which Baraq hoped to solve the problem of the shortage of pasture lands for his troops.[69] Qaidu and Baraq called each other *anda* (blood brothers, eternal friends) and the princes "drank gold", namely exchanged gold cups, from which they drank to mark the agreement.[70]

Despite the apparent friendship, in fact the *quriltai* took place in a climate of mutual distrust. Before leaving to attend it Baraq commanded his son Beg Temür to be ready to set out after him with

30,000 men in case he summoned him or if he was harmed.[71] Already at the time of the *quriltai* Baraq was displeased at his expulsion from Bukhara and plotted to breach the agreement.[72]

For his part, Qaidu agreed to Baraq's plan to attack Abaqa, deeming that whatever the consequences of the battle, it would distance Baraq from him and cause harm to both sides: if Abaqa were vanquished, Baraq would be occupied in Khurāsān, and his control of Transoxania would be more weak; if, on the other hand, Baraq were vanquished, so much the better.[73] Similar calculations probably also guided Möngke Temür, who apparently at the time already maintained a kind of "peace" or "truce" with Abaqa.[74] The fact that Abaqa was the grandson of Tolui and a supporter of Qubilai may have encouraged Qaidu's agreement, but it appears that the main consideration was the removal of Baraq. Thus it seems that one should not interpret the *quriltai* decisions as a kind of agreement of the houses of Ögödei and Chaghadai to rebel against the house of Tolui, with Qaidu fighting against Qubilai and Baraq against Qubilai's nephew Abaqa, as Rashīd al-Dīn suggested in one of his references to the matter, and Howorth and others subsequently reiterated.[75]

Even if an anti-Toluid covenant was not made at the *quriltai*, the *quriltai*'s decisions constituted an attack on the Qa'an's authority, not only because the princes reached a territorial agreement without asking his opinion, but also because they divided up among themselves even sedentary territories such as the cities of Samarkand and Bukhara which until Möngke's time had been subject to the Qa'an, thereby creating a substitute to the joint administration that developed under Ögödei and Möngke.[76] Moreover, during the *quriltai* Baraq referred to Qubilai as a "regional" Khan ruling in the east, and not as the Qa'an deploying his authority also over the other territories of the Mongols.[77]

Zhou maintains that the princes who assembled at Talas sent a strong message to Qubilai, condemning him for the sinicization changes that he was introducing in his kingdom. He attributes to them the following statement, that appears in the biography of the Tangut Gao Zhiyao in the *Yuan shi*:[78]

> The assembly of the vassal princes of the northwest sent a messenger to the court [of Qubilai] saying: "The old customs of our dynasty are not those of the Han laws.[79] Today, [when you] remain in the Han territory, build a capital and construct cities,

> learn a method of reading and writing and use the Han laws, what will happen to the old [customs]?

This quotation is important because it is the only explicit textual evidence of Mongol opposition to Qubilai's sinicization steps. It is, however, difficult to establish the identity of the author of this statement from the *Yuan shi*. As is often the case in Chinese biographies, the anecdote is presented without a date, whereas the "northwest region" of the text covers everything that is northwest of China, including both Turkestan and Mongolia. Consequently, different scholars arrived at different conclusions as to the identity of the speakers.[80]

Leaving aside the chronological divergences (which I shall discuss in the notes), a detailed study of the material dealing with the *quriltai* of 1269 casts doubt on any desire of the princes assembled at Talas to complain about the breaking with the old customs. Indeed, the very fact of gathering and deciding to allocate territories and cities without asking the Qa'an's opinion was also a breach of the customary usage of the Mongol empire. Moreover, the princes in Talas were able to take this liberty only because Qubilai had "remained in the Han's territories," since the transfer of the Mongol capital from Qara Qorum to Shangdu (and subsequently to Dadu, Beijing) had greatly impaired his ability to rule effectively in Central Asia. The princes in Talas were interested in acquiring their realms at the expense of the empire, and many of the decisions dealt not with "conserving the old customs," but with ensuring the minimal welfare of the residents of these territories, the people whose relative prosperity was vital for the economic consolidation of the appanages. It is doubtful that the princes were interested in the internal administration in China beyond the relative freedom that it accorded them.[81]

According to Barthold and to many subseqent scholars, the Talas *quriltai* marks the date of Qaidu's rise to the throne of the Khan (leader of the Ögödeid *ulus*) or the Qa'an (the Great Khan, head of all the Mongols) and the "coming into being of a separate Mongol state in Central Asia."[82] Barthold himself notes that there is no evidence of enthronement or of Qaidu being called Khan or Qa'an, but he cites two proofs of the fact that Qaidu saw himself as Baraq's lord and the ruler of all Transoxania. First, Qaidu claimed after the battle that Baraq had refused to give money to his revenue collectors and even beat them; this claim demonstrates, said Barthold, that Qaidu saw himself already as ruler over all Baraq's lands. The second claim is

that the sedentary areas fell into the hands of Masᶜūd Beg, Qaidu's representative.[83] However, when Qaidu complains of the attitude to the revenue collectors, he clearly distinguishes between his territories and Baraq's, and his complaint is that Baraq refuses to allow his men to collect taxes from the territories that belong to him (such as Bukhara), not to Baraq.[84] The sources also clearly indicate the territorial distribution, and Qaidu's part, as already noted, is limited to a third of Transoxania, which he was to share with Möngke Temür. As regards Masᶜūd Beg, he served Baraq at that time just as he served Alghu before him; this is clear because he accompanied Baraq at the time of the invasion of Khurāsān.[85]

It would seem that the *quriltai* was presented as the date of Qaidu's enthronement as Qa'an – the legitimate Great Khan successor of the house of Ögödei and a rival to Qubilai – a theme that Howorth developed extensively,[86] partly because of the mention of the word *quriltai*, which appears generally in the context of the election of a Qa'an. The word itself, however, means only an assembly of Mongol princes convened to deal with prevailing problems, not necessarily related to the election of a Qa'an.[87] The event in question was apparently merely the occasion at which Qaidu, assisted to a great extent by the representative of his ally the Golden Horde, compelled Baraq to accept a peace agreement in keeping with Qaidu's objectives. The agreement included a "declaration of intentions" by Qaidu as regards administration of the territories in his possession. It is difficult to establish whether indeed Baraq did become Qaidu's vassal (Dardess even interpreted the *quriltai* as a considerable attainment for Baraq[88]), and there is no evidence that Qaidu was enthroned at that time.

While the *quriltai* enhanced Qaidu's economic and political status, one should not exaggerate its importance, if only because most of its decisions were disregarded a short time after it was held. Möngke Temür's army soon moved toward Transoxania, probably to take possession of the part to which he was entitled by virtue of the agreement (or more?). Qaidu used the forces that he had stationed in Bukhara to prevent this, and Baraq exploited the redeployment of the troops and perhaps also the dispute between Qaidu and the Golden Horde to reoccupy Bukhara.[89] The sources mention no response by the Golden Horde to Qaidu's actions, but it seems that Möngke Temür never gained possession of the territory.[90] Nor is there any evidence of the transfer of income from Qaidu to Möngke Temür.

The passage in the *Yuan shi* referring to Qubilai's consultation with Möngke Temür on the subject of Qaidu at the beginning of the *Zhi*

yuan period (1264–94),[91] may well be related to this tension between Qaidu and the Golden Horde. Möngke Temür's reply to Qubilai's envoys was that according to the law of Chinggis Khan rebels were to be put to death, and he proposed cooperating with Qubilai in a joint attack on Qaidu. The envoy, who also passed through Qaidu's territories, advised Qubilai against fighting Qaidu's large and well-trained army. Qaidu, who apparently knew the results of the mission, considered fighting against Möngke Temür, but refrained in the knowledge that Möngke Temür was fully prepared for war.[92] Since there is no evidence of further cooperation between Qubilai and the Golden Horde, but only of tension between them,[93] and since, on the other hand, there are testimonies of cooperation between Qaidu and Möngke Temür even after the aforementioned dispute, it is difficult to place Qubilai's embassy in the course of events.[94]

Baraq, as already mentioned, exploited the dispute to enter Bukhara. He prepared to invade Iran and resumed his maltreatment of his subjects: he confiscated the local cattle and grazed his horses in the fields. Only with great difficulty did Masᶜūd Beg prevent him from plundering Samarkand and Bukhara.[95] Despite these blatant breaches of the *quriltai* decisions, Baraq asked Qaidu's assistance in invading Iran.[96]

Qaidu complied with Baraq's request, hoping to push him into Abaqa's hands, as the sources explicitly indicate.[97] He sent to Baraq's aid the aforementioned Qipchaq and Chabat, Güyüg's grandson, together with a force of 4000 men, but instructed them to find a pretext to return before the battle commenced.[98] Baraq placed Qaidu's forces in the the army's vanguard[99] and crossed the Oxus in early 1270 (according to Rashīd al-Dīn), or in 1268–69 (according to Waṣṣāf, Harawī and Mamluk sources);[100] in other words, the invasion occurred only a few months after the *quriltai*, if the chronology of Rashīd al-Dīn is reliable.

Baraq gained an initial victory in Khurāsān over Abaqa's forces, who were led by Abaqa's brother Tübshin, the local governor, and by Arghun Aqa, the chief administrator of the region. This victory was facilitated by the fact that Abaqa had much of his army in the west, and was occupied at that time also with quelling the insurgency of Tegüder, a Chaghadaid commander in the service of the Ilkhans, who had revolted at Baraq's encouragement.[101] When Tübshin realized that he could not tackle Baraq's army, he fled to Māzandrān, sent a message to Abaqa and left Khurāsān to Baraq.[102] After this victory, Qipchaq quarreled with one of Baraq's generals, Jalayirtai, and this

provided him with the required pretext to return to Qaidu. Baraq sent his brother after him and after a while sent also Jalayirtai with 3,000 horsemen, but they did not succeed in overtaking Qipchaq. Soon, Chabat also found an opportunity to return to Qaidu, although he lost most of his soldiers in a clash with Baraq's son in Bukhara. Baraq protested to Qaidu at the desertion of his forces.[103]

Qaidu ignored Baraq, but according to Rashīd al-Dīn he did send a message to inform Abaqa of Qipchaq's return, and subsequently "friendship foundations were then established" between Abaqa and Qaidu and they called each other *ortogh* (here – ally, friend).[104] The desertion by Qaidu's troops, and the fact that much of Baraq's army was sent after them gave Abaqa a breathing space, so that it is not surprising that he was prepared for an alliance with Qaidu. Particularly interesting is Qaidu's initiative in establishing ties with Abaqa, who undoubtedly recognized Qubilai as Qa'an. (Qubilai's envoys came to enthrone him immediately after the battle with Baraq.) This leads us to conclude that Qaidu did not present himself then as the "legitimate Qa'an" and did not act exclusively (or even mainly) out of ideological considerations, but also out of tactical ones. Here he clearly went over to Abaqa's side.

Qaidu's judgement proved sound: when the two armies met at Herat on the first of Dhū al-Ḥijja 668/July 22nd, 1270, Abaqa won an overwhelming victory.[105] Subdued and wounded, Baraq fled to Bukhara, while some of his troops chose to join Abaqa and two princes, Aḥmad son of Büri and Negübei – preferred to ride east, to Turkestan. Baraq sent loyal princes after the two deserters and entrusted to his brother, Basar,[106] a letter to Qaidu, in which he explained his situation, attributed his defeat to a great extent to Qipchaq's and Chabat's desertion, and requested assistance.[107] Qaidu imprisoned the envoy but sent a message to Baraq informing him that he would send troops to his assistance. He himself set out with the force, estimated at 20,000 men, hoping to take advantage of Baraq's weakness and the rivalries among the Chaghadaids. He also wished to prevent Baraq from joining forces again with Qubilai. Baraq learned of Qaidu's approach after his princes had already subdued the rebels, and tried to convince him that his assistance was no longer needed and that he should return home. Qaidu had no intention of doing so: his forces surrounded Baraq's camp and planned to attack him, but when they reached the camp on the following day they found that Baraq had died in the night. After the burial ceremony, most of Baraq's commanders, and with them his army, estimated at about

30,000 after his defeat, chose to enter into Qaidu's service. He allocated lands to the commanders and divided Baraq's wealth among them.[108] According to Waṣṣāf's alternative version of the story, most of Baraq's army commanders had chosen to enter into Qaidu's service while Baraq was still alive, and Baraq had been obliged to seek refuge with Qaidu, who poisoned him.[109]

Baraq's death occurred, according to Jamāl Qarshī, in early 670/ August 1271, and at the end of Muḥarram of that year / August–September 1271 Qaidu was crowned Khan in Talas.[110] It should be noted that he was crowned Khan and not Qa'an, although in addition to being the Khan of the house of Ögödei, Qaidu was also empowered to appoint the head of the Chaghadaid *ulus*.[111] In other words, the Chaghadaid *ulus* lost its independence, becoming subordinate to Qaidu.

Baraq's defeat at the battle of Herat played a decisive role in Qaidu's rise to the throne, far more so than the *quriltai* of 1269. Qaidu for the first time attained a senior political position and greatly increased his military force. Further, he gained another important advantage from Baraq's defeat – the loyalty of Mas^{c}ūd Beg, who exploited the confusion after the battle in order to move to Qaidu's service.[112] The cooperation between the two continued until Mas^{c}ūd's death in 1289, and his sons served Qaidu after him.[113] Under Qaidu, Mas^{c}ūd Beg introduced a currency reform in Central Asia, commencing in the year 1271,[114] which gradually led to the economic rehabilitation of the region.

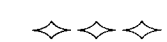
Even after his coronation, it took Qaidu several years to consolidate his rule: a certain resistance may have come from the house of Ögödei, since Rashīd al-Dīn notes that after Baraq's commanders entered into Qaidu's service, Ögödei's grandson Chabat chose to enter into Qubilai's service with several commanders.[115] Clearly most of the resistance to Qaidu's new status came from the Chaghadaids centered in Transoxania: Though Rashīd al-Dīn maintained that the former Chaghadaid Khan, Mubārak Shāh, and Alghu's sons were the first to pledge alliance to him in 1271,[116] shortly after the enthronement Mubārak Shāh surrendered to Abaqa[117] and the sons of Baraq and Alghu rebelled against Qaidu, and wrought destruction from Khojand to Bukhara. Qaidu was victorious in all his encounters with them, but could not prevent them from threatening his revenues and challenging his authority.[118]

Abaqa feared that the quarrels between the Chaghadaid princes and Qaidu would again endanger his eastern border. On January

29th, 1273 Abaqa's troops entered Bukhara, and although apparently they did not find there any of the troops of Qaidu or Chaghadaid princes, they plundered and burned everything that came to hand. They continued their assault for a week before returning to Khurāsān. Alghu's sons arrived in Bukhara as the troops left and succeeded only in rescuing the captives taken by Abaqa's forces.[119] In 1276 the sons of Alghu and Baraq again attacked Bukhara and its environs, and this attack devastated all of Transoxania for seven years.[120] The hardships of Rabban Sauma and his companions on their journey from Talas to Khurāsān in 1275/6 testify to the instability in Transoxania at this time.[121] Some time later, perhaps following Qaidu's response to the invasion of 1276, Alghu's sons decided to join with Qubilai's forces. This step occurred prior to 1283, when they appear in the *Yuan shi* as princes loyal to the Yuan dynasty.[122]

Another member of the house of Chaghadai who rebelled against Qaidu was Negübei the son of Sarban, the Khan appointed by Qaidu over the Chaghadaid *ulus* in early 1271 after the latter's enthronement. A year after his appointment, Negübei rebelled against Qaidu, possibly at the same time as the sons of Alghu and Baraq. Qaidu sent an army against Negübei, who fled eastward, and subsequently paid with his life for the revolt.[123] Qaidu then appointed Buqa Temür as leader of the *ulus*, possibly as a reward for his killing of Negübei. Buqa Temür, however, fell ill soon after his appointment and was a feeble ruler, unable to impose his authority on the sons of Alghu and Baraq.[124]

Conciliation between Qaidu and Baraq's sons was achieved only in 1282, after Qaidu appointed Du'a (Duwa), Baraq's second son, as the *ulus* leader.[125] Du'a's appointment inaugurated a twenty-year period of cooperation between the houses of Ögödei and Chaghadai, in the course of which Du'a served as Qaidu's right-hand man, and stability returned to Transoxania.[126] This notwithstanding, already in the mid-1270s Qaidu consolidated his position as a powerful factor in Central Asia east of Transoxania, as shown by the fact that the princes who revolted against Qubilai turned to Qaidu in 1276.[127] Most of the events of the 1270s concern more specifically the confrontation between Qaidu and Qubilai, with which I shall deal in the next chapter.



Even if it took Qaidu several years to stabilize his rule, his enthronement in 1271 marked the establishment of a state under his leadership in Central Asia.[128] It is difficult to define fixed borders for

this state, if there ever were such, and the changes in the location of the border will come under review in Chapter II. Generally speaking, his realm reached as far west as the Oxus river, although in the 1290s the forces of Qaidu and Du'a also controlled more western areas.[129] The eastern border was along the Mongolian Altai mountains, although Qaidu and Du'a also raided east of there. Contrary to the claims of several Muslim authors, Qaidu never reached (or got close to) the Yuan capital, Dadu, and the easternmost point which his troops raided was Qara Qorum.[130] From the late 1280s on the southern border passed through the area of Kashgar and Khotan in the Tarim basin with the southeast border advancing over time to Besh Baliq and Qara Qocho. In the 1290s Du'a extended the southern border in the direction of Ghazna and India.[131] The northern border seems to have been near the high tributaries of the Irtish river and along lake Balkhash, joining the frontier of the White Horde, a little north of the cities of Talas and Qari Sairam.[132] The northernmost city mentioned by Qarshī as part of Qaidu's kingdom is the city of Jand in north Transoxania.[133]

This state, most of whose territory corresponds to Turkestan and Transoxania, closely parallels the appanages which Qubilai allocated to Alghu, and is made up mostly of territories belonging to the realms of Ögödei and Chaghadai, as defined by Chinggis Khan. There is no evidence of a division between the Ögödeid (Qaidu) and the Chaghadaid (Du'a) territories in this area, all of which were subject to the former.[134]

The main factor that allowed Qaidu to obtain his kingdom was his ability to read correctly the Mongol political map, which underwent great changes in his time. Qaidu drew maximum benefit from the rivalries between Berke and Alghu, between Baraq and Abaqa, in the latter case also helping to turn the rivalry into an open war, and within the house of Chaghadai. He also profitably exploited both the transfer of the capital of the Mongol empire from Qara Qorum to Shangdu and the various succession struggles within the Mongol *uluses*.

In addition to his political astuteness, Qaidu excelled as a soldier, capable of transforming a motley collection of troops into a disciplined, trained army whose name became a legend.[135] Certainly it was partly because of this ability that he became a desirable ally for some Mongols, and that others joined his army. It is easy to agree with

Rashīd al-Dīn's description of Qaidu as an exceedingly intelligent, competent, and cunning man, who by conquest, subjugation and trickery succeeded in consolidating an appanage for himself, despite his inferior starting point.[136]

The role in Qaidu's rise to power played by his membership in the house of Ögödei remains to be examined. Waṣṣāf notes that Qaidu justified his defiance of Qubilai by claiming that in his *Jasagh* Chinggis Khan had stipulated that "as long as there existed a live descendant of Ögödei, he would be entitled to inherit the emperor's (*Shāh*) standard and crown." He adds that princes and an army rallied under Qaidu's standard as a result of this claim.[137] The view that Chinggis Khan had intended to leave the position of the Qa'an in the hands of the Ögödeid *ulus* was expressed both during the struggle preceding Möngke's rise and in the time of Qaidu,[138] and was certainly encouraged by the latter. Such an encouragement was probably the source of the tradition given by Qarshī, namely that Ögödei intended the succession to go to Qaidu.[139] Representing himself as the successor of the Qa'ans Ögödei and Güyüg doubtless offered Qaidu many advantages as regards the consolidation of his state: this claim legitimized his rule over territories that he had acquired by cunning and by force, as well as his supremacy over the Chaghadaid *ulus*. Since Qaidu waged war against Qubilai he could not receive legitimation from him, and if he relied initially on the favors of the Golden Horde, this dependence was not convenient over a long period, particularly after the Golden Horde fell into internal conflicts beginning in the 1280s.[140]

Moreover, an important part of the territories over which Qaidu seized control, the cities, had been under the direct rule of the Qa'an until the end of Möngke's reign. As the census which Qubilai conducted circa 1265 shows, a large part of the army, at least in Bukhara, consisted of units that did not belong to a particular *ulus* but were subject directly to the occupant of the Qa'an's throne.[141] Styling himself as the Qa'ans' heir could help Qaidu win the allegiance of these military forces.

During the course of his rise, Qaidu nevertheless rarely expressed himself as the legitimate Qa'an. When, for example, Qaidu promoted the establishment of friendship ties with Abaqa, Tolui's grandson, and received a position of comparative seniority from the Golden Horde in the *quriltai*, he behaved as a realist and not as a pretender to the throne of the Qa'an. Qarshi explicitly says that Qaidu was crowned Khan *and not* Qa'an, and the only source attributing to him "the

pretension to be Qa'an" is Qāshānī who wrote only after Qaidu's death.[142]

One should remember, moreover, that before Qaidu could contend for the Qa'an's crown he had to reassert the right of the house of Ögödei to independent existence. The fact that no accepted Ögödeid *ulus* leader is known from Möngke's time until the rise of Qaidu; that Berke promised the leadership of the Chaghadaid *ulus* and not of the Ögödeid *ulus* to Qaidu if he vanquished Alghu; that the distribution of the territory among the *uluses* in Qubilai's time excluded the house of Ögödei; all these testify to the poor situation of the Ögödeid *ulus* prior to Qaidu's rise. In order to establish the right of the Ögödeid *ulus* to an appanage and status commensurate with that of the other branches of the Mongol royal family, it was necessary to stress the legacy of Ögödei and Güyüg. This emphasis also proved advantageous to Qaidu's internal policy. Certainly the prospect of reconsolidating the Ögödeid *ulus* encouraged most of the Ögödeid princes to accept Qaidu as their leader.

One must draw a distinction, then, between a policy seeking to restore the house of Ögödei, for the benefit of which Qaidu could recall its days of glory and use them to his own advantage, and one attempting to set himself as Qa'an at the head of the entire Mongol empire. A realist like Qaidu certainly knew the latter task to be hopeless.

A closer examination of Qaidu's aims will follow in greater details after discussion of his relations with the other Mongol *uluses* and especially with the Qa'an.

Chapter II

Qaidu and the Mongol *uluses*

1. The Confrontation with the Qa'an

The tension between Qubilai and Qaidu began at the time of the latter's support of Arigh Böke, and his subsequent refusal to appear at Qubilai's court following Arigh Böke's surrender in 1264. Qubilai nevertheless allocated Qaidu his share in the revenue of the province of Nanjing in 1265, and again summoned him to court. Qaidu's persistent refusal to attend Qubilai's court, and his appropriation of territories in Central Asia, exploiting the vacuum left by Alghu's death, led to the beginning of an armed confrontation between Qubilai and Qaidu. In 1268, an army sent by Qubilai defeated Qaidu in the Almaliq region and drove him far to the west. Even if no anti-Toluid covenant was made at the Talas *quriltai* (1269), as shown in Chapter I, the *quriltai* certainly challenged the Qa'an's authority. In 1271, Qaidu was enthroned as leader of the Ögödeid *ulus* without seeking the Qa'an's permission.[1]

Aware of the developments in the west,[2] and of Qaidu's emergence as potentially "serious border problem"[3] and thus a threat to the Mongolian homeland itself – "the rising place of the ancestors",[4] Qubilai in 1271 sent a coalition of princes under his fourth son Nomuqan (Nanmuhan) to Almaliq, in order to guard against the danger posed by Qaidu.[5] In 1266, Nomuqan had been appointed as the "Prince of the Pacification of the North" (*Beiping wang*), and was sent to Mobei (North of the desert),[6] in order to oversee the princes who dwelt in this region. Mobei, formerly under Tolui's rule, was inhabited mainly by the sons of Möngke and Arigh Böke. Since Arigh Böke's surrender, Qubilai had distributed appanages, titles, and money in an intensive effort to acquire the support of these princes, among other reasons because of the importance of the control of

Mongolia for his legitimization as Qa'an. When Nomuqan set out for Almaliq, by then one of the western posts of Qubilai's state, these princes accompanied him.[7]

Parallel to Nomuqan's mission, the Qa'an troops worked to strengthen their hold on the oases in the southern Tarim basin – the region of Khotan, Yarkand and Kashgar, and in the Gansu corridor. The object of these activities was not only to defend a region which was also liable to be attacked by Qaidu and his allies, but principally to create short supply lines, thus lessening Nomuqan's dependence on supply from the remote center in Dadu.[8] In 1271 a population census was taken in Khotan and in the Hexi region, probably for taxation purposes,[9] and in 1272 Qubilai sent artisans to Khotan and Kashgar to mine jade.[10] In early 1274, thirteen postal stations were set up on the rivers close to Khotan and Yarkand, and another two in the Shazhou (Dunhuang) region at the entrance to the Gansu Corridor, probably to allow the transfer of supplies from these rivers to the southern bank of the Tarim basin, and from there to Almaliq.[11] Later that year, Qubilai issued an order to be lenient with the residents of Khotan, Kashgar and Yarkand, in other words, partially to exempt them from taxes.[12]

Nonetheless, the two last mentioned steps actually illustrate the limits of Yuan power in these areas. In 1274/5, prince Hoqu (Huohu), the son of Güyüg, rebelled in Hexi and fled from the Shazhou region to Khotan. Rabban Sauma, who met him in Khotan, described the destruction wreaked by Hoqu there and in Kashgar.[13] Hoqu, whose appanage was in Emil, supported Qubilai in the struggle against Arigh Böke, and fought on Alghu's side.[14] In 1268 he received together with Baraq a grant from Qubilai.[15] It may be assumed that Hoqu's revolt in 1274/5 was a response to attempts to impose Yuan rule in the region of the Gansu corridor and south of the Tarim basin. It is uncertain whether Hoqu acted in coordination with Qaidu, by then the Khan of the house of Ögödei, or if the cooperation between them commenced only after the quelling of the revolt.

Until the preparation of his supply lines from the Tarim basin, between the years 1271 and 1276, Nomuqan received supplies from China. These supplies also included arms but consisted mostly of tens of thousands of horses and sheep.[16] Nomuqan did not clash with Qaidu's troops in Almaliq, since the latter was fighting against the Chaghadaids in the Talas region in 1271. The *Yuan shi* does not mention any clash between Nomuqan and Qaidu, but does mention an isolated skirmish, dated early 1274, between a force accompanying

Nomuqan and the "rebel vassal" Niegubai. The latter is probably identical with Negübei, the first Chaghadaid Khan appointed by Qaidu, who apparently fled eastward after rebelling against his master.[17] The *Yuan shi* also affirms that several commanders of Nomuqan's army planned circa 1275/6 to desert and join Qaidu's army, but his other troops thwarted them.[18] Evidence of a battle between Qaidu and Nomuqan appears in only two questionable narratives: of Marco Polo and of the Mamluk author al-Nuwayrī. In both cases there seems to be a confusion with later battles.[19]

Qubilai's response made it clear that Nomuqan had not succeeded in his mission: in early 1275 Qubilai demanded that Qaidu and Baraq (who was long since dead) restore to him the gold tablets (*paiza)* that he had bestowed upon them.[20] At the same time he dispatched the general An Tong to assist Nomuqan,[21] and another envoy to persuade Qaidu to surrender.[22] One may surmise from these actions that Qaidu acted against Nomuqan, or perhaps that Qubilai blamed Qaidu for Hoqu's activities. It is also possible that Qubilai considered that Nomuqan's strengthened coalition was daunting enough to persuade Qaidu to surrender, and that he wanted to confirm the latter's submission before launching his major attack on the Song.

Qubilai's envoy was an Uighur named Shiban (Xiban), who had been the tutor of Qaidu's father. He contended that Qaidu had no chance of withstanding Qubilai's troops, and asked him to cease his military activities, to set up postal stations, and to come to the imperial court. The *Yuan shi* maintains that Qaidu withdrew his army and set up postal stations, although it does not specify where these were established or whither he retreated. He still refused, however, to travel to the court. On learning subsequently that An Tong had inflicted a resounding defeat on Hoqu's army, Qaidu was apprehensive, felt deceived, and refused to surrender. Further missions of Shiban also failed to bear fruit.[23]

Qaidu's willingness to accept Qubilai's demands seems merely a tactical step. He certainly benefitted from the weakness of Hoqu, who was likely to have been a major rival to Qaidu's senior position in the house of Ögödei. It is certainly difficult, however, to associate willingness to surrender, even if this was a tactical move, with pretensions to be a rival Qa'an.

Nomuqan's strengthened coalition, with which Shiban tried to frighten Qaidu, indeed constituted a serious threat to the latter. This threat collapsed when the princes accompanying Nomuqan rebelled against him. In the autumn of 1276[24] Tugh Temür (Tuohei Tiemuer),

the son of Sögedu (Suigedu), and grandson of Tolui, persuaded Shiregi (Xiliji) the son of Möngke, to rebel against Nomuqan, claiming that Shiregi deserved to be Qa'an and that Qubilai had committed many crimes against their brothers.[25] This uprising was also the result of frictions between the princes and An Tong,[26] and perhaps it also reflected resentment at Qubilai's sinicization policies.[27] The rebel princes subdued Nomuqan, his younger brother Kököchü (Kuokuochu) and general An Tong. According to Rashīd al-Dīn, the princes sent Nomuqan to the court of Möngke Temür, Khan of the Golden Horde, while An Tong was sent to Qaidu.[28] According to the *Yuan shi*'s confused and fragmented version of this episode, both An Tong and Nomuqan were sent to Qaidu,[29] and Waṣṣāf may well be correct in his claim that it was Qaidu who sent Nomuqan to the Golden Horde.[30] At the same time, the princes sought Qaidu's support in their struggle, but Qaidu clearly rejected their overtures.[31]

Chinese scholarship and Pelliot claim that Qaidu refused to join the coalition against Qubilai because he saw himself as the only legitimate Qa'an, and did not wish to receive powers from another pretender to the throne.[32] This assertion is unfounded, and it is easy to offer a practical reason for Qaidu's refusal, namely the threat of Alghu's and Baraq's sons, who in 1276 were laying waste to Bukhara.[33] In order to cooperate with the rebel princes, Qaidu would have had to increase his activity in the east, thus risking his control over the house of Chaghadai and over Transoxania. Moreover, Qaidu might have calculated that the coalition of princes was an unreliable support, an evaluation that was proved to be correct by the series of internal quarrels that broke out between them.[34]

Following Qaidu's refusal to join them, the princes migrated north to the Upper Yenisei, the region of their original domains. In 1277 they seized control of Qara Qorum and plundered Möngke's *ordo*. Qubilai's generals rapidly restored the dynasty's control of Qara Qorum, but the battles between the Qa'an's troops and the princes (and among the princes' themselves) continued until 1282. In the course of the battles, Shiregi killed Tugh Temür, but was obliged to give up his title to Sarban (Saliman), Möngke's grandson. Ultimately, Sarban took him captive and obliged him to surrender to the Qa'an. Qubilai exiled Shiregi, but pardoned Sarban. Some of the rebels rejoined the Qa'an after the capitulation of the leaders, and other princes chose to surrender to Qaidu.[35]

While refusing to participate actively in the princes' revolt, Qaidu did not hesitate to use it for his own ends: he did not refuse to receive

An Tong, and seems to have taken full advantage of the latter's experience.[36] During the revolt he also led a raid into Qubilai's territory.[37] Beyond these immediate advantages, the princes' rebellion was also of far-reaching importance from Qaidu's viewpoint: this uprising coincided with the successful completion of the invasion of the Southern Song by the Yuan forces (1276–79), and this meant that Qubilai's army was occupied on two different fronts, and could take no action against Qaidu.[38] Qaidu was therefore completely free to deal with the Chaghadaids. The fact that between the years 1277 and 1279 there is no evidence of activity by Qaidu or the Chaghadaids against China, despite its vulnerability, suggests that the conflict between Qaidu and Alghu's sons and the other Chaghadaids occurred at this time. This conflict was concluded at the latest in 1283, when Alghu's sons appear in the *Yuan shi* as princes loyal to the Yuan dynasty.[39] On the other hand, Baraq's son, Du'a, forged an alliance with Qaidu. In 1282 Qaidu appointed him as Khan of the Chaghadaids, and from then until Qaidu's death, the Chaghadaids were his loyal allies.[40]

The rebel princes who chose to surrender to Qaidu added their troops to his army. Among these princes were the sons of Arigh Böke, Melik Temür (Mingli Tiemuer) and *Yomuqur (Yamuhuer); *Shinqan (Shenhan), the son of Melik Temür; Qurbaqa, Arigh Böke's grandson; Ulus Buqa (Wulusi Buhua) and *Qongqor Temür (Huanghuo Tiemuer), the sons of Shiregi.[41] If Rashīd al-Dīn's description of Melik Temür's troops is accurate, it is obvious that Qaidu's army grew considerably with the new additions. Along with Melik Temür, eighteen of his commanders (*amīrs*) joined Qaidu, among whom are mentioned four chiefs of thousands, a guard commander (*kesig*), a commander of auxiliary troops (*cherig*), the son of a *tümen* commander, as well as holders of various administrative posts.[42] Even assuming that these commanders did not bring all their troops with them, and that Melik Temür's force was larger than that of most of the princes who joined Qaidu (a probability given by his subsequent senior position in the ranks),[43] this is still a considerable reinforcement.

Another major positive result for Qaidu of the princes' uprising was his renewed control of Almaliq, whence he had been driven in 1268. The failure of the force that accompanied Nomuqan made Qubilai realize that he could not rely on forces so distant from his capital, and he decided to give up the territory and not to send further forces there.[44] Qaidu was thus able to return to Almaliq, which the *Yuan shi* includes in his domain,[45] and to extend his frontier eastward.

Qubilai temporarily abandoned the attempt to defeat Qaidu by military confrontation. He did, however, endeavor to subject Qaidu to an economic siege. After destroying the Song (1279), Qubilai took several steps aimed at reinforcing the Yuan control of Uighuria and the Tarim basin oases, and at preventing Qaidu from obtaining supplies for his troops from these areas.[46] From 1278 Qubilai stationed a garrison at Besh Baliq, the abandoned Uighur capital, and in 1280 the Chinese general, Qi Gongzhi, took command at the head of this troop. He received a series of reinforcements between the years 1281–86, and in 1281 he was joined by the Chaghadaid prince Ajiqi (Azhiji).[47]

In 1281 twenty-two postal stations were set up between Besh Baliq and the Taihe range in northern Shanxi, in the Datong region.[48] Military agricultural colonies (*tun tian*) were established in Besh Baliq in 1283 and 1286.[49]

This period also saw a series of steps designed to make Uighuria, which until then had enjoyed autonomy under the local dynasty, an integral part of the Yuan administrative system: In 1278 a regional supervision bureau (*anchasi*) was established south of Besh Baliq in Qara Qocho (Hala huozhou), which had replaced Besh Baliq ca. 1270 as the Uighur capital.[50] In 1283 this office was replaced by a Pacification Bureau (*xuanweisi*), which was charged with military and civilian rule in Besh Baliq, Qara Qocho, and Uighuria as a whole.[51] This bureau seems to have worked in coordination with the Besh Baliq protectorate (*duhufu*), which was established in 1281.[52] Through this bureaucratic mechanism the Yuan subordinated the Uighur economy and society to its direct rule; Yuan laws also applied to the Uighurs, and Yuan paper money became the main currency.[53]

Along with his activities in Uighuria, Qubilai had also stationed a garrison in Khotan in late 1276, which he reinforced several times between 1278 and 1283.[54] In 1286, a series of postal stations were set up to connect Khotan, Lop, and Cherchen, and thus to reactivate the southern route from Central Asia to China proper.[55] When famine broke out in Khotan and its environs in 1287, relief came from the center of the empire, and agricultural military colonies were established alongside the postal stations, receiving reinforcements in manpower from Gansu and from Hexi.[56] In 1288, Qubilai forbade the soldiers in Khotan to deal in trade, so that they would concentrate on military activity,[57] and in the middle of that year agricultural military colonies were also established in Khotan.[58]

At the same time Qubilai took a series of steps to develop the Gansu corridor, which joins between China proper and Central Asia. His intention was to transform it into an area with resources that could feed large military forces passing through it, thereby eliminating the need to organize long supply lines.[59] Another step taken by Qubilai in his campaign against Qaidu, was to halt the flow of revenues from the appanages that the latter owned within the areas under Qubilai's suzerainty.[60]

Qubilai's actions did not have the desired effect, since during the same period Qaidu began to stabilize his power, and he or the princes close to him attacked the Yuan positions in all the sectors where the Qa'an had tried to strengthen his power. In 1280 Prince *Tügme (Tuoqumie), the son or grandson of Hoqu son of Güyüg, raided the granaries in Qara Qocho, thereby bringing about the famine that constrained Qubilai to send additional rations to the postal stations in the area and to exempt the area from taxes for three years.[61]

In 1281 Qubilai's Chinese general Liu En defeated a force of Qaidu near Khotan, but some time later he was obliged to retreat before a larger force that Qaidu sent there under Baba, a prince from the house of Jochi Qasar.[62] Since Yuan rule over the city continued subsequently and since Khotan was not plundered, Dardess concluded that Qaidu seized the revenues of the city and withdrew only subsequently; otherwise it is difficult to understand the logic of his actions.[63]

In 1284 Qubilai sent troops commanded by Prince *Yaqudu (Yahudu) to punish Qaidu. After catching Qaidu's scouts and obtaining information on his position from them, these troops defeated him.[64] His retreat, however, was only a temporary setback, and from 1285 on he and Du'a began to expand their activities.

Circa 1285, Du'a vanquished the princes heading Qubilai's garrison in Uighuria, the Chaghadaid Ajiki and *Ayachi (Auluchi), Qubilai's son.[65] It is very possible that this is the battle mentioned by Rashīd al-Dīn, according to whom Du'a's troops defeated those of Ajiki and Chübei (Chubai), the son of Alghu.[66] Subsequently Du'a and Buzma (Busiba), another son of Baraq's, laid siege to Qara Qocho for six months. Du'a lifted the siege only after the desperate Uighur Iduq qut[67] lowered his daughter down the city wall and gave her to him. While the sources do not mention further gains for Du'a, the great financial compensation given by Qubilai to the Uighur ruler after lifting the siege suggests that Du'a also exacted certain revenues.[68]

In 1286 Du'a and Qaidu led a large offensive against Besh Baliq, defeated the Yuan forces, took captive the Chinese garrison

commander Qi Gongzhi and thus consolidated their control of the region.[69] Qubilai was constrained to allocate a generous grant to Uighuria in order to compensate it for these attacks.[70]
Rashīd al-Dīn cites another proof, albeit problematic, of Qaidu's attack on Qubilai's revenues: he indicates that Malik Naṣīr al-Dīn Kāshgarī, apparently a functionary in Qubilai's administration, was accused of sending over one thousand coins to Qaidu's army every year. When Qubilai learned of this, he had the man executed. These events occurred apparently towards the late 1280s.[71]

Qaidu's and Du'a's activities during the 1280s confirm the failure of Qubilai's policy of economic strangulation: not only was Qubilai unable to prevent Qaidu and his allies from appropriating the revenues of Uighuria and the Tarim basin, but he was also obliged to invest extensively in the maintaining of garrisons and to compensate the plundered populace. His investments in developing the Gansu corridor did not bear fruit either, as shown by the many reports of famine in this area during the 1280s, and this also led to more expenses than revenues.[72] From 1288 on, there are thus several reports of Yuan retreat from Central Asia.

In the winter of 1288, the *Yuan shi* reports that 1050 craftsmen from the colonies in Khotan and Kashgar returned to the interior of the country, to Gansu and Shaanxi.[73] In 1289 the Han army returned from the colonies in Khotan and Besh Baliq,[74] and later that year the Bureau of Pacification in Khotan was closed.[75]

Further confirmation of the Yuan retreat is the fact that there are very few mentions of Khotan, Kashgar and Besh Baliq in the *Yuan shi* in the next few years, indicating their abandonment by the Qa'an troops.[76]

It seems that at this stage the border between Qaidu and the Qa'an passed through Qara Qocho, as related by Rashīd al-Dīn.[77] The invasion of Hami (Hamili), east of Qara Qocho, by Jangqi (Zhangji), one of Melik Temür's commanders who joined Qaidu, also points to the advance of Qaidu's troops.[78]

Qaidu's takeover of Central Asia can be described as "creeping annexation," and he achieved his position of supremacy through a combination of control of the economy with military backing. Qaidu was in no hurry to abrogate Yuan nominal rule in Kashgar, Khotan, and Besh Baliq or to declare them his territories, but his capacity to appropriate the revenues from these cities led the Yuan forces to retreat from the area, without Qaidu having to face them in a full-scale military confrontation.

Another important reason for the Yuan retreat in these years was the fact that after the mid-1280s the dynasty faced two dangerous rebellions in Tibet and in Manchuria, in both of which Qaidu seems to have been involved. These rebellions also enabled Qaidu to extend his activity to the north in the direction of Mongolia, control of which was more important to the Yuan than control of Central Asia.

In 1285 a conflict broke out in Tibet (which was tributary of the Yuan), between two Buddhist sects, the Sa Skya and the 'Bry-Gung. The Sa Skya sect, under Qubilai's close associate Phags Pa, supported the Mongols and its members served as governors in Tibet. The 'Bry-Gung faction, on the other hand, took advantage of the period of instability following Phags Pa's death (1280), and rebelled against the Sa Skya and against Mongol rule in Tibet.[79] According to Tibetan sources the 'Bry-Gung applied for the help of "the king of sTod Hor (east Turkestan), Hu La," who sent to the assistance of the Tibetans the prince Rin Chen.[80] Hu La is an abbreviation of the name Hülegü. Obviously, however, Hülegü, who died in 1265, could not have supported a Tibetan faction in 1285. Petech, and subsequently Rossabi, identify this Hu La with Du'a, while Wylie maintains that he was in fact Qaidu himself.[81] Qubilai sent a large force commanded by his grandson, Temür Buqa (Tiemuer Buhua) against the rebels in Tibet, and in 1290 his troops together with the Central Tibet militia defeated the 'Bry-Gung faction and the prince Rin Chen, who was taken captive. This action averted further rebellions in Tibet.[82]

It should be noted that Tibet was first conquered in 1236 by Köten, son of Ögödei, and until Möngke's rise it was exclusively a sphere of Ögödeid influence. This fact could have justified the involvement of Qaidu's or Du'a's troops there, although the descendants of Köten were not among Qaidu's supporters.[83] Tibetan sources allude to a possible sTod Hor's involvement in Tibet in the early 1270s and to the stationing of a small Chinese garrison to watch the frontier region towards the sTod Hor circa 1281.[84] Rashīd al-Dīn indicates that in the mid-1290s the army of Qutlugh Qocha, Du'a's son stationed in Afghanistan, was the force that was liable to threaten the Qa'an's rule in Tibet.[85] Even if it is difficult to determine what part, if any, Qaidu and Du'a played in the Tibetan revolt, evidently the opening of the front in Tibet reduced the number of troops that the Yuan could send against the formers.

A still more serious threat menaced Qubilai, when Nayan rebelled in Manchuria in 1287. Nayan (Naiyan), the great-great-grandson of Temüge Odchigin, Chinggis Khan's younger brother, dwelled in

Liaodong. In 1287 he headed a coalition of princes, descendants of Chinggis Khan's brothers, against Qubilai. Western and Chinese scholarship propose as a motive for Nayan's rebellion the princes' fear before "Qubilai's growing closeness to the agricultural world and increasing estrangement from his nomadic heritage."[86] It is interesting to note that these princes all supported Qubilai in his conflict with Arigh Böke, a conflict that according to the same scholars centered on the same subject.[87] It seems that the immediate cause of the conflict was the administrative changes that Qubilai endeavored to introduce in Manchuria (Liaoyang) in 1286 in order to strengthen the authority of the central government there. The resistance of the princes, which compelled Qubilai to forego these changes,[88] reinforces the version of Marco Polo, who left a vivid portrayal of Nayan's revolt. According to Polo, Nayan rebelled because he had a great force, and he did not wish to be a vassal of the Qa'an any longer, even aspiring to take some of the latter's territories.[89] It seems that the descendants of Chinggis Khan's brothers also wished to obtain *de facto* independence from Qubilai, as the Golden Horde, the Ilkhans, and Qaidu had already done. Perhaps this is the real meaning of Rashīd al-Dīn's assertion that Nayan and his followers attempted to join Qaidu and Du'a.[90]

When Nayan planned his rebellion, according to Marco Polo, he sought the support of Qaidu. Qaidu accepted the overture with alacrity and dispatched troops to go up through Mongolia to join Nayan's forces, and thus to attack the Yuan from the north and west simultaneously.[91] This alliance represented a serious danger for Qubilai, and accordingly he immediately set out in person against Nayan. At the same time he sent a force to Qara Qorum to block Qaidu's advance on this front, and another force to southern Manchuria to prevent the forces of Qadan (Hadan), the son of Chinggis's brother Qachi'un, from joining Nayan.[92]

Qubilai's swift response took Nayan by surprise, and in the decisive battle between the two, waged in mid-July 1287 only a month or two after the beginning of the rebellion, Qubilai scored an overwhelming victory, took Nayan captive and subsequently had him executed.[93] Qubilai also dispersed the forces of the rebel princes, so that they could no longer constitute a danger to his regime. He then subordinated them to his grandson, Kammala (Ganmala), who from 1286 commanded the garrison in Mongolia.[94]

In fact, Qaidu's troops did not come to Nayan's assistance, possibly because of the swift suppression of the rebellion, nor to the assistance of the remains of his faction, against which the Yuan troops continued

to fight for several years.[95] Qaidu did, however, exploit the movement of Yuan troops from Mongolia eastward to Manchuria in order to extend his arena of activity northward to Mongolia.

In 1288 the *Yuan shi* makes mention of a record four incursions by Qaidu and one by Du'a. At least three of the incursions were northward to Mongolia, around the Hirgis Nuur basin (*Yeligan-naoer*), in the northwest of Outer Mongolia.[96] The increase in Qaidu's power at this time is also demonstrated by the fact that in the same year he also carried out a small-scale incursion into the Ilkhanate's territory, a measure unprecedent in the former decades.[97]

In 1289 Qaidu continued to carry out border raids, together with Arigh Böke's son, *Yomuqur.[98] Qubilai sent his grandson, Kammala, to subdue Qaidu. The two met at the Qanghai (Hanghai) mountains east of Altai. Qaidu's army occupied the strategic positions, drove Kammala's army back and then surrounded it. The Qipchaqi commander *Tuq Tuqa (Tutuha) managed to free the surrounded army, which then retreated and instructed Qubilai's commissioners in Qara Qorum to flee as well. The commissioner of the Pacification Bureau in Qara Qorum, Kebei (Qiebo), feared that he would not have time to flee, and so surrendered to Qaidu and joined his army in the pursuit of the Qa'an's army. Other commissioners followed the same course, and Qaidu's army took possession of Qara Qorum and undermined Qubilai's entire ruling system in Mongolia.[99]

Fearful of losing Mongolia, Qubilai set out to combat Qaidu in person. When Qubilai reached Qara Qorum, Qaidu retreated, and the two did not join in battle.[100] It should be noted that this is the only time that Qaidu attempted to invade Qara Qorum, and the first time that a direct confrontation seemed likely between Qaidu and Qubilai. Qaidu, however, retreated unimpeded from Qara Qorum.

Qubilai returned to his capital, but left behind his senior commander Bayan (Boyan) who had been stationed in Mongolia even before Nayan's revolt and who had faced Qaidu's incursions in 1288, as head of the garrison in Qara Qorum.[101] Although no longer in possession of Qara Qorum, Qaidu still held large areas of Mongolia and to the west of Mongolia: the Qanghai mountains, the Upper Yenisei region, and the Barin region, between the Yenisei and Irtish. During the years 1290–93, several skirmishes occurred between Qaidu's army and the Qa'an's commissioners.

The first of these was in 1290 when Arigh Böke's sons, Melik Temür and *Yomuqur, attacked the camp of Prince *Yaqudu (Yahudu), who had accompanied Kammala. *Yaqudu was occupied

with an attack on the remnants of Nayan's supporters, and Melik Temür and *Yomuqur plundered his camp without interruption. The commander of the Yuan troops in the area, *Dorduka (Tuoertuohai), who did not stop them, was summoned to the court by Qubilai. Fearing for his life, he joined the rebels.[102]

In autumn 1292, Qaidu and Melik Temür invaded the domains of the Yuan. The *Yuan shi* notes explicitly that it was Melik Temür who pushed Qaidu to this action. Qubilai sent Bayan against them. The two armies met at the *Asaqtu (Asahutu) ridge, west of the Qanghai mountains and south of the Jabkan river, and Melik Temür suffered a resounding defeat.[103] Taking advantage of the fact that the troops were tied down in the south, *Tuq Tuqa invaded from the north, crossed the Altai mountains and took three thousand of Qaidu's men captive.[104]

Nevertheless, Qaidu did more than suffer losses in this period. This is clear from a malicious rumor that came to the ears of Qubilai in 1292 that Bayan, who had long been stationed on the northern border, had established friendly relations with Qaidu and had thus not taken even a handful of land from his possession. Qubilai decided to replace Bayan with another commander, Üs Temür (Yuxi Tiemuer). Even before the new commander arrived at the border, Bayan had to fight off yet another incursion by Qaidu, who was driven back.[105]

In 1293 *Tuq Tuqa advanced to the Qirghiz domains (Qilijisi) and in a series of victories succeeded in driving Qaidu's forces from the Yenisei region, which was restored to Yuan control, thus keeping Qaidu away from Mongolia.[106] Military colonies and postal stations were established in the area.[107] While prepared to give up territory in Central Asia, the Yuan dynasty was not prepared to relinquish control of Mongolia, which was important for the defence of the capital Dadu (Beijing); its economic development was, moreover, more successful than the development of Central Asia and thus allowed the maintaining of garrisons. The control of the the Mongols' homeland was also important for maintaining of Qubilai's legitimacy. In 1293 the Yuan dynasty regained its control over the area, that Qaidu had held since 1289.[108]

During this period Arigh Böke's sons played a major role in Qaidu's forces. These princes, whose original appanages were in Mongolia and the Yenisei region, were extremely active in inciting Qaidu to act in this area. It should be noted that the incursion in 1289 was Qaidu's only attempt to take control of Qara Qorum. Qaidu's willingness to give up the old Mongol capital so readily serves as further

corroborative evidence that he did not see himself as the Mongol Qa'an.

In 1294 Qaidu took captive the men of Asu (Alans[109]) in Mongolia, and compelled the emperor to pay a ransom for them. In other words, even though he no longer held much territory in Mongolia, he could still threaten the Emperor's revenues from there.[110]

There is no evidence that Qaidu took advantage of Qubilai's death (1294) or the participation of most of the border commanders in the enthronement of Temür (1295) for a special attack, though a small raid of his troops to Yuan's "Western border" was allegedly checked by a lesser commander in 1295.[111] The *Yuan shi* ascribed his relative inactivity to *Tuq Tuqa's former successes.[112] It is also possible that Qaidu was occupied with a confrontation in the west with Nauruz, who had turned against him, and that he then preferred to take advantage of the instability among the Ilkhans in this period.[113]

Temür (Chengzong, 1294–1307), Qubilai's grandson and successor, took the border threat seriously. In contrast to Qubilai, Temür desisted from the Yuan's unsuccessful attempts to expand towards Japan and Southeast Asia, and was thus able to send a larger army against Qaidu.[114] Rashīd al-Dīn gives a rather detailed description of the situation on the borders and of its commanders:

> Between their (i.e. Qaidu and Du'a) frontiers and those of the Qa'an is a forty day journey through the desert. The armies and scouts of both sides are stationed on the frontiers, defending their territories and keeping a lookout; and sometimes there is also fighting. The Qa'an's frontier in that direction extends eastwards for a month's journey and there are armies and scouts in most of the vital places.[115]

Rashīd al-Dīn mentions seven garrisons under the command of either princes or renowned generals. Five garrisons were stationed in Mongolia: Those are the forces of prince Kammala, Temür's brother and the general commander of Qara Qorum and the northern border up to the Upper Yenisei since 1292;[116] west of there was stationed Temür's brother-in-law, Körgüz Küregen (Kuolijisi); adjoining his district was that of *Chong 'ur (Zhuangwuer), *Tuq Tuqa's son who succeeded his father in 1297; then the tümen commander Nangiyadai (Nanjiatai); then Kököchü, Qubilai's son, who was taken captive during the princes' rebellion. The Hexi-Tangut region was guarded by prince Ananda (Ananda), Qubilai's Muslim grandson. The Chaghadaid princes Ajiki and Chübei, Alghu's son, were stationed near Qara

Qocho. Qara Qocho, according to Rashīd al-Dīn, was the border between Qaidu's territory and the Qa'ans: its people "are on good terms with them both and render service to both sides." A system of postal stations ensured a link among the armies and between them and the capital, transmitting warnings and enlisting swift assistance when necessary.[117]

The strengthening of the borders is also shown by the fact that in 1295 Temür sent garrisons to Besh Baliq and to Kucha in the Tarim basin (Quxian talin).[118] Already in 1296–97, however, there is evidence of the withdrawal of these troops.[119] The "creeping annexation" of Yuan territories by Qaidu and Du'a also continued during Temür's lifetime, and by 1304 Qara Qocho was an integral part of Du'a's domain.[120]

Temür's accession and the strengthening of the borders, as well as Qaidu's losses in Mongolia and a severe famine, led Arigh Böke's son *Yomuqur and Shiregi's son Ulus Buqa, together with the amīr *Dorduka, to desert Qaidu in 1296 and to return to the Qa'an's ranks.[121] On their way back they plundered the territories of the Yuan through which they passed, causing great damage to the population.[122] Notwithstanding, Temür saw their return as a great achievement, and in 1297 he arranged a series of grants from the court, and stationed them on the northern border opposite Qaidu.[123]

In 1297, Qaidu's and Du'a's forces were obliged to retreat several times before the forces of the border commands, led by *Yomuqur and *Dorduka. The fighting took place in the Barin (Balin) region between the Yenisei and Irtish, on the border of the territories of the Qa'an and the White Horde, and south of there.[124]

The fighting on the borders of the White Horde probably encouraged Bayan, its leader, to propose to Temür a combined Mongol coalition against Qaidu, composed of the White Horde, the Yuan, the Ilkhanate and the ruler of Badakhshān. Rashīd al-Dīn dates Bayan's suggestion to 1298/9, and says that Temür rejected this proposal on the advice of his mother, who argued that it was better to consolidate his position in China, than to devote a large force to distant Central Asia.[125] Presumably, Bayan's suggestion came in early 1298, following the series of Yuan victories, when Temür was rather assured of his ability to guard Yuan frontiers and unwilling to undertake costly adventures.

Du'a's reaction changed the situation: in late 1298 he set out to redress the recent setbacks. He attacked in winter, while the Yuan garrisons relaxed after their recent series of victories over Qaidu.[126]

Rashīd al-Dīn describes the commanders feasting and drinking, and when they heard that the enemy army was approaching, most of them were too drunk to mount their horses.[127]

The only alert commander who went to meet Du'a, Temür's brother-in-law Körgüz, received no assistance from the drunken commanders and was swiftly defeated. According to Rashīd al-Dīn, Du'a spared his life when he discovered that he was the emperor's brother-in-law; Chinese sources testify that Du'a treated Körgüz according to "the sons-in-law's ettiquete," tried to persuade him to come over to his side, and even offered his own daughter in marriage, all of which Körgüz proudly declined.[128]

After this successful attack, Du'a withdrew, and was in turn attacked by the Qa'an's garrison troops, in which *Yomuqur and Ulus Boqa again played a major role, apparently under the overall command of *Chong'ur. Du'a's new complacent troops were defeated in *Qorqatu (Huoerhatu), a very mountainous region east of the Altai in the region of modern Qobdo (Kebuduo).[129] The Yuan troops failed to free Körgüz, but according to Rashīd al-Dīn, they did take Du'a's brother-in-law captive. The brother-in-law's capture opened the way for a prisoner exchange. There was initiative for this on both sides, and messengers were exchanged. [130] According to Rashīd al-Dīn, the Qa'an favored the exchange of prisoners and sent Du'a's brother-in-law with followers of Körgüz and expensive gifts. However, when they reached Du'a's domains, they found that Temür's brother-in-law was already dead. Du'a's men explained that they had sent him to Qaidu and he died on the way.[131] Chinese sources just say that Körgüz was almost immediately taken away from the messenger and was eventually put to death because of his recalcitrance.[132]

Rashīd al-Dīn (followed by Mīrkhwānd), maintains that this attack by Du'a was part of the overall offensive that he planned on the Yuan garrisons,[133] but it seems that the battle was on no greater a scale than that of the regular skirmishes between the Qa'an forces and the forces of Qaidu and Du'a, although the killing of an important Yuan commander and the capture of the Emperor's brother-in-law was a serious assault on the Yuan's prestige.

Temür took steps to prevent the repetition of similar incidents. In 1299 he made Qaishan (Haishan, who would later succeed Temür) responsible for the border, in place of Kököchü who had been negligent in its defence.[134] Yet Kammala retained his senior position. Shortly afterwards Temür started planning a large-scale attack against Qaidu and Du'a, instructing the princes to combine all their forces

and recruit a large army to fight Qaidu and Du'a.[135] Temür's decision to mount such a conclusive assault, so different from the usual skirmishes that characterized the confrontation so far, was perhaps influenced by his knowledge that Qaidu was bogged down in conflicts with other Mongol branches, the Jochids and the Ilkhans, as attested by Bayan's proposal. However, Rashīd al-Dīn's assertion that the final Yuan attack against Qaidu was indeed an implementation of such a coalition is not substantiated in Chinese or Muslim sources, according to which only Yuan forces fought against Qaidu.[136] The *Yuan shi*, Mīrkhwānd, Rashīd al-Dīn and Waṣṣāf all make it clear, moreover, that the initiative for the battle came from Temür.[137] Thus it is difficult to accept the claim in the *Xin Yuan shi* that the battle represented another attempt by Qaidu and Du'a to invade Qara Qorum.[138]

In any case, the Yuan assault began at 1300. Qaishan forces fought against Qaidu at Kuobielie, east of the Altai, causing him to lose at least the head of one of his generals. Qaidu beat a strategic retreat, and Qaishan was able to advance to the Altai only after Kammala supplied his exhausted troops with provisions.[139] The *Yuan shi* indicates that Qaishan was victorious, but in the same year it also notes that the army in the north was lazy and undisciplined, thereby giving rise to the assumption that the Yuan forces suffered a setback.[140] Meanwhile, *Chong 'ur launched another attack, which successfully drove the Ögödeid princes beyond the Altai.[141]

Aware of the seriousness of Temür's intentions, Qaidu sent for Du'a. Yet Du'a refused to come, claiming that his troops were fatigued and wounded, and his cattle weak. In addition to this practical reason, he also claimed that the descendants of Chinggis Khan were killing each other and it was better to cease the fighting and to make peace. Qaidu was not prepared to receive this answer and commanded Du'a to arrive immediately. He himself set out against the Qa'an's troops.[142] According to Waṣṣāf, Qaidu set out to repel the Qa'an in early 700/late 1300.[143]

The actual battle took place in the automn of 1301.[144] Qaidu encamped on Mount Tiejiangu, south of the Altai, in the southwest of Mongolia and west of the Jabkan river.[145] Conscious of his numerical inferiority to the Yuan forces, Qaidu preferred to await reinforcements from Du'a. Mīrkhwānd notes that the Yuan's army had never been so large in relation to Qaidu's army. Even if the 100:1 ratio given by Mīrkhwānd is exaggerated, it is very probable that the mobilization of all the Yuan's garrisons could have placed a far larger force than Qaidu's army at Qaishan's disposal. The large number of Yuan

army commanders mentioned in the *Yuan shi*, all the border commanders and many others, shows that this was an unprecedented mobilization of forces. The *Yuan shi* does not enumerate the troops who participated in the battle. Mīrkhwānd estimates that the Yuan army stood at ten or a hundred *tümens*. There is no estimate of Qaidu's forces in the sources, except for Waṣṣāf's reference to the fact that forty-one princes accompanied Qaidu.[146]

Recognizing his numerical inferiority, Qaidu waited, and even considered retreating without joining battle. The Yuan forces, perhaps aware that Qaidu was waiting for reinforcements, attacked him on September 3rd, 1301 on Mount Tiejiangu.[147] The sources agree that at this stage the Yuan forces won a resounding victory. The most explicit is Mīrkhwānd, who says that in the one to three days of fighting Qaidu was wounded and narrowly escaped capture. The Qa'an's commanders already planned to lead his *ordo* to China. The same night Qaidu commanded all his men to light fires. Seeing the line of flames, Yuan soldiers were afraid that Qaidu had received large reinforcements. Qaidu retreated under cover of night, but Yuan soldiers held back from attacking him out of fear that his retreat was designed to lure them into his territory so that he could ambush them afterwards.[148]

Two days later Qaidu assembled all his men, together with Du'a's troops who had arrived in the meantime, and fought against the Qa'an's army at *Qara Qada (Hala hata). This locality cannot be positively identified, although Mīrkhwānd claims that the battle was fought on the banks of the Irtish, namely west of Mount Tiejiangu.[149] This time the imperial army lost, but Qaishan and another general, *Yochicar (Yuechichaer), saved the situation when they penetrated the enemy's ranks, seized part of Qaidu's military supplies, rescued princes who had been taken captive, and attacked from the front and the rear simultaneously.[150] Another front was at Wuertu, also west of Tiejiangu, the exact position of which is also unknown. During the fighting there Du'a was wounded and defeated. However, his subsequent status and military power make it difficult to accept the *Yuan shi*'s assertion that most of his army perished.[151] Qaidu's forces, which were also involved in this battle, succeeded in driving the Yuan forces into a corner.[152]

The final battle occurred the following day. Of it the *Yuan shi* says:

> On the following day they fought again. The (imperial) army retreated a little. Qaidu took advantage of this. The future-

> emperor (Qaishan) fought bravely, penetrated to the enemy's rear and all the (imperial) army then came back.[153]

In the restrained language of the *Yuan shi*, the meaning of this narrative is that the Yuan imperial army was not victorious. Waṣṣāf and Mīrkhwānd clearly indicate that Qaidu won this battle, and Mīrkhwānd also adds that the Yuan army escaped to Qara Qorum, burning the grazing lands behind them so that Qaidu's forces could not pursue them. Qaidu's army also turned back rather than advancing to the east.[154]

Rashīd al-Dīn, on the other hand, maintains that Qaidu was defeated in the battle.[155] The *Yuan shi* also adopts an equivocal attitude and indicates in another place that Temür distributed gifts to the princes who participated in the battle.[156] The reason for this ambiguity is the fact that Qaidu did not have time to enjoy the fruits of his victory – he died shortly after the battle, and a year or two after his death Du'a made peace with the Qa'an, thus bringing to an end the prolonged confrontation between the princes of Central Asia and the Yuan dynasty.[157]

◇◇◇

The last battle between the forces of Qaidu and the Qa'an was on a large scale and asymptomatic of the general nature of the conflict between the two sides, a conflict characterized mainly by raids and border skirmishes. This battle made it clear to the Yuan dynasty that even with mobilization of a large part of its army it could not suppress Qaidu's threat by force.

Thus Qaidu succeeded in establishing for himself a kingdom independent of the Qa'an's authority, a state that encompassed Transoxania, Turkestan, Uighuria and at certain periods also parts of Mongolia. Qubilai seems to have surrendered his sovereignty in most of the area under Qaidu's rule, when he allotted to Alghu in 1264 the area between the Altai and the Oxus.[158] His later activities, such as the population census in Bukhara circa 1265;[159] the planned postal stations from Hülegü's domain up to China;[160] the dispatch of Nomuqan to Almaliq, formerly Alghu's base; and the attempt in 1276 to send men to work in Badakhshān (Badashan) bordering on the Ilkhanid territories;[161] all show that he had no intention of giving up his supremacy in the regional khanates altogether.

Whatever Qubilai's intentions, Qaidu obliged him to give up control of Central Asia. The fact that Qaidu was a descendant of

Ögödei, and thus had a claim to the Qa'an's throne, as the sources emphasize, certainly increased the menace in Qaidu's insurgence. Aside from the rival claim of blood, Qubilai's failure to impose his authority on two of the Mongol *uluses* was sufficient to impair his prestige, and to cast constant doubt on his legitimacy. Moreover, the location of Qaidu's kingdom in the heart of the Mongol empire made it difficult for Qubilai to assert his power in the other branches of the family.

The *Yuan shi* and Marco Polo indicate that Qaidu received better treatment from the Qa'an than other rebels because he was a descendant of Chinggis Khan.[162] Qaidu's origin certainly contributed to the Qa'an's attempts to appease him initially, but it seems that the emphasis on the special treatment is designed principally to disguise Qubilai's failure to eliminate Qaidu. Indeed other princes who rebelled – the outstanding example is Nayan – were treated without mercy.[163]

Chinese sources and Rashīd al-Dīn stress that the initiative for the confrontation came from Qaidu, who rebelled ceaselessly against the Qa'an.[164] On the other hand, Qarshī, Het'um and Waṣṣāf blame Qubilai for the imbroglio, the aim of which was to take Turkestan from Qaidu.[165]

The outcome of this confrontation is also controversial. The *Yuan shi* and other Chinese sources indicate that Qaidu lost repeatedly,[166] while Muslim sources stress precisely his ability always to vanquish the Qa'an's army.[167] It is possible that some of the difference in the approaches derives not only from the bias of the *Yuan shi* but also from the fact that the Chinese saw a retreat as a defeat, even if it followed plundering the revenues of a given area, whereas the Muslims saw it as a victory.[168] The military aspects of the confrontation will be reviewed in Chapter IV. Here we will note only that the picture of victory and defeat is slightly more balanced than that presented in the Chinese or the Muslim sources. Although Qaidu was victorious in most of the confrontations with the Yuan, in the 1290s he suffered a series of defeats by the Qa'an's army. A reason for these setbacks can be the fact that in these years Qaidu was also fighting on other fronts, against the Ilkhans and the White Horde, and this reduced the force which he could deploy against the Qa'an.

Chinese and Persian sources explain Qaidu's anger over the demotion of the house of Ögödei from the post of the Qa'an as the main motive for his rebellion.[169] Yet, the course of the confrontation

as described above makes it difficult to accept the argument that Qaidu saw himself as a rival Qa'an to Qubilai and subsequently to Temür: Qaidu did not hurry to impose his authority on new territories, and did not oppose Yuan nominal rule in a given area, as long as he could obtain what he wanted from that area. He did not hesitate to retreat. He never tried to enter China proper (in contrast to Qubilai's attempt to rule in Almaliq), nor was it he who escalated the confrontation from the level of a border skirmish to a real engagement. Only once, and possibly not on his own initiative, did Qaidu invade Qara Qorum, the symbolic center of the Mongol world, and he readily evacuated this town, unlike Qubilai who felt compelled to defend it. It is easy to see the difference between the struggle between Qubilai and Arigh Böke, a struggle of two rival Qa'ans who fought a few decisive battles, and the confrontation between Qubilai and Qaidu.

What then was Qaidu's goal? Marco Polo maintains that Qaidu demanded from Qubilai the part of his father's conquests that belonged to him by right,[170] and indeed it seems that Qaidu's goal was local and was limited to the restoration of the rights of the Ögödeid *ulus* to its patrimonial estates. In this context it is perhaps significant that two of the main areas of confrontation between Qaidu and the Qa'an, Besh Baliq and the Irtish, were lands that Möngke allocated to sons of Ögödei whose descendants supported Qaidu,[171] while the Altai mountains, another important front, were part of the original Ögödeid appanage.

It is very probable that the personal enmity between Qaidu and Qubilai, or between the house of Ögödei and the house of Tolui, played a role in Qaidu's activities, but a practical cause for his activities cannot be disregarded: like other nomads on the borders of China throughout history, Qaidu needed to augment his income from the populated areas bordering on his domain, and he also required employment for his troops.[172]

The prolonged confrontation with Qaidu had several consequences for the Yuan dynasty: in addition to harming the Qa'an's prestige, the constant confrontation called for the maintaining of large military forces as a border garrison. This economic burden impaired the dynasty's ability to expand its conquests in other directions, such as Japan.[173] The large army that stood at the disposal of the princes on the northern border allowed them to mobilize great forces quickly and thus to become leading contenders in the struggle for the next emperor's throne.[174]

Another consequence of the struggle was the serious harm to the border areas, such as Uighuria, where the frequent passage of armies destroyed the economy, as attested by Rashīd al-Dīn and the *Yuan shi*.[175]

The fighting on the route between China and Europe and Western Asia was also detrimental to the trade routes passing though Central Asia, and reduced the volume of China's overland trade. It is difficult to estimate the extent of the damage, and probably a certain amount of trade no doubt continued on these routes even during the heat of the battle, yet the internecine warfare certainly contributed to the shift of much of China's trade to the sea.[176]

2. The Ilkhans

Even though Rashīd al-Dīn maintains that Qaidu frequently fought against Qubilai and Abaqa,[177] the first specific information that historian gives as to the relationship between the latter and Qaidu points to their pact of friendship in 1270, when Qaidu informed Abaqa that he was no longer supporting Baraq. Qaidu's position was one of the factors that contributed to Abaqa's victory, and this victory in turn greatly helped to bolster Qaidu's power. This shortlived friendship ended in 1273, however, when Abaqa laid waste to Bukhara. At this time Qaidu was engaged in his struggles with the sons of Alghu and Baraq, and was unable to counter Abaqa's invasion.[178]

The first mention of a confrontation between Qaidu and the Ilkhans dates from 1288, when envoys from Khurāsān informed the Ilkhan Arghun (1284–91) that they had been attacked by three thousand horsemen from Qaidu's army. These horsemen, commanded by the Chaghadaid Yasa'ur Noyan, came from Panjab, invaded Balkh, Marv, and Shabūrghān, and arrived in the environs of Nīshāpūr.[179] Arghun did not rebuff this invasion, possibly because immediately afterwards he faced a more serious invasion by the Golden Horde.[180]

Qaidu's and Du'a's armies were involved in Khurāsān far more extensively in the 1290s, motivated by Nauruz's rebellion: this commander, who is remembered in history principally as the man who intrigued the conversion of the Ilkhan Ghazan to Islam, was the son of Arghun Aqa, head of the regional administration of Khurāsān from Ögödei's reign until his own death in 1275. Nauruz inherited his father's position, but in 1289 rebelled against Arghun, who at the same time faced a revolt by his Vizier, Boqa.[181] Nauruz tried to

establish himself as an independent ruler in Khurāsān, using Prince *Kingshu as a puppet ruler.[182] While contemplating resistance to the Ilkhan army sent against him by Ghazan (then Nauruz's commander as ruler of Khurāsān),[183] or after actually losing to the Ilkhanid army at Herat,[184] Nauruz sought Qaidu's friendship and even performed various services for him. In return he pleaded for an army. Qaidu lent the army in Transoxania, commanded by Yasa'ur, to Nauruz and sent him his son Sarban, with other princes of the house of Ögödei.[185] Sarban, who lived in Badakhshān and Panjab, on the banks of the Oxus, maintained responsibility for the border with the Ilkhans in the following years too.[186] One may assume that Qaidu acceded to Nauruz's request because of the latter's proven capabilities (by virtue of which Ghazan subsequently pardoned him) and his familiarity with Khurāsān. Another factor that certainly contributed to Qaidu's willingness to provide an army was the fact that Nauruz then commanded at least part of the Qara'unas. This was a group of Mongols based in Ghazna, who ruled over a large part of Afghanistan and endeavored to remain independent of both the Ilkhans and the Chaghadaids.[187]

In 1291 Nauruz invaded Khurāsān as the vanguard of Qaidu's army, reaching the edges of Mashhad. At the same time the Qara'unas invaded Iran. For at least a year Nauruz plundered Khurāsān (Tūs, Nīshāpūr, Badghīs), wreaking wholesale destruction.[188] These invasions coincided with Arghun's death (1291) and the outbreak of a succession struggle among the Ilkhans, and thus Nauruz was able to act relatively freely without having to contend with the Ilkhanid army.[189]

It seems that Nauruz did not afterwards abandon his intention of becoming an independent ruler in Khurāsān. When he became stronger he attempted to rebel against Qaidu. Nauruz befriended Prince Ürük Temür, the grandson of Ögödei's son Qadan, gave him his daughter in marriage, and apparently also sponsored his conversion to Islam. According to Waṣṣāf, Nauruz and Ürük Temür became allies in order to "purify the Oxus vicinity of Qaidu's impure forces and to spread the Islamic religion."[190] They therefore set out to fight Yasa'ur's army. Informed of the alliance, Qaidu may have reinforced his troops. In any case, Nauruz and Ürük Temür were unable to vanquish Yasa'ur's army and retreated to Herat.

Despite his retreat, Nauruz issued edicts throughout Khurāsān, in the name of Ürük Temür, and when he recovered his strength again laid siege to Nīshāpūr. In the meantime, Ürük Temür was persuaded

that Nauruz's aspirations were also endangering him, and rejoined Qaidu with his army. His desertion was one of the main reasons that led Nauruz to surrender to Ghazan (1294).[191] As for Ürük Temür, Qaidu had him summoned and executed.[192]

There is no information on Sarban's activities at the time of Nauruz's action, either in seizing control of Khurāsān or in suppressing his rebellion. It is possible that he did not take an active part in the events and remained east of the Oxus.

Nauruz's revolt prompted the desertion of another Ilkhanid commander, Uighurtai, to Qaidu's ranks. In about 1291 Uighurtai proclaimed Jurjān and eastern Māzandarān subject to Qaidu, but the Ilkhan's commanders drove Uighurtai eastward toward Qaidu's army. Unlike Nauruz, Uighurtai subsequently remained loyal to him.[193]

Uighurtai's familiarity with the roads of Māzandarān allowed Du'a to conduct a large-scale incursion into Khurāsān and Māzandarān in early 1295, together with Sarban, Qaidu's son, and with Ebügen, a descendant of Jochi Qasar. Du'a took advantage of the absence of Ghazan and many of his commanders, who were occupied with the war of succession with Baidu (enthroned in March 1295, and killed in October 1295). He took control of the property that Ghazan and his men had left behind, and resided in Māzandarān for eight months.[194] On his way back from Māzandarān to the east in the autumn of 1295 Du'a pillaged many cities in Māzandarān and Khurāsān. He also attempted to persuade the governor of Herat to come over to his side and receive part of Khurāsān in return. The latter, however, preferred to report to Nauruz, now a vassal of the Ilkhans. In the meantime, Du'a's forces attacked the cities of Kusūi and Fushang, south of Herat. Kusūi withstood Du'a's siege and inflicted heavy losses on him, but the latter subdued Fushang, slaughtered many of its inhabitants or deported them to Transoxania. From there Du'a turned toward Herat, but refrained from an attack and returned to Transoxania.[195]

According to Harawī, Du'a stopped short of attacking Herat since his dreams and omens that he had received led him to believe that such an attack was doomed to failure, just as the attack by his father Baraq had failed. In order to avoid ridicule and to explain his departure, however, he spread a rumor that a large army was heading toward his domains from China.[196] It is very possible that the desertion of some of the princes from Du'a's army to the Qa'an's army (1296), or also the losses to the border commanders of the Yuan (1297), led Qaidu to summon Du'a to the east. Du'a, in any case, returned from Khurāsān without encountering any of the Ilkhanid

troops, since some of the troops that had been sent to combat him rebelled against Ghazan, and Nauruz had to fight them first.[197]

The next Chaghadaid attack on Ilkhanid lands occurred in the year 1300/1, when Du'a's troops, previously under the command of his son Qutlugh Qocha, invaded Fārs and Kirmān, while Ghazan was leading a campaign against the Mamluks.[198] In 1298/9 Du'a had appointed Qutlugh Qocha to be head of the Qara'unas, who thereby became subject to the Chaghadaids. In addition to the Ghaznīn and Sīstān region, the Qara'unas then ruled extensive areas of Khurāsān (Balkh, Shabūrghān, Badakhshān, Marv, etc.).[199] Although Qutlugh Qocha himself died shortly after this nomination, on his way back from invading the Delhi sultanate in 1299–1300,[200] his forces raided Fārs and Kirmān principally in order to obtain cattle. On their return from the raid, the troops lost part of the spoil to the governor of Hormūz.[201]

In Sha'bān 702/March 1303 the news of Qaidu's death must have come as a great relief to Ghazan.[202] In 1302 the Ilkhans had suffered another incursion, perhaps planned by Qaidu prior to his death, and carried out by his son Sarban. However, Öljeitu, the Ilkhanid governor of Khurāsān and Ghazan's future successor, managed to thwart this invasion, mainly because of the difficult weather conditions that prevented the former forces of Qutlugh Qocha from joining and assisting Sarban's forces.[203]

On September 19th, 1304, the Qa'an's emissaries arrived at the court of Öljeitu (1304–16), accompanied by the envoys of Chapar, Qaidu's son and heir, and of Du'a, in order to inform the Ilkhans of the peace accord among the Mongols.[204] The announcement was celebrated with great rejoicing, and for good reasons. This peace benefitted the Ilkhans greatly, since it avoided a conflict with the Golden Horde, and the internal struggles of the Central Asian princes in the wake of the "peace" gave Iran a decade-long respite on its eastern border. In the course of this decade Öljeitu regained control of Khurāsān and was able to defeat occasional invasion attempts from Central Asia.[205]

One of the consequences of the struggles in Central Asia was the surrender of some of Qaidu's troops, and principally of Sarban, to Öljeitu in 1306, after appropriation of most of Qaidu's territories by the house of Chaghadai and the wars between Sarban and Qutlugh Qocha's successor, Esen Buqa. Sarban died after his surrender, but his sons took their places in Öljeitu's army.[206]

From 1288 onwards Qaidu was in constant confrontation with the Ilkhans, and only the rumors that his daughter Qutulun intended to marry the Ilkhan Ghazan, intentions that came to nought, could suggest a tendency towards conciliation.[207] The confrontation was no more than a border fight, consisting mainly of brief invasions and plundering of cattle, captives and property, intended for Transoxania and Turkestan. There is a conspicuous difference between these incursions and the actions of Nauruz, who was quick to send edicts to announce his sovereignty. Nevertheless, in the course of these incursions, the Central Asian troops temporarily seized control of extensive parts of Khurāsān, and also raided other provinces such as Māzandarān, Kirmān, and Fārs.

The Ilkhans did not respond to these incursions, and in the main there were no military clashes between them and the Central Asian princes. The Ilkhans may have preferred to avoid escalation of the conflict both because they were preoccupied by internal problems and because they feared that escalation could lead to an alliance between Qaidu and the Golden Horde, perhaps even with the participation of the Mamluks.

It is difficult to attribute the motive for the incursions from Central Asia to the rivalry between the houses of Ögödei and Tolui, if only because the Central Asian incursions of the Chaghadaids again plagued Iran from the middle of the second decade of the fourteenth century, after the end of the internecine wars in Central Asia.[208] It is more probable that internal turmoil, such as Nauruz's revolt, succession struggles, and then the redeployment of most of the Ilkhan army to Syria, contributed to the continuation of and increase in incursions from Central Asia into Iran, and made Khurāsān a convenient place to obtain the cattle and captives desired by the nomads. Old enmities may well have been added to these practical motives, and not only the enmity between the houses of Ögödei and Tolui: Du'a, who played a dominant role in the raids into Iran, apparently considered himself entitled to conquer Khurāsān in order to avenge the loss of his father Baraq in 1270, and to reclaim the title to the region which Baraq had received at the *quriltai* of 1269.[209] It is also possible that Qaidu wished to retaliate for Abaqa's provocative invasion of Bukhara in 1273. Nevertheless, the main reasons for the raids from Central Asia seem to have been the practical need to obtain cattle and revenue and the fact that the internal situation in Iran made Ilkhanid territories vulnerable.

By attacking the Ilkhans in Khurāsān and beyond, Qaidu affected Iran in two ways. First he harmed the Ilkhans' relations with China:

Qaidu's control of the trade routes between Iran and China reduced the scale of trade and diplomatic missions between these two countries. Disruption of the relations also continued during the wars among the princes in Central Asia, despite the "peace." The large number of delegations exchanged between the Ilkhans and the Yuan in the time of Abū Saʿīd (1316–35), after termination of the war in Central Asia[210] attests to the potential of far broader relations than was the case in Qaidu's time. It is possible that the relative isolation of Iran from the Yuan and perhaps also the growth of Qaidu's power at the Qa'an's expense encouraged the Ilkhans to detach themselves, albeit informally, from dependence on the Qa'an.[211]

The second effect was the serious impairment of the Ilkhans' expansion in the direction of Syria: the raids from Central Asia obliged the Ilkhan troops to retreat repeatedly from Syria and did not allow them even to enjoy for long their only victory in their long war with the Mamluks. Baraq's invasion in 1270, for example, prevented Abaqa from responding to the advance of the Mamluk Sultan Baybars to Antioch and Rūm (1268/9).[212] A month after they finally vanquished the Mamluks in Wadi Khaznadār (December 1299) and conquered Damascus, the Ilkhans were obliged to retreat home, apparently in order to deal with the incursion of Qutlugh Qocha's forces. Het'um explicitly states that Ghazan's troops retreated because of the advance of Qaidu's army.[213] The fact that in 1303 Ghazan did not personally lead the incursion to Syria and even did not pursue the siege of Raḥba, opting instead to return to Iran, may very well be related to Sarban's invasion of Khurāsān in this period.[214] It is not surprising that Öljeitu quickly exploited the peace among the Mongols in order to write to the King of France and to propose a joint coalition against the Mamluks.[215] However, nothing came of this idea. Nor did Öljeitu take advantage of the internal wars between the Central Asian princes in order to conduct a serious invasion into Mamluk territories.

Brief mention should also be made of the relationship between Qaidu and the Mamluks: these relations commenced apparently in the time of the Mamluk Sultan Baybars (1260–77), on the initiative of Möngke Temür, the Khan of the Golden Horde. In the late 1270s, Möngke Temür proposed that the Mamluks establish relations with Qaidu on the basis of their shared hostility towards the Ilkhans.[216] Qalawun, Baybars' successor (1279–90), approved of Möngke Temür's idea, and dispatched envoys to Qaidu in the years 1282–84, at the same time that he sent envoys to the Golden Horde.[217]

It is probable that the relations between Qaidu and the Mamluks continued for there is evidence that relations existed in Chapar's time up to the fall of the house of Ögödei.[218] Yet the meager and blurred information on Qaidu in the Mamluk sources shows that these diplomatic relations were limited in scope. Since the initiative in the Mongol-Mamluk war came mainly from the Ilkhans' side, it is unlikely that there was military or intelligence cooperation between Qaidu's troops and the Mamluks, although they obviously benefitted from each other's activities.

Beyond the diplomatic ties, however, it is possible that there were also commercial links. According to Nuwayrī, Egypt imported Mamluks from Qaidu's territory. (These may well have been taken from the great numbers of captives acquired in Iran.)[219] ʿUmarī, on the other hand, indicates that until the time of Tarmashirin (Chaghadaid Khan, 1326–34), Transoxania was not open to traders from Egypt and Syria.[220] This testimony, together with the paucity of information on Qaidu in the Mamluk sources, attests that even if there were such trade relations, they were of limited importance.

3. The Jochids: the Golden Horde and the White Horde

The Golden Horde played a decisive role in Qaidu's rise: it was the khan Berke, after all, who in ca. 1264/5 gave Qaidu an army to fight against their common enemy Alghu, and in fact recognized his right to rule over the Chaghadaid domains. Möngke Temür saved Qaidu from Baraq in 1268, and in the course of the *quriltai* that followed this battle retained a measure of supremacy over Qaidu, the *quriltai* decisions being sent for his approval. A war subsequently broke out between the two leaders, when Qaidu apparently withheld from Möngke Temür the territory that the *quriltai* had awarded him. Despite this war, and despite Möngke Temür's later promise to help Qubilai eliminate the rebel,[221] the alliance between Qaidu and Möngke Temür seems to have recovered sufficiently by the middle 1270s, and the Golden Horde may well have retained a certain position of supremacy in it.

In 1276/7, when Nomuqan's retainers rebelled against him, they sent An Tong, the most important Chinese general in Nomuqan's retinue, to Qaidu; Nomuqan was sent to Möngke Temür.[222] It is also possible that it was Qaidu who sent Nomuqan to the Golden Horde.[223] The princes in question also spread false rumors that they had the support of both the descendants of Batu and of Qaidu,

implying an alliance between the two.[224] Toward the end of the 1270s, Möngke Temür suggested that the Mamluk Sultan Baybars should establish ties with Qaidu as a possible ally against Abaqa, although the Golden Horde itself did not join such an alliance, perhaps because of the "peace" then existing between them and the Ilkhans.[225] Finally, the tension between the Golden Horde and Qubilai and the former's unresolved dispute with the Ilkhans made Qaidu and the Golden Horde natural allies.

If the Golden Horde did hold a position of superiority in the relations with Qaidu, it probably did not retain it after the early 1280s; following Möngke Temür's death (1280), a dual rule existed in the Golden Horde, with Prince Noqai in fact serving as a joint ruler with the enthroned Khans.[226] The resulting internal conflict weakened the Golden Horde's power, while Qaidu's strength increased from the beginning of the 1280s. Nonetheless, Rashīd al-Dīn maintains that Qaidu's return of An Tong in 1283/4 was still influenced by the Horde's decision to return Nomuqan.[227]

Along with the political connections between the realms, one should note that part of the trade to and within Qaidu's domains (e.g., the trade in Mamluks) passed through the Golden Horde's domain, and the fact that Qarshī indicates that the city of Jand, on Qaidu's border with the Golden Horde, served as a trade city with many markets reinforces this suggestion.[228]

According to Rashīd al-Dīn and Waṣṣāf, the Golden Horde took advantage of the return of Nomuqan to improve its strained relations with the Yuan court,[229] although the *Yuan shi* indicates that the conciliation with "Batu's descendants" occurred only under the Qa'an Temür.[230] The improved relations between the Yuan and the Golden Horde are described explicitly in the last years of the thirteenth century, the period of the Khan Toqto'a (1291–1312). Rashīd al-Dīn also mentions that Toqto'a supported the Qa'an against Qaidu and subsequently against his son Chapar.[231] As long as the Golden Horde was engaged in internal struggles, its Central Asian policy had little significance, but after Toqto'a vanquished Noqai in 1299,[232] his support of the Qa'an became more dangerous for Qaidu and his successors.

At this time, in the late thirteenth century, Qaidu was involved in a dispute with another group of Jochi's sons – the White Horde. These were the descendants of Orda, the eldest son of Jochi, who theoretically were part of the Golden Horde but in fact had an independent *ulus*. The White Horde's territory extended from north of

the right bank of the Jaxartes to the Ulugh Tao mountains, in central Kazakhstan, i.e., it bordered Qaidu's territory on the north.[233] Qaidu seems to have cooperated at first with this group, since Rashīd al-Dīn mentions that in the mid-1260s Qonichi, the later head of the White Horde, fought on Qaidu's side.[234] The same historian also indicates that refugees of the princes' revolt who surrendered to Qonichi in the late 1270s were subsequently in Qaidu's service.[235]

Qonichi, however, participated in 1284 in the Jochids council that decided to return Nomuqan to China, and there are several pieces of evidence suggesting that from then on he strove to improve his relationship with both Qubilai and the Ilkhans. The *Yuan Shi* mentions, for example, that in February 1288 the emperor granted prince Qonichi (Huonizhi) 500 ounces of silver, a string of pearls and a suit of embroidered clothes; and in the next year Qubilai sent relief to Qonichi's forces.[236] Rashīd al-Dīn notes, too, that Qonichi was on friendly terms with the Ilkhans Arghun (1284–91) and Ghazan (1295–1304), "to whom he was constantly sending ambassadors to express his affection and devotion."[237]

Qonichi's new policy and the threat of a "grand alliance" of the Mongol *uluses* against them, probably encouraged Qaidu and Du'a to interfere in the internal affairs of the White Horde. Their involvement became apparent in the last years of the thirteenth century, after Qonichi's death, when his son and heir, Bayan, tried to defend his position. Bayan's cousin, Küilük,[238] challenged the former's right to rule over the *ulus*, and Qaidu and Du'a chose to support him, perhaps in order to weaken Bayan. With the assistance of their troops, Küilük vanquished Bayan. The defeated Bayan sought the help of Toqto'a, the Khan of the Golden Horde. As already noted, Toqto'a was fighting Noqai, and accordingly did not send troops to Bayan's assistance. He used Bayan's appeal to underscore his right to rule over the White Horde, however, and he sent envoys to Qaidu and Du'a, demanding that they extradite Küilük, a request that they understandably ignored.[239] Rashīd al-Dīn indicates that up to the early fourteenth century the cousins fought fifteen battles, in the course of which Küilük seized some of the domains of Bayan, whose troops were drained by the prolonged fighting.[240]

In about 1298, probably encouraged by recent Yuan achievements against Qaidu in the Barin region that bordered the White Horde's domain, Bayan asked for the Qa'an's help in his struggle with KüilüK. Moreover, he attempted to form a joint coalition against Qaidu, that would combine the forces of the Yuan, the Ilkhans, the White Horde

and the ruler of Badakhshān.[241] Luckily for Qaidu, Temür rejected this proposal.[242] Nevertheless, Qaidu took the threat of the "grand alliance" seriously, stationing on Bayan's border a large force under the command of his sons Shāh and *Yangichar,[243] and of Melik Temür, son of Arigh Böke. The mission of these forces was to block attempts at joint action against Qaidu, and to continue the pressure on Bayan.[244]

In 1302/3 Bayan again proposed a supra-Mongol coalition, this time against Du'a and Chapar, Qaidu's son and successor.[245] The danger of such a coalition to the army of the Central Asian princes was now even greater, not only because of Qaidu's death, which greatly weakened their power, but also because Toqto'a no longer had to cope with Noqai and was therefore free to join the coalition against them. One may assume that recognition of this situation was one of the main motives for Du'a's decision to seek reconciliation with the Qa'an.

The peace treaty among the Mongols (1304) seems also to have included the settlement of the dispute in the White Horde,[246] and it certainly brought about a temporary reconciliation between the Golden Horde and the Ilkhans.[247] In wake of the struggles between the Ögödeid and Chaghadaid princes after the "peace accord," Baba (a descendant of Jochi Qasar), and other princes who were subordinate to Qaidu, opted to surrender to the Golden Horde.[248] However, in 1313/14 Baba, at the head of these princes, invaded Khwārizm, which belonged to the Golden Horde, and sought to offer their services to the Ilkhan Öljeitu, thus creating renewed tension between the Golden Horde and the Ilkhans. Öljeitu chose instead to kill Baba in order to avert a reopening of the conflict with the Golden Horde.[249]

To summarize, the most important consequence of Qaidu's activities for Jochi's descendants was the final cession of the Golden Horde's rights and control over Transoxania and Central Asia.[250] Initially, Qaidu may have held this territory on behalf of or together with the Golden Horde, but it seems that already Möngke Temür agreed willynilly to renounce his rights to the territory in Transoxania that was set as his part at the *quriltai* of 1269. Qaidu's increased power, together with the internal conflicts within the Golden Horde led to the loss of its influence over Qaidu and over the territories in his possession.

Throughout the decades of interaction with other Mongol chieftains, Qaidu succeeded in establishing in Central Asia a state independent of the authority of the Qa'an, and under the rule of the sons of Chaghadai – the rivals, allies and successors of Qaidu – this state outlasted the Yuan dynasty and the Ilkhans.

The establishment of this state accelerated and reinforced trends prevailing in the Mongol empire of the mid-to-late thirteenth century: the parceling of the Empire into independent states, and the decreasing power of the Qa'an. The diverting of a great part of the strength of the Mongol army to internal struggles impaired its ability to move on to new conquests, and also damaged the border areas among the different Mongol countries and reduced the volume of overland trade within the empire and between it and the rest of the world.

Chapter III

The Shift into the Chaghadaids: the Collapse of Qaidu's Kingdom after his Death

Qaidu fell ill and died shortly after the battle against the Qa'an in 1301.[1] The sources diverge somewhat on the date of his death. Qarshī sets the date in early 701/late 1301.[2] According to Qāshānī, Qaidu returned from the battle with the Qa'an in Rajab 702/February–March 1303, and then contracted the illness of which he died.[3] Mīrkhwānd, perhaps following Qāshānī, also states that Qaidu died in Rajab 702/February–March 1303.[4] Rashīd al-Dīn notes that the news of Qaidu's death reached Ghazan on the sixth of Sha^{c}bān 702/March 26th, 1303, precisely at the moment when the latter left the fortress of Raḥba in Syria.[5] Elsewhere Rashīd al-Dīn indicates that Qaidu died about a month after the battle with the Qa'an.[6] The *Yuan shi* notes only that Qaidu died a short time after the battle with the Yuan forces in the autumn of 1301.[7] I tend to agree with Barthold in accepting Qarshī's dates: it is more probable that the news of Qaidu's death was delayed over a year on its way to Ghazan, than that it reached Syria from Mongolia in less than a month, and there is no reason to suppose the battle with the Qa'an lasted a year. It is also likely that Qarshī would give a precise date for an event that occurred such a short time before his writing. Moreover, a comparison of Qāshānī's dates for the events in Central Asia and China with those appearing in the *Yuan shi* shows that Qāshānī is often imprecise (see below).[8]

Qāshānī says that a short time before his death Qaidu appointed Orus (Woluosi), his youngest son by his chief wife who was stationed on the front opposite the Yuan, as his successor.[9] Waṣṣāf does not explicitly says that Qaidu appointed Orus as his successor, but describes a conversation between Orus and Qaidu on the eve of the latter's death, that could be interpreted as a kind of testament to a successor. In this conversation Qaidu commanded Orus to heed the advice of Du'a, whom he described as the most experienced and

bravest prince who owed many favors to Qaidu's family.[10] Du'a indeed played a major role in the enthronement of Qaidu's successor, but he chose to appoint not Orus, but Chapar (Chabaer), Qaidu's firstborn son, albeit by a concubine. He did so even though Chapar was not present at the time of Qaidu's death, arriving from Talas only after learning of his father's demise.[11] According to Qarshī, Chapar's accession to the throne was celebrated in the vicinity of Emil in May or June 1303.[12] According to Waṣṣāf's description, Chapar's rise to the throne was celebrated with a feast and with great pomp, and he even assumed his father's name, calling himself Chapar Qaidu.[13]

Waṣṣāf maintains that Du'a chose Chapar because it was Chapar who advised Qaidu to appoint Du'a to be head of the Chaghadaid *ulus* in 1282, despite Du'a's youth at that time.[14] Qāshānī, however, contends that Du'a appointed Chapar as head of the *ulus* because Chapar was weak and foolish, and Du'a felt that he would be able to seize control of Qaidu's lands more easily through him.[15] Such an assertion is further supported by Rashīd al-Dīn's description of Chapar as "extremely lean and ill-favored,"[16] as well as by the fact that during Qaidu's life nothing is heard of Chapar, in contrast to Qaidu's other sons who were active on different fronts.[17] Further evidence is provided by Du'a's contemptuous treatment of Chapar after his enthronement, and by Chapar's own conduct.

In setting Chapar on the throne in opposition to Qaidu's wishes, Du'a also succeeded in creating a division in Qaidu's camp. Rashīd al-Dīn notes that several princes contested Chapar's enthronement; including Orus, Qaidu's daughter Qutulun, and Tügme, the son or grandson of Hoqu son of Güyüg, who may also have had pretensions to the throne.[18] Qāshānī alleges that Chapar's enthronement alienated his brothers, but the historian tells of only the opposition of Qutulun, who wished to set Orus on the throne. After Du'a and Chapar dismissed her claims and sent her back to the "scissors and needle," she withdrew from the succession struggles and become the custodian of her father's tomb.[19] It was probably the dissension among Qaidu's sons that delayed Chapar's enthronement until a year and a half after his father's death.[20] In describing the rule of Du'a and Chapar in the early fourteenth century, Qarshī makes it clear that Chapar owed his throne to Du'a, "the mainstay" of Chapar's power and "his benevolent elder brother" (*al-akh al-shafiq al-akbar*).[21] From the course of the events, however, it is clear that in 1304/5 at the latest Orus and Qaidu's other sons, as well as Tügme, accepted Chapar's leadership.[22] This was because they had a shared interest in

combatting Du'a, who very shortly after Chapar's enthronement sought to make peace with the Yuan forces.

Chinese and Persian sources stress the fact that the peace initiative came from Du'a and not from Chapar.[23] Du'a established contact with one of the border commanders, either with Ananda, according to Qāshānī,[24] or with *Yochicar, who was related to Du'a by marriage, according to Chinese sources. Whoever he was, this commander quickly agreed to the proposal and only then informed Temür.[25] It is difficult to determine at what stage of the agreement Chapar learned of these machinations: Qāshānī asserts that Chapar did not know of Du'a's appeal to the Qa'an, and Du'a informed him of this only after receiving from Temür the right to rule in Turkestan. Then Du'a demanded that "in the name of friendship and justice" Chapar evacuate Turkestan and Khurāsān, which Qaidu had annexed, and suggested that Chapar set out to conquer his ancestral domain – Qara Qorum.[26] According to Waṣṣāf, after Chapar ascended to the throne Du'a informed him that he intended to make peace, and Chapar replied that he could not depart from Du'a's wishes.[27] The *Yuan shi* indicates that in the autumn of 1303 Du'a, Chapar and Melik Temür (the son of Arigh Böke) sent an emissary to seek an end to the fighting. The emperor rejoiced at the proposal, but also instructed his army to take precautionary measures.[28] In late 1304 Chapar and Du'a sent another emissary, who announced their surrender.[29] Elsewhere the *Yuan shi* describes a council held by Du'a, Chapar and Melik Temür dated erroneously 1305, in which the three decided to make peace.[30] All of this suggests that Chapar participated in the preparations for peace from a relatively early stage.

Only the Muslim sources document the signing of the global peace treaty among the Mongol states following the surrender of the Central Asian princes: emissaries who announced the signing of the peace accord arrived in Öljeitu's court on September 19th, 1304 according to Qāshānī.[31] Waṣṣāf also attests to the arrival of the emissaries and to the global range of the peace accord.[32] The *Yuan shi* makes no mention whatsoever of a global peace agreement. The most renowned reference to it, however, is the one given in a letter of 1305 sent by the Ilkhan Öljeitu to the King of France, Philippe IV, in which he proposes taking advantage of the peace among the Mongols for a combined attack on the Mamluks, saying:

> Now, however, heaven has inspired us with the thought that We, Temür Khāqān, Toqto'a, Chapar and Togha (Du'a), and We (i.e.

> Öljeitu) other descendants of Chinggiz Khāqān should put an end to the vituperation which had been going on for forty-five years up to now, and now, thanks to heaven, all of Us brothers get on well together and, moreover, from the land of the Chinese where the sun rises, to the Talu Sea, We have joined Our mail lines together in order to connect the states. We have given each other Our word, that if anyone among Us should become disloyal We would all stand together against him.[33]

Despite this impressive display of unity, in Central Asia the peace agreement merely marked the beginning of a series of battles between the Ögödeids and the Chaghadaids, since the former were unwilling to agree to the proposed settlement. More interesting is Du'a's willingness to modify the disposition of forces between Central Asia and China: from his enthronement as head of the Chaghadaid *ulus* in 1282, Du'a served as Qaidu's right-hand man, as the frequency with which their names appear together in the various sources[34] and Qaidu's instructions prior to his death show.[35] Du'a and the Chaghadaids played a major role in the incursions into the territories of the Ilkhans and even more so in prevailing over the Qara'unas and in the forays into India which commenced in the last decade of the thirteenth century.[36] Already at the end of Qaidu's life, Du'a disagreed with his policy towards the Qa'an. Du'a, however, obeyed Qaidu's order and came to fight in 1301.[37]

The decisive reason given in the Persian and Chinese sources for Du'a's appeal to the Qa'an was the need for unity in Chinggis Khan's family.[38] Since this reason did not deter Du'a from harassing the various Mongol *uluses* when he acted together with Qaidu, it seems likely that more practical concerns dominated his thinking. Du'a stated he wished to continue to expand the borders of the Mongol empire, an expansion which had been halted because of the internal wars. He proposed that the Chaghadaids and the Ögödeids invade India.[39] Until then, Du'a had in the main been unsuccessful in his incursions into India, but he was aware of this country's wealth, which he must have felt easier to obtain than that of China and Persia. Another reason set forward by Du'a for peace was the need to revive the caravan trade within the borders of the empire;[40] Waṣṣāf emphasizes this aspect of the peace agreement also in the description of the emissaries who reported to Öljeitu on the peace accord.[41] Another stimulus, finally, was the wish to relieve his army and the population of the empire in general.[42]

In addition to these motives, which the sources mention explicitly, further reasons might be adduced. As already noted, in the early fourteenth century Du'a faced the danger of a coalition of all the Mongol *uluses* against him.[43] Qaidu in his lifetime had feared such a coalition, and certainly without Qaidu and after the damages inflicted on them in the battle of 1301, the Central Asian princes would have been hard put to withstand such a coalition.[44] It is perhaps also for this reason that Du'a so greatly stressed the need for an empire-wide peace that would also resolve conflicts among other branches of the Mongol family (the Ilkhans and the Golden Horde, the White Horde and the Golden Horde).[45] Moreover, Qaidu's death and Du'a's senior position as *aqa* in Central Asia, provided Du'a with an ideal opportunity to free himself from the control of the house of Ögödei. Notwithstanding his prestige, the course of events would prove that in order to overcome Qaidu's army he required the assistance of the Yuan troops,[46] and this alone was a good reason for peace. Du'a assumed that he could obtain legitimacy for his rule in Central Asia from the Yuan, since most of the area of Qaidu's state was made up of territory that had been allocated to the house of Chaghadai by Chinggis Khan (from the borders of Uighuria to the Oxus) or by Qubilai (from the Altai to the Oxus, as promised to Alghu in 1263).[47] For this reason, the peace proposal of Du'a stressed the rights of the sons of Chinggis Khan to the domains their father had distributed to them, and it described the proposed peace as a situation in which "everyone will be content with what he has," namely that each prince would keep the territories allocated to him in Chinggis Khan's time.[48] In his surrender to the Yuan, Du'a would seem at first to have been exchanging one master for another, but here he built on his and Qaidu's achievements. In the early fourteenth century the position of the Qa'an in Central Asia and also in other areas of the empire was very different from Qubilai's status when he rose to power. Du'a correctly calculated that recognizing the Qa'an's nominal supremacy would still allow him to maintain his autonomy.[49]

While Du'a's peace agreement is full of references to unity and to Mongol tradition, it may be possible to identify in it also a typical example of relations between Central Asia and China, with the nomad neighbors discovering the advantages of recognizing the nominal supremacy of the Chinese ruler and thus enjoying his gifts, free access to Chinese trade, and military assistance if required.[50] The string of gifts received by Du'a's emissaries in the years after his surrender fits into this pattern.[51]

Temür thus found it convenient to accept Du'a's peace proposal. In addition to the economic and military damage to the Yuan caused by the confrontation, the battle of 1301 proved to the dynasty that even by coordinated effort it could not vanquish the Central Asian forces, and it is doubtful whether it wished to enter into further conflict, even under improved conditions.[52] The Chaghadaids posed no threat to the Qa'an's legitimacy, and by recognizing Du'a's right to Turkestan, an area over which the Yuan had long since ceded control, Temür hoped to ensure the rule of the Yuan over Mongolia and peace on the northwest border. Temür, therefore, confirmed Du'a's right to Turkestan but not to other regions.[53] From the *Yuan shi* it is clear that the northeast part of Qaidu's territory (part of Mongolia, the Altai, the Irtish; the part that can be roughly described as belonging to the original Ögödeid appanage) passed to the Yuan dynasty, though only after Chapar's surrender to Du'a.[54] The Yuan map of 1330 shows the advance of the Chaghadaids to the south and their withdrawal in the north.[55]

For the Ögödeids, the peace agreement both changed their relations with the Yuan and subjected most of their domain to the Chaghadaids, and thus it is not surprising that they showed little enthusiasm for the proposed agreement. The tension in Central Asia commenced, according to Qāshānī, when Chapar refused to attend the *quriltai* that Du'a planned to hold in order to celebrate the peace accord with the Yuan.[56] Chapar opposed more to the holding of the *quriltai* under the auspices of Du'a than to the proposed peace, and he suggested that he rather than Du'a should hold the *quriltai*.[57] It seems that ultimately the *quriltai* was not held at all. At the same time, in 1305/6 local fighting broke out between the Chaghadaid troops and those of Chapar, apparently as a result of the former's attempts to supplant the latter in various regions, following the agreement with Temür. The fighting was waged on several fronts simultaneously: in the Oxus region Qaidu's son Sarban fought against princes appointed by Du'a to replace Qutlugh Qocha, Du'a's son who ruled over parts of Khurāsān (until his death in 1299). Sarban succeeded in vanquishing his rivals, to some extent because he received the support of part of Qutlugh Qocha's army and his queens. Subsequently, Sarban suffered a defeat, partly due to poor weather conditions. When he reached a stalemate with the Chaghadaid troops, probably simultaneously with Chapar's surrender to Du'a, he preferred not to tire his army any longer. In 1306/7 he surrendered to Öljeitu in the company of princes, commanders, and a *tümen* of the Qara'unas.[58]

Other Ögödeid princes took advantage of the outbreak of the fighting in order to plunder Samarkand and Bukhara, and then sought to go over to Du'a's side. Baba, of the house of Jochi Qasar and a follower of Qaidu, opposed this plan. Fighting broke out between him and Jangqi, a commander who supported Du'a, and the Chaghadaid Yasa'ur. The latter fought between Samarkand and Khojand, triumphed over Baba, but was defeated after Baba received reinforcements from Shāh, another of Qaidu's sons, based in Talas.[59] At this stage Du'a decided to intervene and to make peace with Chapar. He blamed the wars on the youthful errors of the young commanders and suggested appointing experienced commanders to mete out punishment to the offenders. Chapar agreed to the suggestion, and it was decided that the princes would meet about a month later in Shāsh to carry out the punishments. Shāh, who believed in the peace, returned most of his army and left Baba in Shāsh with a thousand men. Baba soon noticed a large part of Du'a's army approaching the region. He sent a messenger to inform Shāh, but Shāh refused to send an army without receiving orders from Chapar. Baba was defeated, and Du'a's troops, under the command of Yasa'ur and Jangqi, continued in the direction of Talas. They laid waste to Talas and the neighboring cities, and with reinforcements from Du'a's army vanquished Shāh. Later, after Chapar's surrender to Du'a, Shāh received a post in the Chaghadaid army.[60]

The most important front in the struggle was on the border with the Yuan. On the eve of the planned *quriltai* Chapar instructed Orus to defend the border with the Yuan, fearing a possible incursion from there. The Qa'an's border commanders had been led since 1299 by Qaishan, a descendant of Qubilai and the heir apparent of Temür who was stationed beyond the Altai.[61] According to Qāshānī, Orus relied on his friendship with Qaishan in order to prevent a confrontation, and so he invited him to a feast.[62] Du'a persuaded Qaishan that the aim of the feast was to give Orus an opportunity to capture him. Fired with anger, Qaishan did not trouble to ascertain the truth of the allegations, but decided to forestall Orus' attack.[63] In June 1306, Qaishan crossed the Altai, and attacked suddenly in the night, killing and taking captive many of Orus' men. Much of Orus' army preferred to abandon him and join the Qa'an's army.[64] Waṣṣāf also indicates that Qaishan acted in coordination with Du'a and behind Chapar's back.[65] In this way the Yuan began to actively support the house of Chaghadai.

Orus's defeat and Yuan support of the Chaghadaids persuaded many princes that Chapar had no chance of victory in the

confrontation with Du'a. When Orus told Chapar of his defeat, the latter did indeed set out to fight Du'a, but he was not followed by all his supporters. Melik Temür, hitherto a loyal follower of Chapar, asked to guard the rear and to join the fighting force later. Chapar agreed to this request, despite warnings from the princes. Melik Temür informed Du'a that Chapar was mobilizing troops against him, and he himself elected to go over to the Qa'an's side, accompanied by several Ögödeid princes.[66] On his way Melik Temür passed through the empty camps of Chapar and his men, and plundered their herds, wealth and families.[67] About a month after subduing Orus, Qaishan received his surrender in the Irtish regions.[68] On hearing that their camps had been plundered, Chapar's men abandoned him and rode out to try to recover their property. At this stage many of them went over to the Qa'an's side.[69] Du'a, meanwhile, was alarmed by the news that Chapar was mobilizing troops. According to Qāshānī, Du'a appealed to Temür, claiming that Chapar was attacking him because of his submission to the Yuan. Temür sent supposedly ten *tümens* to his aid, headed by Alghu's grandson and other commanders, apparently from the army accompanying Qaishan. They surrounded Chapar and left him no choice but to surrender to Du'a with the three hundred horsemen he had left.[70]

Qāshānī, Waṣṣāf and the *Yuan shi* confirm that already with Chapar's surrender to Du'a (1306/7) most of Chapar's army joined the Qa'an's service, where it was divided among the different units.[71] A large part of Chapar's property came into the hands of the Yuan as a result of the activities of Melik Temür and Qaishan. Qaishan, who returned from the border in order to become Qa'an after Temür's death (early 1307), gave much of this property as recompense to the commanders who assisted him in his rise to power.[72] The surrender of Chapar's and Melik Temür's army also led to the transfer of many residents from the Altai and Irtish regions to the domains of the Yuan. In late 1307, the province of Lingbei was organized for these residents, whose number the *Yuan shi* sets at 86,000.[73] Lingbei replaced the Bureau of Pacification in Qara Qorum as the administrative unit of Mongolia.[74] The borders of Lingbei approximately coincide with those of Outer Mongolia and include the region of the Altai and the Irtish, areas previously held by Qaidu and Chapar.[75]

Du'a allocated a domain and a stipend to Chapar, and at the same time sought to capture the heads of Qaidu's camp. His followers killed Qutulun, and captured the chiefs of the house of Qaidu and his

followers: Shāh, Orus, *Yangichar, Tügme son of Hoqu and Baba of the house of Jochi Qasar. In 1307, when all were assembled, Du'a held a *quriltai* in Quyās near Almaliq.[76] There he deposed Chapar as head of the *ulus* and appointed in his place *Yangichar, the only son of Qaidu who had not been involved in the fighting with the Chaghadaid forces.[77] At the same time, in order to divide even further the supporters of the house of Ögödei, Du'a allocated to Tügme, son of Hoqu, Güyüg's appanage in the Emil region.[78] Despite the apparently desperate straits of the house of Ögödei at this stage, until the *quriltai* of 1307/8 and perhaps also after it, the Chaghadaids were still constrained to fight princes loyal to Qaidu who dwelt near Samarkand.[79]

Du'a's death in 1307[80] precipitated a period of instability in the house of Chaghadai. After ruling for one year (1308) Du'a's son Könchek died. Büri's grandson Taliqu then seized power. Taliqu's Islamization policies and the fact that he was not descended from Du'a aroused resistance against him in the house of Chaghadai. The opponents rallied around Du'a's youngest son Kebek, and they fought and defeated Taliqu in 1308/9.[81]

The succession struggles in the house of Chaghadai gave Qaidu's sons an opportunity to reassert their power. In about 1309 *Yangichar, Orus, Chapar and Tügme attacked Kebek, who had just concluded his war against Taliqu.[82] The battle took place near Almaliq. The Ögödeid forces achieved an initial victory, but were defeated when reinforcements of Taliqu's supporters, also joined by Shāh, arrived. Following the defeat, Chapar opted to surrender to the Qa'an.[83] On the way Chapar plundered Tügme's domain; Tügme fled before him, but was captured by Kebek's men and executed.[84]

The office of Qa'an was occupied from 1308 on by Qaishan. (Wuzong, 1308–11). He and his men were concerned by the continued fighting in Central Asia and feared a renewal of the confrontation.[85] In late 1308, Qaishan sent emissaries to Chapar and Könchek (Kuanshe).[86] According to Qāshānī, Qaishan offered to appoint Chapar over his brothers, a position that he had recently lost to *Yangichar, and sent him gifts and marks of respect.[87] Subsequently, however, Qaishan's counsellors advised him to establish ties with Du'a's sons since they had been the first to sue for peace.[88] He therefore confirmed the enthronement of Kebek over the Chaghadaids and his right to slay Tügme.[89] Accordingly, the importance of his mission to Chapar should not be exaggerated. Nonetheless, it is probable that the mission contributed to Chapar's decision to

surrender to the Qa'an after it became clear to him that he would not be punished as a rebel. According to Qāshānī, *Yangichar accompanied Chapar on his way to the Qa'an, but was poisoned on reaching Dadu.[90] *Yangichar does not appear at all in the *Yuan shi*, which sees only Chapar as Qaidu's successor; this omission may be an echo of the agreement between Qaishan and Chapar.

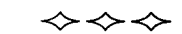
Chapar surrendered to the Yuan in early 1310, and six months later he came to the imperial court,[91] bringing with him a large number of postal horses.[92] Chapar's arrival at the court, a journey that Qaidu refused to make from 1264 onwards, symbolized for the Yuan the end of the conflict with the house of Ögödei, and Qaishan celebrated this with a feast and a sacrifice at the temple of the ancestors.[93]

After Chapar came to the Yuan court he received from Qaishan the revenues of Qaidu's possessions in China which had been frozen at the time of his revolt.[94] He received an honorable status in the court and in 1315, was appointed prince of Runing in Henan, far from Central Asia.[95] This title passed down to his son Öljei Temür (Wanzhu Tiemuer) and in 1324 to Chapar's grandson, Quladai (Huladai).[96] Quladai, however, supported the losing side in the struggle for the Yuan throne in 1328, and was executed by the victor, Tugh Temür (Wenzong, 1328–32). With this, the passing down of the title to Qaidu's descendants came to an end.[97]

Qaidu's son Orus, meanwhile, apparently remained at the Yuan court, with an inferior status to that of Chapar, and only in 1320 did the emperor give him a grant and send him back to his appanage.[98] While the *Yuan shi* states that Orus returned to his domain, it seems that he did not return to Central Asia. In 1321 the *Yuan shi* indicates that there was a famine in Orus' domains, and the emperor sent him food from Jingzhou.[99] Since this city is in the south of present-day Inner Mongolia and closer to Dadu than to Turkestan, it may be assumed that even a decade after the surrender the Yuan did not wish to take the risk of returning Qaidu's sons to the steppes.[100] There is no later information in the sources on Orus or his descendants.

Princes of the house of Ögödei continued to serve in the Chaghadaid army in the following decades. From time to time they also tried to reemerge in the historical arena. For instance, several descendants of the house of Ögödei were puppet rulers under Temür Lang,[101] and in 1360 one of Ögödei's descendants tried to seize the throne of the Yuan emperor – and failed.[102] However, the Ögödeids

never again established an autonomous political entity, as had Qaidu.



Among the immediate reasons for the rapid collapse of the Ögödeid power were Du'a's actions to divide it up: the enthronement of the weak and unpopular Chapar; the spreading of rumors and suppositions on his replacement; his removal; the capture of the leaders of the house of Ögödei and the division of their *ulus* into two, the *ulus* of Ögödei-Qaidu and that of Güyüg. The coalition that Du'a formed with the Qa'an completely altered the balance of power in Central Asia, and resulted not only in the overwhelming defeat of Orus by Qaishan, but also in the surrender of princes who had supported Qaidu to the Qa'an (Melik Temür and his partners) or to Öljeitu (Sarban and those accompanying him).

Less immediately, the reason for the rapid collapse of the Ögödeid kingdom lies in the status of Chaghadai's sons in Qaidu's kingdom. It was the weakness of Chaghadai's sons after Abaqa defeated Barak at Herat (1270) that enabled Qaidu to take control over them in 1271, a control for which he was obliged to fight until 1282, when he installed Du'a as head of the *ulus*. Neither in 1271, nor in 1282, nor later, did Qaidu try to dismantle the Chaghadaid *ulus* or its military units, in contrast to Temür's treatment of Chapar's army after this latter's surrender, to Qubilai's treatment of the *uluses* of Chinggis Khan's brothers after Nayan's revolt, or to Abaqa's treatment of Tegüder's army after the latter's surrender.[103] Qaidu apparently did not feel himself strong enough to act similarly. It is clear, in any case, that a separation was maintained between Du'a's and Qaidu's armies,[104] and the Chaghadaid army, even though subordinate to Qaidu, continued to serve as a power base for Du'a, a base which he used after Qaidu's death.

Upon Qaidu's death, Du'a took advantage of his position as an *aqa* to manipulate the former's sons and to take back the Chaghadaid domains. Unlike Qaidu, Du'a posed no threat to the Qa'an's legitimation, and, moreover, the Chaghadaids' historical right to rule Central Asia was recognized by the Yuan. It was, therefore, easier for him to make peace with the Yuan and legitimize his new acquisitions through the Qa'an's approval. Nevertheless, Du'a could surrender to the Qa'an and still retain his independence only due to Qaidu's activities: Qaidu's long and successful struggle against the Qa'an during the last decades of the thirteenth century wiped out Yuan

pretensions to rule Central Asia and made the Qa'an's authority in the other Mongol khanates a nominal one.

The creation of a strong independent state *ex nihilo* in Central Asia, on the back of the Chaghadaids and against the Qa'an, called for leadership and ability such as Qaidu possessed. His sons lacked their father's stature, and let the Chaghadaids enjoy his toil. Yet, Qaidu's achievement, the creating of an independent state in Central Asia, survived him, and under the Chaghadaids this state outlived both the Yuan and the Ilkhanate.

Chapter IV

The Mongol State of Central Asia: Internal Administration under Qaidu

1. The Army

Qaidu's army is famous principally for the quality of its soldiers. Many of the sources sing its praises, with emphasis on the courage of the soldiers, their strict discipline, high level of training and ability to report as one man when summoned.[1] In this section, I shall study the composition and size of the army, the weapons at its disposal, the tactics it employed and the counter-tactics employed against it, mainly from China.

Qaidu's initial army consisted of men whom he assembled "from every corner" according to Rashīd al-Dīn.[2] Rashīd al-Dīn, perhaps trying to undermine his legitimacy, stresses in another place that the troops Qaidu had gathered together were for the most part not the troops originally bequeathed to Ögödei by Chinggis Khan.[3] Yet Rashīd al-Dīn himself, as well as other sources, attest that before 1269 Qaidu had at his disposal several units previously connected with the Ögödeid army. Their commanders were Dānishmand, son of Ögödei's Jalayirid commander who served as Qaidu's messenger to Abaqa;[4] the *amīr* of the Arulad who held a high position under Ögödei;[5] and the Ögödeid princes, such as Qipchaq and Chabat, who chose to join Qaidu.[6] Other recognizable components in Qaidu's initial army were the members of the Bekrin, Qaidu's mother's tribe, who according to Abū Ghāzī numbered two thousand households by the time of Chinggis Khan,[7] and troops placed at Qaidu's disposal by the Golden Horde in Berke's time.[8]

After Qaidu's victory over Baraq and following the *quriltai* of Talas, Qaidu shared with Baraq and Möngke Temür the army stationed in the cities of Transoxania; it is known that the army residing in Bukhara circa 1265 consisted originally of fifteen *hizārahs*

(units of 1,000 men), of which ten remained after Hülegü slaughtered Berke's men in 1263.[9] In 1271, after Baraq's death and with the enthronement of Qaidu as Khan of the house of Ögödei, or shortly afterwards, further troops of the house of Ögödei enrolled in his army, such as the troops of Hoqu son of Güyüg,[10] as well as a sizeable part of the Chaghadaid army. Although the Chaghadaid forces joined Qaidu after having been crushed by Abaqa, Rashīd al-Dīn still estimates Baraq's army after the defeat at about 30,000 men, though not all of them supported Qaidu at this stage. [11] One may assume that at this time Qaidu also commanded all the troops stationed in the cities of Transoxania. The complete surrender of the Chaghadaid army occurred in 1282, with the appointment of Du'a as Chaghadaid Khan.[12] Within a year, princes from the house of Jochi Qasar also joined Qaidu; some of them perhaps had accompanied the Chaghadaid army in the past.[13] At about the same time, in the wake of the failed princes' rebellion against Qubilai other princes, in particular from the house of Tolui, also joined Qaidu's army. The impressive size of the forces of Melik Temür, son of Arigh Böke and the most senior of the new recruits from this side, has already been mentioned.[14] The arrival of commanders such as Nauruz or *Dorduka and *Yomuqur[15] suggests that princes continued to join Qaidu's ranks throughout the last decades of the thirteenth century, though most of his troops were already consolidated in the early 1280s. In the last years of the thirteenth century the Qara'unas were also incorporated into Qaidu's and Du'a's forces.[16]

While many troops joined Qaidu's army, there were also desertions from his camp to the ranks of the Qa'an or the Ilkhans. Those suspected of attempting to desert were executed: such was the fate, for example, of Buzma, son of Baraq, who wished to go over to the Qa'an's army; and of Ürük Temür of the house of Ögödei, who joined Nauruz's revolt against Qaidu.[17] Other deserters, like *Durdoka and *Yomuqur, were more successful, however.[18]

In order to transform these disparate forces into an exemplary army, Qaidu had to reorganize them perhaps along the same lines as Chinggis Khan's army of the various Mongolian tribes.[19] The sources provide no testimony to this effect, but there is an indirect evidence to a certain reallocation of the joining troops. Thus Melik Temür was sent by Qaidu to the border of the White Horde, and after Qaidu's death he worked in coordination with Chapar, until betraying him and surrendering to the Qa'an.[20] Likewise, Melik Temür's son *Shinqan operated further west, and he accompanied Sarban to the

banks of the Oxus in his attack in 1302 and in his surrender to Öljeitu in 1306/7.[21] Jangqi Küregen, one of the commanders from Melik Temür's *Ordo* who joined Qaidu together with the former, worked alongside Du'a in the Farghāna region and remained faithful to the house of Chaghadai even after Melik Temür's surrender to the Yuan.[22] These facts substantiate the supposition that Qaidu reorganized some of the troops that joined him, or at least endeavored to disperse the military force of the joining princes in order to avoid a concentration of a large force in the hands of one prince.

On the other hand, the sources make it clear that a separation was maintained between the Chaghadaid army and Qaidu's, contrary to the usual custom when one Mongol prince surrendered to another. The Chaghadaid army was not redistributed among other units but maintained its integrity even though it was subordinate to Qaidu; thus Qāshānī was able to refer to Du'a's *hizārah* as opposed to the *hizārah* of Chapar, son of Qaidu.[23] Waṣṣāf calls Qaidu's army *Lashkar Khāṣṣa* (private army?), to differentiate it from Du'a's army, and according to his description, it consisted of princes of the house of Ögödei and of the house of Jochi Qasar.[24] "*Khāṣṣa*" may denote an army that Qaidu assembled from his initial supporters or one directly subject to him as opposed to the Chaghadaid army. In view of the large size ascribed to this army – three *tümens* – it could in no way have been a mere retinue.[25] Incidentally, however, the term *Khāṣṣa* is also mentioned in relation to the army that Qaidu sent in 1270 to succor Baraq's army. At least according to Rashīd al-Dīn it seems that this was a *Khāṣṣa* of Chabat, Güyüg's grandson and one of the princes sent to Baraq, and not Qaidu's *Khāṣṣa*; moreover, the numbers mentioned are far lower – between one to four thousand men.[26]

In addition to the Mongol princes, commanders who were probably not from Chinggis Khan's family played a role in Qaidu's army. Very little mention is made of these commanders in the sources and for the most part it is impossible to identify them.[27] For the same reason it is also impossible to present a full picture of the tribal structure of Qaidu's army. Among his men members of the following tribes can be identified: the Bekrin[28], the Arulad[29], the Qorulat/s,[30] the Olqunu'ud,[31], the Jalayir,[32] the Süldüs,[33] the Qongqotan,[34] the Merkid,[35] the Besüd,[36] the Qatagïn,[37] and the Naiman.[38]

Apart from the Mongolian and Turkish tribes Qaidu might have used some auxiliary forces from the regions over which he ruled. Yet evidence for the existence of such forces is sketchy, especially as compared with the important role of Chinese units in the Yuan army

and the frequent mentions of auxiliaries (Armenian, Georgian, etc.) fighting in the Ilkhanid forces and even in those of the Golden Horde.[39] If not a result of the scarcity of the sources, the scant references to auxiliary forces can be explained by the fact that the troops of the Central Asian rulers before the Mongols and the local troops there were incorporated into the Mongol army prior to Qaidu's time, and not all of them remained in Central Asia.[40] Another explanation may lie in the fact that the auxiliary forces in the service of the Yuan (and the Ilkhans) were frequently infantry troops, while clearly most of Qaidu's army was cavalry.

Isolated and equivocal examples of the presence of such auxiliary forces in Qaidu's ranks occur in the reference to *Balin wanhu*, whom Pelliot tentatively identifies as the commander of the *tümen* of the Barin region;[41] in the mentioning of the commander of the *cherig* (auxiliary troops) and Tajik and Qara-Khitan commanders among the *amīrs* of Melik Temür, though it is unclear who belonged to their armies;[42] and in the hundred "naphtha throwers" (*andāz-i naft*) who accompanied Du'a in the sieges of Kusūi and of Fushang.[43] The frequent use of the military title *amīr* (commander) in relation to several Persian and Turkish Transoxanian landowners in the 1299 *waqf* document from Bukhara as well as to Masᶜūd Beg's sons;[44] the attribution of the title "people of the pen and the sword" (*ahl al-qalam w'al-sayf*) to the founder of the above-mentioned *waqf* document and to Masᶜūd Beg, and the latter's accompanying Baraq to the battle of Herat[45] – all these indicate that part of the Transoxanian population also served in Qaidu's ranks, a phenomenon not uncommon in Central Asia in earlier periods.[46] Among those auxiliary troops, the Barin army was unquestionably a mounted army,[47] while the Berkin, a mountainous people, might have supplied infantry, and the naphtha throwers could be either mounted or infantry. Although Marco Polo might have implied the presence of infantry among Qaidu's troops that had been sent to help Nayan,[48] clearly mounted riders were the dominant force in Qaidu's army as a whole.

Qaidu and Du'a retained the decimal structure, typical of the Mongol armies and the Central Asian armies in general. The basic units were units of a 100 (*gha'un/ṣadah/baihu*); units of 1,000 (*mingghan/hizārah/qianhu*) and *tümen/wan hu*.[49] There is no data regarding the number of men constituting a *tümen*, but presumably it was less than ten thousand men, just as in the other Mongol armies.[50] As for military titles, Baba Oghūl is described as an *amīr qūl*

(commander of the main wing of the army, namely one of the most senior commanders);[51] Taraghai is defined as the *amīr-i ordo* (commander of the camp) of Du'a's son, Qutlugh Qocha;[52] and the description of Melik Temür's *amīrs* reflects a certain differentiation in the division of responsibilities among the commanders.[53] Yet it is difficult to determine on the basis of such isolated references whether there existed a coherent system of ranks in Qaidu's army.

Several estimates appear in the sources as to the size of the armies of Qaidu and, later, of Chapar. Het'um indicates that Chapar could field 400,000 superb horsemen,[54] while Marco Polo speaks of 100,000 horsemen in Qaidu's army.[55] The *Yuan shi* sets Chapar's forces just prior to his surrender at over 100,000 men,[56] and this is also the estimate in later Chinese sources as regards Qaidu's army.[57] Waṣṣāf attributes ten *tümens* to Chapar on the eve his surrender to Du'a,[58] and according to Qāshānī ten, twenty, or thirty *tümens* accompanied Chapar on the eve of his surrender to Du'a and the Qa'an.[59] Of course, the varying estimates of Chapar's troops on the eve of his surrender (in the *Yuan shi*, Waṣṣāf and Qāshānī) do not include the Chaghadaid army, which constituted a large part of Qaidu's forces. (The *Yuan Shi* estimates Du'a's army at the time of the siege of Qara Qocho in 1285 at 120,000 men,[60] and Harawī indicates that at the siege of Kusūi and Fushang in 1295, Du'a led 100,000 horsemen.[61] Yet, at least in the case of Kusūi and Fushang Ögödeid troops were also incorporated in Du'a's army).[62] Qarshī stresses the great size of the army led by Qaidu and his successors as one of the factors in the victory over the Qa'an.[63]

These numbers can not be taken literally.[64] More significant is the fact that the numbers that the sources attribute to other armies in the Mongol empire are far greater: Het'um set the Golden Horde army at 600,000 men, or 1.5 times as many as the number of soldiers he attributed to Chapar.[65] Marco Polo estimated the army of Qubilai that fought Nayan at 360,000 horsemen and about 100,000 foot soldiers; to the army of the Ilkhans and the Golden Horde he attributed 300,000 men each.[66] ᶜUmarī maintained that the Golden Horde army was greater than the armies of the Central Asian princes, and also attributed twelve Mongol *tümens*, twenty *tümens* of horsemen and a large Chinese army to the Qa'an.[67] Chinese and Muslim sources emphasize Qaidu's numerical inferiority in relation to the Yuan, where the ratio suggested between the armies is 1:100.[68] Even if this is an exaggeration it gives some indication of contemporary understandings of the relative power of the Mongol states. All these sources,

however, note the quality of Qaidu's army (in ʿUmarī's case the Transoxanian army) in contrast to the other armies, despite its numerical inferiority.[69]

Rashīd al-Dīn set at 150,000 the force of Prince Ananda, Yuan garrison commander on the border with Qaidu, who dwelled in the land of the Tanguts in Temür's time.[70] Du'a boasted at the time of the siege of Qara Qocho that he vanquished 300,000 Han soldiers, who were under the command of two of the border commanders in Uighuria.[71] Yet it is difficult to conceive that each border commander had 150,000 men at his disposal, if only because Rashīd al-Dīn counts eight such commanders,[72] which would mean that a force of about 1,200,000 men was maintained on the border. Further corroborating evidence that these numbers are exaggerated is the fact that in two documented cases, a Baraq or Qaidu force estimated at 30,000 was able to frighten the garrison commanders of the Yuan into avoiding battle.[73] The chapter in the *Yuan shi* dealing with the garrison troops mentions the dispatch of a few thousand men at the most to serve as a garrison.[74] More credible, therefore, may be the estimate of a Yuan scholar Yao Sui (1238–1313), that in 1281 there were over a 100,000 Yuan soldiers in the "North West," a name that denotes Turkestan and the Yenisei region in Mongolia.[75] It is hard, however, in the final analysis, to reach an unequivocal estimate.

Among the weapons used by Qaidu, in addition to bows and arrows,[76] swords,[77] and lances[78] also appear as arms that were no less vital to Qaidu's army. There are less frequent mentions of shields (apparently of leather),[79] knives,[80] cudgels with a metal knob at the end,[81] short spears,[82] and javelins.[83] Du'a's army also had at least a dozen catapults for breaking sieges, and Greek fire (naphtha), which was also used in times of siege.[84] Armor and helmets are also mentioned,[85] but it seems that they were not allocated to the whole army. The main difference between the composition of weapons in Qaidu's army and in the Mongol army in the time of Chinggis, Ögödei, and Güyüg (as described by Plano Carpini and in the *Secret History*) was the more extensive use of swords and lances by the former.[86]

The importance attributed by Qaidu to arms was expressed at the *quriltai* of Talas, when he demanded a share in the workshops in Samarkand and Bukhara.[87] Baraq, who even earlier "made the artisans work day and night preparing weaponry,"[88] attributed at least the same importance to the acquisition of weapons, going so far as to plunder arms as part of his invasion.[89] Het'um indicates that Chapar's

army suffered from a shortage of arms (and horses).[90] This shortage was probably due to wars of the princes after Qaidu's death. In any case, Su Tianjue emphasizes the inferiority of Qaidu's army in weapons compared with the Yuan army.[91] Such a disadvantage is plausible, given the superior resources and organization that stood at the Yuan's disposal. The names of the units overseeing the manufacture of arms in China attest to the fact that the principal battle equipment of the Yuan consisted of bows and arrows and armor.[92] The *Yuan shi* rarely mentions weapons used in the course of the fighting with Qaidu. The *Wenji*, however, mention swords, shields, spears and armor, as well as using bare hands for cutting heads.[93] It seems that the extensive use of armor was one of the main qualitative advantages of the Yuan army over Qaidu's.

From descriptions of the battle of Herat – the only frontal clash between the Chaghadaid army and the Ilkhans in the period discussed here – it can be concluded that the Ilkhans had an advantage in arms over the Chaghadaid army, although not such a dramatic advantage as maintained, for example, by Martinez. There is no evidence there of the use of armor by Abaqa's troops.[94]

Qaidu's ability to surmount his inferiority in arms and in numbers derived from the nomadic nature of his troops, as clearly demonstrated by the tactics that he used. In the years of his conflict with the Yuan, as also with the Ilkhans, Qaidu engaged principally in raids for plundering territories. He did not impose his rule over the territories that he invaded, and for the most part had no need to defend his own territories. Qaidu exploited the mobility of his troops to create tactical numerical superiority over the opposing force, a superiority which led to their defeat or withdrawal. Thus, for example, when Baba was sent in 1283 to attack the Qa'an's forces in Khotan, Qubilai's garrison commanders, on seeing the size of his army, preferred to retreat without joining battle.[95] Baraq also used the same tactics at Khotan in circa 1266.[96] The large size of Qaidu's army at the critical point is also cited as a reason for his victory at Besh Baliq in 1286.[97] Su Tianjue notes Qaidu's ability to coordinate forces as one body as a major reason for his success against the Yuan.[98] The important role played in Qaidu's success by his ability to coordinate forces also explains why he was weakened in the 1290s when he was obliged to maintain three fronts simultaneously. He was thus unable to concentrate his forces at a single point and had to engage in a kind of border defense (see Chapter II).

Qaidu himself also did not hesitate to withdraw if he realized that the opposing army was superior to his, as attested by Marco Polo.[99]

At times the retreat served only as a tactical step, designed to lure the enemy into pursuit and ambush. After the initial victory scored by the Yuan troops in the last battle with Qaidu, they thus elected not to pursue him, fearing that he was retreating in order to draw them into an ambush.[100] Another typical Mongol tactic that Qaidu favored was to send a small force forward to lure the enemy into an easy fight, only attacking with all troops once their men the enemy deployed for battle.[101] Although Qaidu's army was clearly an equestrian unit, Harawī explicitly indicates that the Central Asian troops did not hesitate to engage in face-to-face fighting, in contrast to Carpini's description of the Mongol army.[102]

Particularly noteworthy is the importance that Qaidu attached to knowing the lie of the terrain over which he intended to attack as a major factor for the success of the invasion. Accordingly, he was in the habit of sending people who were well acquainted with the region he wished to invade at the head of raiding forces: Uighurtai's familiarity with the territories of Māzandarān constituted a basis for the invasion of this area by Du'a's army;[103] Nauruz led the invasion of Khurāsān in which Qaidu's army also participated;[104] and Arigh Böke's sons led the incursions into the Yenisei area and Mongolia, where their original appanages were situated.[105] After *Yomuqur surrendered, the Qa'an also utilized his familiarity with the lie of the terrain in sending him to fight Qaidu in that same region.[106]

The *Yuan shi* on several occasions refers to victories won by Qaidu after he gained control of strategic points.[107] Mention is also made of the fact that Qaidu's and Du'a's forces encamped on mountains or used mountains for defense purposes,[108] and this, in addition to the terrain, may also illustrate a clever use of the mountainous Bekrin tribe in the army.[109]

Another way to obtain accurate information on the lie of the land and on the enemy troops was the use of scouts. Rashīd al-Dīn mentions that scouts were stationed on the Qa'an borders with Qaidu on both sides.[110] According to the *Yuan shi*, in the late 1260s Qaidu sent scouts to examine the preparedness of Batu's (i.e., Möngke Temür's) troops and whether they intended to attack him;[111] in 1284 *Yaqudu, one of Qubilai's commanders, caught a scout sent by Qaidu and used the information that the scout gave him in order to attack Qaidu's army;[112] and in about 1292 Bayan caught one of Melik Temür's scouts.[113] There are no clear confirmations of the use of scouts on the Ilkhanid front, but the successful timing of Qaidu's and Du'a's incursions into Iran reinforces the supposition that Qaidu also

succeeded in obtaining information on what was happening on this front.[114] On the eve of the battle of Herat, similarly, Baraq sent Mas^{c}ūd Beg to obtain information on Abaqa's position. Subsequently, he also sent scouts to Abaqa's camp, thus attesting to the use of these means in the Chaghadaid army also.[115]

Another tactic employed by Qaidu's and Du'a's army, designed also to disguise its numerical inferiority, was the use of psychological warfare. In the last battle with the Qa'an, for example, after being defeated by the Yuan army, Qaidu commanded his men to light fires in order to create the impression that he had received large reinforcements.[116] Du'a's description of the immense army that he would bring against Kusūi and Fushang seems also to have aimed at the same purpose. Certainly Du'a's descriptions during the siege of the bodies of the townspeople being left to the birds and the jackals were also an expression of psychological warfare; in this case it was unsuccessful.[117] There is, however, no evidence of the use of deliberate destruction as a psychological weapon designed to arouse the fear of the residents, a tactic employed by Chinggis Khan's troops.[118]

Most of the incursions of Qaidu's army occurred in autumn, the usual season for nomad invasions into China.[119] There is also a reference to several incursions in winter, the object being to exploit the element of surprise of an invasion in this season.[120] In at least one case the difficult weather foiled the invasion.[121]

In battle, as opposed to invasion, exchange of ambassadors and beating of drums preceded the fighting; a practice also customary in battles among other Mongols.[122] It seems that battle, or warfare in general, was usually waged in the daytime and halted in the evening;[123] this explains why the night attacks of Nauruz or Qaishan gained an advantage.[124] During fighting, the army was divided into wings (left, right, center), which was a standard in other Mongol armies as well.[125] Several times a rain of arrows is mentioned as the opening gambit used by Qaidu's army in battle or in raid.[126]

The sources twice mention's use of a siege tactic by the Central Asian army, in both cases by Du'a.[127] Complete details do not exist on Du'a's siege of Qara Qocho in 1285, but Harawī gives a detailed account of the siege of Kusūi: Du'a first ascertained whether the city wall was built of stone or mud, and was pleased to hear that it was of mud. He sent against the city a force estimated at 12,000 horsemen with a dozen catapults and a hundred naphtha throwers. Du'a's soldiers lit a great fire on four sides of the citadel. The Mongols simultaneously attacked the fortress with arrows, with the attacking

force being changed daily, but to no avail. Du'a then sent a reinforcement of 10,000 men, and they fired arrows and struck with catapults from all directions, but without success. As a last step, after already deliberating on whether to abandon the siege, Du'a commanded his men to build a tower of wood and earth, higher than the citadel of Kusūi, planning to attack Kusūi from there. The townspeople frustrated his plan by setting the tower alight, and Du'a decided to withdraw.[128] In neither case attributed to Du'a's army, did the siege lead to breaching of the city walls. Qara Qocho surrendered, but Du'a was obliged to retreat from Kusūi, even though he succeeded in breaching Fushang subsequently.[129] In addition to those episodes it is worth citing the experience of Taraghai, a Chaghadaid commander who in 1303 laid siege to Delhi for two months, and also felt constrained to lift the siege without obtaining the city's surrender.[130] Such testimonies would seem to indicate that the Chaghadaid army was relatively unskilled in siege tactics.

Most of the documentation on the tactics employed by the Mongols against Qaidu involves the front with the Yuan, since in the west Qaidu was able for the most part to avoid direct contact with the Ilkhanid army, and there are no details in the sources on the nature of the fighting with the White Horde.

In the Yuan battles against Qaidu two strategies are evident; the sedentary approach and the nomadic approach. The former favored fortifications as an effective method of defence against Qaidu. This recommendation, made by the emissary sent to evaluate Qaidu's force in the late 1260s,[131] was adopted by the governor of Qara Qorum in 1289.[132] It is also recommended by the lesser pacification commissioner in Qara Qorum in 1302, who claimed that building walls and making fortifications was the best way to defend Mongolia.[133] The same strategy motivated the building of a fortress after the princes' revolt some 130 km south of Qara Qorum, which the Yuan designed to defend the city and the postal stations in its vicinity.[134] The fortifications were part of a strategy of permanent border defence that demanded the posting of garrisons throughout the border regions, and some supporting activities such as the establishment of military-agricultural colonies (*tun tian*) and organization of grain supply routes – actions that placed a heavy financial and logistical burden on the Yuan.[135] While this strategy was of a defensive nature, there are several mentions in the *Yuan shi* of attacks initiated by the garrisons.[136]

The second approach in the confrontation with Qaidu was based on the use of nomadic tactics like those of Qaidu. A strong proponent

of this approach was Qubilai's Qipchaq commander *Tuq Tuqa (Tutuha), who argued that mobility is vital in fighting Qaidu.[137] *Tuq Tuqa, and his son after him, headed the nomad armies of the Qipchaqs, the Qarluqs, and the Qangli after the mid-1280s.[138] They did not hesitate to pursue Qaidu deep into his territory, to set ambushes for his troops, to exploit the terrain to their advantage and to also use psychological warfare, such as blowing copper horns, in order to create the impression that large reinforcements were arriving. It was thus their nomadic tactics, not much different than Qaidu's, that enabled them to defeat him in the 1290s.[139]

The success of Bayan, Qubilai's famous general, who defeated Melik Temür's army in 1292, also come from the use of a clearly nomadic tactic, the setting of an ambush.[140] The case which best illustrates the clash between the nomadic and sedentary approaches is also connected with Bayan's name. In 1292 rumors circulated to the effect that because Bayan had been posted on the border for a long time he had developed a friendship with Qaidu and it was for this reason that he had not obtained even a clod of earth from him. This calumny led the emperor to relieve Bayan of his post. However, before the replacement arrived, Qaidu's forces invaded. Bayan fought against them for a week, attacking and retreating alternately. The commanders in his army attributed his approach to cowardice and angrily exclaimed: "If you are afraid to fight, let's wait for a replacement." Bayan explained that his aim was to draw Qaidu deep into the hostile territory in order to catch him before he retreated to his own territory. The commanders accepted his view and apparently defeated Qaidu, although he did escape to his realm.[141] This episode illustrates to what extent the Yuan army's garrison commanders disregarded and misunderstood the nomadic methods of warfare, and this certainly played a part in their failure to subdue Qaidu.

In addition to the disdainful attitude towards the nomadic methods of warfare, and the economic burden of keeping large garrisons in the border areas, the main practical reason that prevented the Yuan from subduing Qaidu by virtue of its superiority in arms was the shortage of horses. This problem haunted China in its wars with Central Asia throughout history, and the Yuan Mongols also had to contend with it after they established their center in China and lost a large part of Central Asia to Qaidu.[142] The many horses sent to Nomuqan in Almaliq,[143] and the claim of the Chinese commander Li Ting that in order to fight Qaidu they must collect 110,000 horses,[144] are evidence of the Yuan's awareness of the importance of horses in fighting Qaidu.

The collection of edicts dealing with the Yuan horse policy, studied by Jagchid and Bawden, together with the information from the *Yuan shi*, make it clear that in addition to a regular collection of horses as part of taxation, and to special areas allocated for horse breeding in Qubilai's time, emergency collections of additional horses were sometimes necessary. Under Qubilai at least five such special collections were made – in 1260, 1275, 1287, 1289 and 1293. The edict of 1293 cites the "activity of the rebel princes" as the explicit reason for this collection. Evidence of a serious increase in the prices of horses between 1260 and 1289, collection of horses also from members of the priesthood, attempts to mobilize horses even from southern China which was poor in horses, acceptance of defective horses for use; and the fact that the collection of 70,000 horses fell 30,000 short of its goal – all these facts attest to the gravity of the horse shortage in Qubilai's time.[145]

Qaidu thus had a distinct advantage over the Yuan in obtaining horses, since he ruled in the steppes, but the large quantities of animals collected by Qaidu's and Du'a's forces in their incursions in the west,[146] as well as the testimony of Het'um and of the *Yuan shi* on the shortage of horses in Chapar's troops, prove that in Central Asia too it was not easy to obtain the large number of horses the Mongol army required.[147]

As in many battles between the Central Asian tribes and China throughout history, Qaidu was able to exploit an advantage in the supply of horses and the mobility that these allowed in order to vanquish the Yuan forces in most of his confrontations with them, despite his numerical and technological inferiority. The quality of Qaidu's soldiers and his leadership led to his victory in his final battle against the Yuan, the only frontal clash between the two armies. However, the high price paid in this battle in men and horses, and the difficulty with which the victory was achieved, explain why Qaidu preferred to adopt a policy of raids as the style of warfare best suited for his conflict with the Yuan and with the other Mongol forces.

2. Religion

Most of the Mongols in Central Asia, including Qaidu, continued to practice their native religion until the late thirteenth century, although some did embrace other religions. Mīrkhwānd bears witness to Qaidu's faith, relating that he bowed down to the sun several times.[148] Qaidu's religious proclivities are further evidenced by the fact that he

was buried in a high place between rivers, "as is the usage of the nomads."[149] A further expression of Mongol native religion can be seen in the "tested incantations" that Prince *Ebügen used in order to affect the weather when he accompanied Du'a to Kusūi and Fushang.[150]

Both Harawī and Amīr Khusraw Dihlawī describe the Central Asian Mongols in the late thirteenth century as infidels, thereby attesting to the fact that most of them were not Muslims.[151] More concrete evidence of this is found in Waṣṣāf's narration of the period after Qaidu's death: in 1307/8 Taliqu son of Büri became the Chaghadaid Khan in place of Könchek son of Du'a. Taliqu was a Muslim, and he tried to convert some of the Mongols to Islam. His confidante, ᶜAlī Oghul, whom he appointed as ruler of Khotan and Turkestan, was also a Muslim (as his name shows). Taliqu's conversion activities angered some of the commanders of Du'a's army, who shortened his rule.[152] These testimonies correspond to ᶜUmarī's affirmation that the Mongol customs, including sun worship, survived in Central Asia at least until the time of the Chaghadaid Khan Tarmashirin (1327–35), when most of the Central Asian Mongols converted to Islam.[153]

However, a few Central Asian princes began to embrace Islam before and during Qaidu's time. From the house of Ögödei only Ürük Temür, the son-in-law of Nauruz who converted in his wake, is explicitly identified as a Muslim.[154] Rashīd al-Dīn indicates that Ürük Temür's son Küresbe was also suspected of following in his father's path. Other sons of Ürük Temür were called Muḥammad and ᶜAlī, thus they were also Muslims.[155] By their names several other Muslims can be identified among Ögödei's sons, including, for example, ᶜAlī Qocha and Mubārak Shāh, the grandsons of Ögödei's son Qadan, or ᶜUmar Qocha, one of the lesser known sons of Qaidu.[156] All the aforesaid princes were marginal figures in thirteenth-century politics, and it is doubtful whether their religious faith had any effect on Qaidu's policy.

Among the Chaghadaids there were more Muslim princes, including some who served in important posts: apart from Taliqu, mentioned above, Orghina, the queen of Qara Hülegü who subsequently married Alghu, and who headed the Chaghadaid *ulus* from 1251 to 1260, was a Muslim, as was her son, Mubārak Shāh.[157] Baraq, who deposed Mubārak Shāh, converted to Islam only towards the end of his life, after his defeat by Abaqa.[158] From the names of the Chaghadaids that appear in the contemporary sources, other princes

who converted to Islam can be identified.[159] These were minor princes, however, and there is no evidence of their having had any influence over Qaidu or Du'a.

There is no information on the religion of other princes who accompanied Qaidu, apart from Melik Temür, whom Qāshānī states was a Christian.[160] It is also known that the Bekrin tribe, from which Qaidu's mother came and which was subject to him, was partly Christian.[161]

The population in the territory under Qaidu's control, in Transoxania and Turkestan, was for the most part Muslim, as Marco Polo, Qarshī and Brother Benedict attest.[162] A large Nestorian Christian minority existed at least in Samarkand, Kashgar, Qayaliq, Uighuria and Yarkand.[163] According to Polo there were also Jacobites in Yarkand.[164] In Qayaliq and Hami, and probably also in other places in eastern Turkestan, there were also Buddhists, called pagans by the Christian travellers.[165]

Most of the information that we have on Qaidu's religious policy again relates to his attitude toward Islam. Both Qarshī and Mīrkhwānd praise his tolerance. Mīrkhwānd notes that he preferred the Muslims over the other religions, and that friendly discussions were held with *ʿulamā'* (Muslim scholars) and *ḥukamā'* (learned men).[166] Qarshī, who described Qaidu as a benefactor ruler for the Muslim, was twice summoned to his court, probably as part of those meetings described by Mīrkhwānd.[167] The sympathetic attitude towards Islam continued under Chapar as well.[168]

Several indirect indications testify to the continuation of Muslim religious life under Qaidu including the reconstruction of Masʿūd Beg's *madrasa* in Bukhara;[169] the building of mosques in Bukhara in 1299, with special attention to the income of their *imāms* (leaders of prayer) and *mu'adhdhins* (criers for prayers) and extra devotion to the pilgrims' needs;[170] the existence of the office of supervisor of the *awqāf* in Transoxania, who was also a *qāḍī*, and the multitude of Islamic titles mentioned in the 1299 *waqf* in general;[171] Qarshī's descriptions of the Islamic scholarship, with frequent mentions of judges (*qāḍīs*), *imāms*, preachers and scribes as well as the importance of the civil-religious leaders called *ṣadrs* in several towns under Qaidu's control.[172] All this demonstrates Qaidu's tolerant attitude towards the Muslims.

One should note, however, that a great many of Qarshī's descriptions relate to the fourth and fifth decade of the seventh century A.H., namely to the 1240s and 1250s.[173] From this it may be

concluded that Central Asians practiced and studied Islam freely under the rule of the Muslim Orghina and even before her. Qaidu's tolerant attitude was thus not a complete innovation.[174]

The sympathetic policy towards Islam was likely to have offered political advantage to Qaidu, particularly in the years 1279/80–1287 when Qubilai adopted an anti-Islamic policy, expressed chiefly in the banning of Muslim ritual slaughter.[175] There is, however, no evidence of a change in Qaidu's treatment of the Muslims after the conversion to Islam of Ürük Temür, who fought Qaidu because he saw him as an infidel, or after the conversion of the Mongols in Persia to Islam in Ghazan's time.[176] Qaidu's attitude towards Islam, or to religion in general, seems to have derived primarily from the religious tolerance customary among the Mongols[177] rather than from any immediate political goal.

This view finds support in Rubruck's description of the active Buddhist temples in Qayaliq under Qaidu and the fact that Christians worshipped freely there as well.[178] Further evidence of Qaidu's sympathetic treatment of the Christians is his patronage of the mission of Rabban Sauma, who visited him in Talas circa 1274/5,[179] or the letter that Pope Nicholas IV saw fit to send to Qaidu in 1289 in which he appealed to him to embrace Christianity and to help to free the Holy Land from the Muslims.[180] The fact that the Bekrin tribe was half Christian, and that a sizeable Christian population lived in Qaidu's territory certainly contributed to his positive attitude. Yet, it seems that in this case, too, tolerance rather than mere political considerations were at the root of the sympathetic attitude.

3. Economy and Administration

Qaidu's basic policy, as manifested in the *quriltai* of Talas, advocated separation between the nomads and the sedentary population.[181] each group shall be discussed separately.

The nomads in Qaidu's kingdom were practically all soldiers organized into units on a decimal basis. The army commanders, princes and others, were the group with whom Qaidu consulted in most of his important policy decisions, such as whether to make peace with Baraq in 1269, whether to assist Baraq after his defeat, or who to appoint as his successor.[182] According to the *Yuan shi* Qaidu also consulted with "specialists" outside the circle of his followers, such as the Uighur Shi Tianlin, whom Möngke sent to him in 1256 and who remained in captivity with him for over twenty years; or An Tong,

Qubilai's general whom the rebel princes took captive and sent to Qaidu in 1276–77.[183] An Tong was also accused of having received the title of minister from Qaidu,[184] but it is difficult to determine whether Qaidu accorded titles to his advisers or whether this testimony is merely an attempt by the *Yuan shi* to make events in Central Asia correspond with the Chinese reality. Decision-making by consultation was part of the Mongol political culture (as expressed, for example, in the institution of the *quriltai*), and certainly it was not unique to Qaidu.[185]

Appanages and pasture lands were distributed among the princes and their forces in the mountains and the deserts, sometimes near cities,[186] but in such a way that they would not adversely affect the life of the city.[187] Interestingly, Qāshānī records that after the surrender of Qaidu's son Chapar to Du'a, Du'a fixed Chapar's daily salary at four heads of sheeps, and also allocated a monthly salary to him.[188] It seems that this allocation was a unique case, perhaps designed to make clear that Chapar was subject to Du'a, since it is difficult to imagine that large numbers of the Central Asian nomadic army received salaries.[189]

ʿUmarī indicates that Chinggis Khan's *Jasagh* (the *Yasa* of the Muslim writers) continued to be maintained in Central Asia until the time of Tarmashirin and the conversion of the Mongols to Islam.[190] In the material dealing with Qaidu there are several mentions of Chinggis Khan's *Jasagh*, but most are connected with general directives and not with specific laws:[191] Qaidu argued that Chinggis Khan's *Jasagh* stipulated that as long as one of the descendants of Ögödei lived he would be a deserving successor to the throne of the Qa'an.[192] On the other hand, Rashīd al-Dīn portrays Qaidu as breaching the *Jasagh*, since he refused to obey the Qa'an. [193] In Du'a's appeal to surrender to the Yuan he makes frequent mention of the *Jasagh*, while stressing Chinggis's orders to maintain unity in the Mongol ranks (a command that Qaidu's revolt had violated) and the allocation of appanages by Chinggis to his sons.[194] After Qaidu's death, Du'a mentions "Qaidu's *Jasagh*", with due respect,[195] but here too it is difficult to give concrete content to his words. It may be assumed that the life of the Mongols in Central Asia followed the Mongol customs, different of course from the *Sharīʿa*, but as aforesaid there is no evidence of tension between the Mongols and the sedentary population as regards the differences between their legal systems.

The center of Qaidu's rule seems to have been in Talas, at least at the beginning of his career: the *quriltai* of 1269 was held there as was

Qaidu's enthronement as Khan in 1271, and Rabban Sauma's interview with him in circa 1274/5.[196] When the Chaghadaid princes entered Talas after Qaidu's death, they also plundered the *sira ordo* there.[197] This term, literally the golden *ordo*, was the name of one of the residences of Ögödei, and in Güyüg's time designated the court or main tent in which Güyüg resided, a kind of mobile palace.[198] The mention of the *sira ordo* is, therefore, a further proof of the centrality of Talas in Qaidu's kingdom.

Nevertheless, Qaidu was buried in "the place of his throne"[199] between the Ili river and the Chu river,[200] both east of Talas, in the south of modern Kazakhstan, and thus he probably had another residence there. Qaidu's son Chapar was enthroned in Emil, southeast of the Ili and the Chu, which was the base of Ögödei's domain and subsequently of the domain of Güyüg and his family.[201] This was probably on the initiative of Du'a, who certainly did not wish to crown Chapar in a territory that originally belonged to Chaghadai.[202] From all the facts cited above, it appears doubtful whether Central Asia had a permanent capital during Qaidu's reign, and the existence of a mobile court seems more plausible. There is, incidentally, also no evidence of the place or places in which Du'a dwelled.[203] Even if it is difficult to determine where Qaidu held court, its members included at least a physician, an astronomer, a Muslim poet and Muslim clergy, who sometimes engaged in religious debates. This retinue thus differed little from those of earlier Central Asian Muslim courts.[204]

Next, regarding the sedentary population, the sources stress Qaidu's fear of placing his lands, and principally Transoxania, "under the hooves of the horses." They indicate his awareness of the damage that could be caused to the sedentary population in wake of the many wars and his attempts at rehabilitation.[205] Qaidu's concern for the welfare of this population probably derived from the lessons that he learned from the rebellions of Arigh Böke and Alghu, when the latter's control of Transoxania and Turkestan enabled him to establish his kingdom and obliged Arigh Böke to surrender to Qubilai.[206]

Qaidu entrusted administration of the affairs of the sedentary population in Central Asia to Masʿūd Beg, who entered his service after Baraq's death in 1271. Masʿūd Beg had extensive experience in administration of Mongol territories: in 1241 he had replaced his father, Maḥmūd Yalavāch, as head of the regional administration of Central Asia from Uighuria to Bukhara. Masʿūd was obliged to leave this position after Ögödei's death during Töregene's regency, but returned to his office under Güyüg and maintained his position also

under Möngke. After Möngke's death, he made an alliance with Alghu and served as his governor; subsequently he came into Baraq's service. Mas^{c}ūd Beg served Qaidu from 1271 until his own death in 1289,[207] and his three sons continued in the post after him: Abū Bakr, Mas^{c}ūd II, from 1290 to his death in 1297; *Satilmish Beg, Mas^{c}ūd III, until his death in 1302; and *Sevinch, Mas^{c}ūd IV, whose appointment met the approval of Chapar. He commenced in the post in 1302 when he was dwelling in Kashgar.[208] It is not clear what became of him after the Chaghadaids took control of Qaidu's kingdom.

The testimonies to stability and economic growth under Qaidu (see below) as well as Qarshī's praises,[209] indicate that Mas^{c}ūd Beg and his sons performed their functions successfully. It is more difficult to determine how they did this: no evidence exists for population censuses in Qaidu's territories, although the fluctuations in the size of the population, at least in Transoxania, during his reign certainly made such a step more important. There are also no records of the appointing of regular tax collectors, and there is no evidence of the use of the institution of *darughachi* or *shaḥna*, the Mongol commissioner in the occupied urban areas, so vital for the administration in the other parts of the empire. Nor is there evidence that Mas^{c}ūd ever wore this title.[210]

There is a little more information on Baraq's short-lived rule of Bukhara (1268) and of Herat (ca. early 1270): in Bukhara Baraq sought to carry out a population census and to impose taxes. Thus he ordered the townspeople to leave the town so that his forces could plunder their property, their arms and their cattle. It seems that the town rulers, one of whom bore the Chinese title *daifu*, (Waṣṣāf also calls him *shaḥna*), preferred to meet his demands without allowing him to plunder the town: the rulers brought him tribute in gold ingots (*bālish*) and gave him control of the city's *hizārahs*, (units of thousand) and workshops.[211] As part of his preparations for the battle with Abaqa, Baraq obtained the (provisional) surrender of Shams al-Dīn Kart, ruler of Herat. Baraq appropriated from Herat money (*māl*), arms and cattle. When Shams al-Dīn Kart was sent back to Herat at his request, Baraq gave him a *khil^{c}a*, a cloak signalling authority. Baraq's supporters, however, including Mas^{c}ūd Beg's brother, were appointed to be his "companions". When Shams al-Dīn's escorts reached Herat, they ordered the inhabitants to pray for the welfare and victory of Baraq, the new ruler, and set tax collectors (*^{c}ummāl*) and inspectors over trade and artisanship (*umanā'*) on the

mints, and on the markets or at the gates (*darvāzah*).[212] Since in the Talas *quriltai* Qaidu explicitly introduced major administrative changes, it is not clear how instructive the fragmentary descriptions of Baraq's activities can be.

The Mongol rule in Central Asia does not seem to have harmed local dynasties, which survived in Qaidu's territory. Historical texts, inscriptions and coins mention rulers in Utrār, Shāsh, Khojand, Farghāna, Talas, Khotan and Almaliq.[213] However, their role in Qaidu's kingdom and other details concerning them are practically unknown from the sources at our disposal. Waṣṣāf stresses the full subjection of the local rulers ("the masters of this area" – Transoxania) to Qaidu,[214] but does not clarify what this subjection entailed, or who those rulers were, especially in cities where no local dynasty is attested.

Barthold maintained that in Kashgar, for example, the population was headed by a *ṣadr*,[215] and indeed *ṣadrs* might have played a certain role in the administration of Central Asia just as they had done before the Mongols. In eleventh and twelfth century Transoxania the term *ṣadr*, literally chest, hence eminent person; denoted religious leaders, mostly Ḥanafis, who also held political and administrative power *vis-à-vis* the rulers of the region (Qarakhanids and Qara Khitan). The most notable example was the Burhān family, whose members held the *ṣadrate* of Bukhara from the beginning of the twelfth century to at least 1238, and among their responsibilities were the collection of taxes for the rulers and the daily management of the city's affairs.[216] *ṣadrs* in Bukhara in Qaidu's time appear in the 1299 *waqf* document, where they hold posts in the religious establishment, as well as in other literary sources.[217] Qarshī mentions *ṣadrs* in Bukhara, Samarkand, Khojand, Ūzgand, Farghāna, Shāsh and Almaliq, sometimes in places where he also attests the presence of local rulers.[218] In the case of Almaliq Qarshī notes that the nomination of the *ṣadr* was subject to approval by the Qa'an (before Qaidu's time).[219] This implies a high level of importance attaching to the position of *ṣadr*, but it is hard to formulate specific definition of the office's role under the Mongols.

The *Waqf* document of 1299 mentions division of the territory around Bukhara into *tümens*.[220] A tümen as an administrative-territorial unit is attested in Central Asia from the time of the Chaghadaid Khan Kebek (1318–26), and still existed in Temür Lang's time.[221] Morgan suggested that every such *tümen* was designed to provide the needs of a *tümen* of Mongol soldiers.[222] Since the term *tümen* is mentioned only in the Persian translation of the *waqf*

document, completed sometimes before 1661 (the original Arabic text used the term *ʿamal*, district),[223] the mention of the *tümen* may be an anachronism, and it is impossible to determine with certainty whether such a division already existed in Qaidu's domains.

Collection of taxes was naturally one of the main aims of the Mongol administration. As early as 1269 Qaidu promised to avoid collecting extortionate taxes,[224] and it seems that he kept his promise, since Waṣṣāf and Qarshī emphasize the justness of his rule.[225] The only tax mentioned in the sources as a tax collected by Qaidu is the *māl*.[226] *Māl* here should not be confused with the previously mentioned money. It constitutes at times an alternative to the Mongol term *qalan*, which is usually interpreted as the traditional, pre-Mongol taxation of the sedentary population that can include both agricultural taxes and tolls on trade and manufacturing.[227] Yet it is not certain that in the said passage *māl* serves as a technical term clearly related to taxes, or that the linkage to *qalan* helps to explain the nature of this tax. Some of the taxes in Qaidu's realm were collected in currency, as testified by Rashīd al-Dīn, according to whom Malik Naṣīr al-Dīn Kashgarī paid a thousand *tenge* of silver to Qaidu yearly.[228] It may be assumed that another part of the taxes was collected in kind, probably principally in cattle as befitting the needs of the nomads.[229] The division of taxes between taxes in money and taxes in kind was also customary in other areas of the Mongol empire.[230]

Qaidu's tax collectors show up in the sources only when they came to Bukhara in 1269–70. The text describes them as emissaries (*ilchiyān*), which attests to the fact that they did not dwell in the city but came only to collect the taxes, apparently on fixed dates.[231] It seems that this method, which Khazanov calls "tribute", was in use at least in parts of Qaidu's territories. Under this practice, the occupied areas must meet financial or other obligations towards the ruler, but the ruler does not interfere in their political or social structure.[232] The use of this method can explain the fact that the town of Qara Qocho was able to maintain good relations with both Qaidu and the Qa'an,[233] just as Kashgar and Khotan were nominally subject to the Qa'an in the late 1280s while some of their revenue went to Qaidu.[234]

Numismatic evidence apprises one of the practices introduced by Qaidu's regime, for which Masʿūd Beg was responsible: reform of the Central Asian currency. The main part of the reform consisted of minting coins with a high percentage of silver, like those minted in Almaliq in Möngke's time. Such coins appeared for the first time in

Utrār (1270–71) and immediately afterwards (1271–72) in Talas, Kanjak and Khojand.[235] All this occurred simultaneously with the enthronement of Qaidu (1271) and the appointment of Masʿūd Beg. From 1281–82, silver coins of this kind also appeared in Samarkand and a year later in Bukhara.[236] It was during this period that Qaidu sent Masʿūd Beg to restore the city. In the last two decades of the thirteenth century the great number of coins minted and the many minting sites are conspicuous (in addition to the cities already mentioned, coins were also minted in Andijān, Awsh, Pūlād, Shāsh, Kashgar, (the unidentified) Darkhān, Marghinān, and in Almaliq). The greatest quantity of coins originated in Talas, Kanjak and Utrār.[237] These coins bore the names of the local rulers or only the name of the city in which they were minted.[238] No coins have been found bearing the names of Qaidu, Du'a, or other princes.

The Central Asian coins from this period are not uniform in iconography, but their identical weight, purity and basic design, all testify clearly to a central authority that initiated and supervised the minting.[239] The standardization of coinage in Central Asia is attributed generally to the Chaghadaid Khan Kebek (1318–26).[240] Yet, Masʿūd's reform already provided the state with a silver currency and gave vital guarantees (weight, percentage of metal, the major external details) for distribution of the coins throughout the state without reference to the place of issue.[241] The willingness of the people to exchange the silver in their possession for coins, and the substantial growth in the number of coins and the places of their minting, attest to the relative stability and the revival of trade and urban life in Central Asia under Qaidu.

Alongside the numismatic evidence, literary sources also indicate economic growth in Transoxania and Semirechye in Qaidu's time.[242] Such growth would seem incompatible with the frequent warfare in Qaidu's territories, and thus one must distinguish between the descriptions of destruction in the border areas, such as Uighuria and Khurāsān,[243] and the growth in the center of Qaidu's kingdom. The revival from within both allowed Qaidu to wage war on the border and also encouraged him to do so. Indeed, in order to allow this economic revival Qaidu had to turn his troops outward, so that they could obtain cattle, revenue and manpower not from the territories under his control but from those under the control of his rivals. Bukhara, on which there is a little more information, is illustrative of the fate of the territories under Qaidu, and the transition from "confrontation territory" to "restored area": Alghu and later Baraq

both plundered Bukhara.[244] It was partly out of fear of the destruction of the city and with it all of Transoxania, that Qaidu made peace with Baraq.[245] At the *quriltai* of 1269 the princes entrusted the restoration of the settled territories to Masᶜūd Beg.[246] The initial achievements of this restoration disappeared after Baraq oppressed the residents prior to his incursion into Iran, but Masᶜūd Beg persuaded him not to plunder Bukhara in order to leave himself a rear should he lose the war.[247] After his defeat, Baraq indeed returned to Bukhara, and upon his death it seems to have passed to Qaidu's control. At that time Bukhara was a border territory, and Qaidu could not guarantee mastery of it. Indeed, Bukhara fell in 1273 to Abaqa's troops, and several times afterwards to the sons of Alghu who rebelled against Qaidu. Their great invasion in 1275/6 devastated the town for seven years.[248] In 1282, with the enthronement of Du'a and the stabilization of Qaidu's rule, Qaidu sent Masᶜūd Beg to restore Bukhara,[249] and he promptly introduced the minting of silver coins he had earlier introduced into Turkestan and Semircheye. Waṣṣāf describes Transoxania at the end of Qaidu's time as a rich, fertile region, safe for its inhabitants,[250] and the quantities of coins found there seem to back his claims.

A *waqf* document of 1299, found in Bukhara, allows a closer look at life in that time: the founder of the *waqf*, ᶜAbd al-Raḥīm Muḥammad son of ᶜAbdallah al-Isfījābī, purchased an entire village named Khamana in the *tümen* of Sāmjan in Bukhara, about thirty kilometers to the northwest of modern Bukhara, with its surrounding well-irrigated lands and irrigation canals. The village was situated on a high hill, at the foot of which the founder of the *waqf* built a smaller village (*dihcha*) at his own expense. In this new village he constructed a magnificent house with a garden and terrace for himself, two mosques for summer and winter, good (*ṣāliḥa*) houses for the local workers (*kārandah*), stables, granaries, a flour mill and at least three weaving workshops (*maḥākāt*). The village of Khamana had extensive agricultural lands, including vineyards, trees and water reservoirs. In parts of the lands barley and wheat were sown, but in other parts nothing had yet been planted, and they were ready for cultivation or for building on. All this property was endowed as *waqf* in 1299. The descriptions of the private plots, not included in the *waqf*, and transmission of the names of the owners of the plots bordering on the *waqf* testify to the fact that members of the military elite (*amīrs*) and of the clergy (*shaykh*, *qāḍī*) owned private lands. It seems that they did not actually farm; perhaps the building of the houses by the

purchaser of the *waqf* indicates that the peasants were tenant farmers.[251] The transaction and its details create a picture of a certain abundance, of economic security that allowed such a purchase and investment, of sophisticated agriculture and of development of crafts, probably also for purposes of local trade.

The wars of the princes after Qaidu's death also harmed Bukhara, which was plundered by Ögödeid princes.[252] Waṣṣāf describes the destructive effects of these rebellions on Qaidu's territories,[253] and it seems that the destruction in Transoxania appearing in ᶜUmarī's account occurred in this period.[254]

Qarshī's descriptions tell of a developed agriculture also in other areas of Turkestan, such as Khotan and Khojand, though he depicts Kashgar as waste land; this is strange, since Masᶜūd Beg's son dwelt there.[255] However, Marco Polo's accounts, which are correct for the 1270s, describe Kashgar as a trade and artisan center, and employment in artisanship is also prominent in his accounts of the other cities of the Tarim Basin, Khotan and Yarkand.[256]

One of the difficult subjects to resolve is the question of trade in Qaidu's territories. On the one hand, the wars of Qaidu's time affected the scope of trade in Central Asia. This is clear from the fact that one of the main elements of Du'a's peace overtures to the Qa'an was renewal of the caravan trade throughout the empire.[257] The letters of John of Monte Carvino also attest to the lack of safety on the routes of Central Asia in the late thirteenth century.[258] It is also possible that the many edicts relating to maritime trade appearing in the laws of the Yuan, particularly after 1282, testify to the shifting of a large part of the Yuan's trade to the sea, perhaps at the expense of the caravan trade.[259] On the other hand, it is doubtful whether Qaidu could bring prosperity to the areas under his rule, if trade in Central Asia had ceased almost completely. The sympathetic attitude of the Mongols towards trade,[260] and evidence for the continuance of trade even in time of war in other Mongol states,[261] also reinforce the conclusion that the borders remained open. The quantities of coins found in Central Asia from Qaidu's time attest to a relatively large monetary cycle for the beginning of Mongol rule in the area, and this would require at least flourishing local trade;[262] such trade is implied also by the weaving workshops mentioned in the *waqf* document of 1299.[263] Waṣṣāf maintains that as a result of the princes' war after Qaidu's death (1305/6) trade in Central Asia ceased, but even this claim testifies to the existence of such trade previously, and probably not only in the wake of the peace agreement.[264] Qarshī mentions

markets in Khotan, for mainly woven material including (Chinese?) silk; in Farghāna and especially in Jand.[265]

An exchange of goods must also involve people. There is substanital evidence of the presence of Central Asians in China, but it is difficult to determine whether they came to China in Qaidu's time, after his death or before his rise.[266] Chinese doctors treated Qaidu before his death,[267] but it is possible that they came to his court as captives. From the 1290s the struggle between Qubilai and Qaidu concentrated mainly in Mongolia, thereby opening up the southern silk road – from Badakhshān to Khotan and from there via Lop and Cherchen to China[268]. From the 1290s onwards trade was also possible on the route described by ʿUmarī, from Samarkand to Talas, and from there to Almaliq, Qara Qocho and then on to Dadu and all of China.[269] Naturally, it is difficult to determine the volume of trade that passed along these routes, and Qarshī's surprising affirmation of the devastation in Kashgar points to the improbability of large-scale trade, at least along the southern silk road.

It is possible that a great part of the Central Asian trade passed via the Golden Horde and from there to the Mediterranean and Europe. Unequivocal evidence does not exist to this effect, but such a supposition gains support from Qarshī's report on Jand, on the border between the Golden Horde and Qaidu's lands, as a thriving trade city; by the existence of Central Asian products among the goods exported by the Golden Horde;[270] and perhaps also by the evidence of trade in Mamluks between Qaidu's territories and Egypt, a trade which was probably a branch of the extensive trade of the Golden Horde with Egypt;[271] as well as by Qaidu's political standing. If this was so, Du'a's application for renewal of trade may also have been a response to the relatively fresh tension between Central Asia and the Golden Horde over the fate of the White Horde.[272] Certainly the other disputes among the Mongols, which Du'a also sought to resolve in the peace agreement, likewise harmed the caravan trade, which was vital to landlocked Central Asia.

Another action that shows the importance of trade for Qaidu and Du'a, and certainly a sympathetic attitude towards the sedentary population, is the building of the city of Andijān in the 1280s.[273] Unlike other cities built by the Mongols (Qara Qorum, Dadu, Sulṭāniyya), Andijān did not serve as a capital and seems to have been built exclusively for the needs of the sedentary population. The continued prosperity of the city throughout the next century, when it became the capital of Farghāna, shows that its location was fortunate,

in other words Qaidu and Du'a were certainly conscious of the interests of the sedentary population.[274] From the location of Andijān, between Jand and Kashgar and between Samarkand and Talas, it may be possible to learn about the customary trade routes in Central Asia of that time. Systematic research based on numismatic and archeological evidence, which could not be carried out in the framework of this study, may in the future give a more complete picture of the economy and trade in Central Asia in Qaidu's time.

◇◇◇

Dardess maintains that the policy of separation between the nomads and the sedentary population created a *spontaneous* revival in Central Asia under Qaidu, which was oriented by Masʿūd Beg and local governors.[275] Although it is impossible to reconstruct an overall picture of Qaidu's internal policy, there seems to be sufficient proof that a great part of the responsibility for the prosperity of Central Asia belonged to him, and not only to the "spontaneous forces" or to Masʿūd. The sources emphasize that it was Qaidu who sent Masʿūd to restore life in Central Asia, and highlight the stability the former introduced in the territories subject to him; the coins show clearly orientation from above, and the precise coordination between the dates of their minting and the different stages in Qaidu's consolidation attest to an even closer relation between the ruler and the situation of his subjects. Certainly the construction of the city of Andijān was not a "spontaneous" action. The devastation in Central Asia prior to Qaidu's rise and after his death also attest to his role in guaranteeing the stability and affluence of his kingdom. The relative prosperity in Central Asia under Qaidu may be appreciated especially against the evidence of the difficult conditions of life of the population in Iran prior to Ghazan's reforms[276] and the heavy burden of the tax that Qubilai imposed on the Chinese.[277] One should appreciate these steps precisely because Qaidu did not relinquish the Mongol nomadic way of life and religion to achieve them.

It should be noted that from new studies of the Yuan in China one can identify several points of similarity between Qaidu's and Qubilai's rule, e.g., the style of consultation, the decentralization,[278] or even the staffing of the court with physicians, astronomers and clerics, and the holding of religious debates.[279] The two rulers differed, however, in their attitudes towards the nomadic way of life. Qaidu, moreover, did not administer a complicated machine like the Chinese bureaucracy, and there were of course other major differences between the two

rulers. Before explaining these differences at the ideological level, however, one should indicate several practical, obvious reasons for the differences between the two types of rule. The first reason is the nature of the territory. Central Asia was characterized by separate settlements of nomads and a sedentary population in different ecological areas, and with a relatively high proportion of nomads.[280] The geographic conditions suited the nomadic life, and mobility allowed the Central Asian soldiers to clash successfully with larger and better equipped armies of their neighbors. In other words, in the area ruled by Qaidu the nomads had far fewer reasons to settle down than in China or in Persia.

The ecological and geographical conditions, of course, affected the ruling tradition in the entire area. The ruling tradition of Central Asia differed from that of China or Persia, and was characterized by a symbiosis of the nomads and the sedentary population, under the supremacy of the former. Another characteristic is decentralized rule, sometimes with physical separation between the nomads and the sedentary population.[281] One can thus say that Qaidu up to a point drew on the local ruling tradition, just like Qubilai and the Ilkhans did in their realms, and the difference in the result derives also from the difference in the system constituting a basis for the regime.

Since the sources are meager, it is difficult to indicate the measure of influence of the local customs in Central Asia on Qaidu's rule. Such a measure is hard to define also because the differences between Mongol customs and Chinese customs, for example, were greater than the differences between the Mongol and Turkish customs in Central Asia. One should, however, note that the Chaghadaid Khan Kebek is considered by Barthold as having taken "a decisive step towards adoption of the traditional Islamic culture and politics;"[282] that is, he was greatly influenced by the sedentary population in his territories. Numismatic and literary evidence give rise to the supposition that some of the reforms ascribed to Kebek, such as unification of the currency or the administrative division into *tümens*, might have commenced already in Qaidu's time.

Conclusion

The events and circumstances [in the life of] a single grandson of Ögödei called Qaidu, who by conquest, subjugation and trickery has acquired a certain part of the Ögödei's *ulus*, are in brief as has been stated.

Rashīd al-Dīn[1]

Qaidu was a realist, a superb soldier and a skilled politician rather than an ideological warrior. One should view his activities and struggle against the background of the ongoing disintegration of the Mongol empire in his time, and in light of the status of the house of Ögödei, which received a severe blow in 1251 with the rise of Möngke and the transfer of the position of the Qa'an from the house of Ögödei to the house of Tolui. The struggle between Qubilai and Arigh Böke (1260–64) prompted Qaidu to action. Qubilai's victory over the latter was achieved only at the price of further division of the Empire into areas of influence of the principal heads of the troops there at that time: Berke, the Khan of the Golden Horde; Hülegü, Qubilai's brother, who received Iran and Western Asia; and Alghu of the house of Chaghadai who received Central Asia. There were three main consequences of this struggle from Qaidu's point of view: first, this division of the empire allocated nothing to the house of Ögödei, whose appanage was swallowed up by that of Alghu; second, the example of Alghu, who through the maximum exploitation of the rivalry between Qubilai and Arigh Böke and the seizure of territories by force was able to carve out for himself a dominion in which he subsequently legitimized his rule. These actions placed Alghu on the same level as the heads of the other great *uluses*, and recouped the position which the Chaghadaids had lost since Möngke's rise. The third consequence was the transfer of the Qa'an's capital from Qara Qorum to China, which left Central Asia less directly under the control of the Qa'an.

These conditions together provoked Qaidu to act. His first enemies were the Chaghadaids: under the patronage of the Golden Horde he attacked Alghu, and then Alghu's successor Baraq. The decisive event in Qaidu's rise was not the *quriltai* of 1269, the decisions of which, as in many peace accords between the Mongols, were not respected, and in the course of which the Golden Horde retained its senior position *vis-à-vis* Qaidu. Rather, it was Baraq's defeat at the battle of Herat (1270), to the outcome of which Qaidu contributed considerably, albeit indirectly. Qaidu took advantage of the confusion that befell the Chaghadaids following Baraq's death to subject them to his rule, and only then was he enthroned as Khan (1271), an event that marks the creation of his state.

One should remember, too, that Qaidu was enthroned as Khan and not as Qa'an, as noted in the testimony of the sympathizing Qarshī. Indeed, Qaidu's activities during and after his rise demonstrate that his ambitions were mainly local, i.e., to obtain a state for the house of Ögödei. He did not aspire to serve as Qa'an, a position that he knew early on to be already of restricted importance in the Mongol world. In the course of his rise, Qaidu did not hesitate to accept the Golden Horde as a senior partner, and to establish friendly ties with Ilkhan Abaqa, Qubilai's nephew. Even after he consolidated his state, his confrontation with the Qa'an consisted mostly of border warfare, in complete contrast to the battles that he fought against the Chaghadaids prior to this. During the confrontation with the Yuan, Qaidu showed no inclination to impose his authority on new territories, did not oppose nominal rule of the Yuan in a given area as long as he could obtain what he wanted from it, and retreated without delay when necessary. Qaidu never tried to penetrate into China proper, and only once, possibly not on his own initiative, did he strike at Qara Qorum, the previous residence of the Qa'ans. Unlike Qubilai who was called to defend Qara Qorum, Qaidu evacuated this town without hesitation.

The challenge which confronted Qaidu when he came to establish a state for the Ögödeids was greater than that which faced Alghu, since the house of Ögödei had been more severely weakened than the Chaghadaids by Möngke's acts. Physically, the Ögödeids lost most of their seniors as well as their troops, and did not even retain their *ulus* framework. The high position of non-Ögödeids in Qaidu ranks (Chaghadaids, Tuloids, descendants of Jochi Qasar) attests to the difficulties of building his state exclusively (or mostly) on the Ögödeids. Territorially, it is doubtful whether Ögödei's original

appanage, which lacked a sound sedentary basis, could support a strong state without the domains and rights that Ögödei had held *ex officio* as Qa'an. Certainly, the few widely-spaced cities left for the Ögödeids in Möngke's time could not provide a strong territorial base, and even those cities were absorbed into the Chaghadaid realm by Qubilai's time. In order to confirm the right of the Ögödeid *ulus* to an appanage and to a status commensurate with these of the other branches of the Mongol family, Qaidu had to stress the days of glory of the house under Ögödei and Güyüg. Emphasizing the legacy of the Ögödeid Qa'ans implies a threat to Yuan legitimation, but, more important, through this legacy Qaidu could also legitimize his rule over the Chaghadaids and their territories. Even though Qaidu presented himself as the successor of the Ögödeid Qa'ans in his search for legitimization, it is clear from his activities that what he desired was his own state and not mastery of the entire Mongol empire.

The status of the Chaghadaids in Qaidu's kingdom was a source of weakness from the outset. Some of the Chaghadaids continued to resist Qaidu up to 1282, when he made an alliance with Baraq's son, Du'a, whom he appointed as head of the Chaghadaid *ulus*. During this period Qaidu's power also grew when some princes and part of the army of the house of Tolui joined him, after the failure of their revolt against Qubilai. Qaidu's power in the early 1280s was sufficient to convince Du'a of the advisability of mutual cooperation, but not sufficient to deprive Du'a of his independent power base or to dismantle the Chaghadaid army. Qaidu's successes in the 1280s and 1290s were also Du'a's successes, and Du'a's influence in Qaidu's state grew increasingly stronger.

The Chaghadaids' status as a "state within a state" in Qaidu's territories is the main factor which explains the collapse of Qaidu's kingdom after his death. Du'a, who outlived Qaidu, encouraged the succession struggles among the latter's sons, but he required an alliance with the Yuan in order to liquidate the house of Ögödei. Here Du'a exploited his great advantage over Qaidu: the fact that the Yuan dynasty and the other Mongol states recognized the historical right of the house of Chaghadai to rule in Central Asia. Moreover, it was only due to Qaidu's activities that Du'a was able to make peace with the Yuan Qa'an and still retain his independence: after more than thirty years of fighting with Qaidu the areas of influence which Qubilai had distributed in 1264 became independent regional khanates in every sense of the phrase, while the Qa'an's authority had waned. It was Du'a and his Chaghadaid successors who built on

Qaidu's attainments, while the princes of the house of Ögödei were dispersed among the various khanates and lost the political power that Qaidu had worked so hard to win for them.

Even if the state that he founded passed to the Chaghadaids, there can be no denying of Qaidu's achievement in creating a Mongol state independent of the Qa'an's authority in Central Asia. At first glance, it would appear that Qubilai gave Central Asia as an appanage to Alghu. However, Qubilai demonstrated by his activities in the mid-1260s (such as the population census in Bukhara, the attempt to establish postal stations between China and Persia, and above all by sending Nomuqan to Almaliq), that he still saw himself as the supreme ruler of the region. It was Qaidu's actions that constrained Qubilai to relinquish any involvement in the rule of Central Asia. Furthermore, the location of Qaidu's kingdom in the heart of the Mongol empire also undercut the Qa'an's authority with the edges of the empire, and helped to speed up its dismemberment. Another consequence of Qaidu's revolt was to prevent the expansion of the Mongols to new territories, since many of their troops were involved in internal wars. At the same time, the border areas between the various khanates suffered greatly and the volume of overland trade within and outside the Empire was reduced.

The confrontation between Qaidu and Qubilai, and between Qaidu and the Ilkhans, took the form of random incursions and slow and gradual seizing of territories, rather than large battles or conquests. Qaidu used the mobility of his forces and their skill in nomadic tactics to counter his inferiority to the Yuan army in terms of arms and numbers. The nature of the warfare was very similar to incursions of other nomads into China and Persia throughout history, and may indicate another major motive for Qaidu's actions: the need to supplement his state's revenues with plunder from the sedentary territories on its borders and to provide employment and revenues for his fighting troops, so as to maintain his own authority especially among the Chaghadaids (and Toluids). Since the sedentary states on Qaidu's borders were for the most part the other Mongol khanates, Qaidu directed most of his raids at them. One may assume that the hostility between the houses of Ögödei and Tolui or between the house of Chaghadai and the Ilkhans affected the orientation of these invasions, but they were mostly motivated by the requirements of the Central Asian state for maintaining its economic and political stability.

One must make a distinction between this practical motive for the confrontation, on the one hand, and a reconstruction of the

confrontation as an ideological conflict focusing on the desire to maintain the old Mongol values as opposed to identification with the sedentary population, on the other. It is very doubtful whether the only explicit mention in the sources of Mongol resistance to Qubilai's settlement activities can be related with certainty to Qaidu. It is important to remember that it was as a result of Qubilai's settlement activities, and principally the transferral of the capital to China and the large scale use of infantry with its characteristic tactics, that allowed Qaidu to obtain his independence and to vanquish the Qa'an's army. It would thus seem doubtful whether he wished to oppose these activities.

The limitations of the sources make it difficult to ascertain to what extent Qaidu was influenced by the non-Mongol population in his kingdom. To be sure, a certain continuity of the Central Asian ruling tradition characterized his rule, just as a certain continuity of the Chinese ruling tradition can be seen in Qubilai's rule, or a certain continuation of Muslim rule in Ghazan's activities. Qaidu was apparently conscious of the needs of the sedentary population in his kingdom, perhaps no less than Qubilai or the Ilkhans were of the needs of theirs. The administration that he established succeeded in guaranteeing the relative prosperity of most of the inhabitants of his state despite the many wars, in introducing a new currency system in Central Asia, and also in building cities for the sedentary population. Qaidu himself conserved the nomadic way of life, but this did not necessarily derive from ideology; rather from the fact that in Central Asia he had less practical reasons to relinquish the nomadic way of life than Qubilai had in China.

It is possible that because Qaidu maintained the nomadic lifestyle he was able to attract to his side some of the Mongol princes who opposed changes in their way of life and close contact with the sedentary population. It is doubtful, however, whether portraying the confrontation between Qaidu and the Yuan and the Ilkhans as a conflict between the conservative, traditional Mongols and the "progressive," sedentary Mongols helps to explain Qaidu's actions.

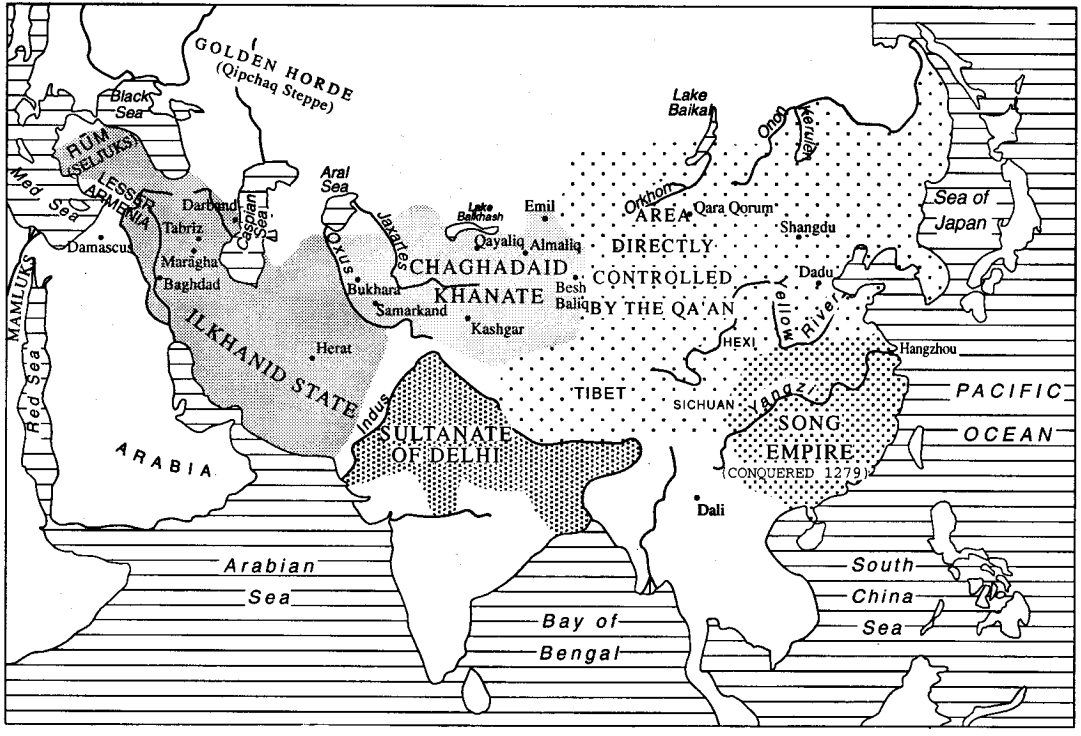
The connection, obvious in modern research literature, between Qaidu's revolt and that of Arigh Böke deserves attention. Qaidu's revolt can be seen as a continuation of Arigh Böke's revolt in the process of dismemberment of the Mongol empire. On the other hand, it is not clear whether the two rebellions shared common goals and ideology. First, Qaidu seems to have supported Arigh Böke only at a late stage, and not without reservation as some scholars claim.

Second, some of Qaidu's main supporters, such as Hoqu son of Güyüg or Qadan son of Ögödei, whose sons later played important roles in Qaidu's state, and some of the men presented in modern studies as allies of Qaidu, such as Nayan, in fact supported Qubilai during the latter's confrontation with Arigh Böke. A study of the motives for Arigh Böke's rebellion does not come within the scope of this work, but it is difficult to reconcile the claim that the two rebellions had an identical ideological basis with the fact that so many key figures changed sides within a period of less than a decade. The dissimilarity in the nature of the confrontation, the series of large battles and the rapid surrender in Arigh Böke's case, as opposed to a slow, continued border war in Qaidu's case may also indicate that different goals motivated the two rebels.

The main motives for Qaidu's actions, then, were his wish to establish for the house of Ögödei a state commensurate with the other Mongol states, and the necessity of guaranteeing the political and economic stability of this state. The special status of the Chaghadaids in Qaidu's state was its main weak point, and this weakness contributed to Qaidu's inability to make peace with the Qa'an. Qaidu's political and military abilities enabled him to establish and stabilize his state at the expense of the Chaghadaids and against the Qa'an, but were not sufficient to guarantee the continued independent existence of the Ögödeid state after his death. Qaidu's successors lacked their father's stature, and thus within ten years of his death they lost most of their political power and left the independent Mongol state in Central Asia to be known in history as the Chaghadaid khanate.

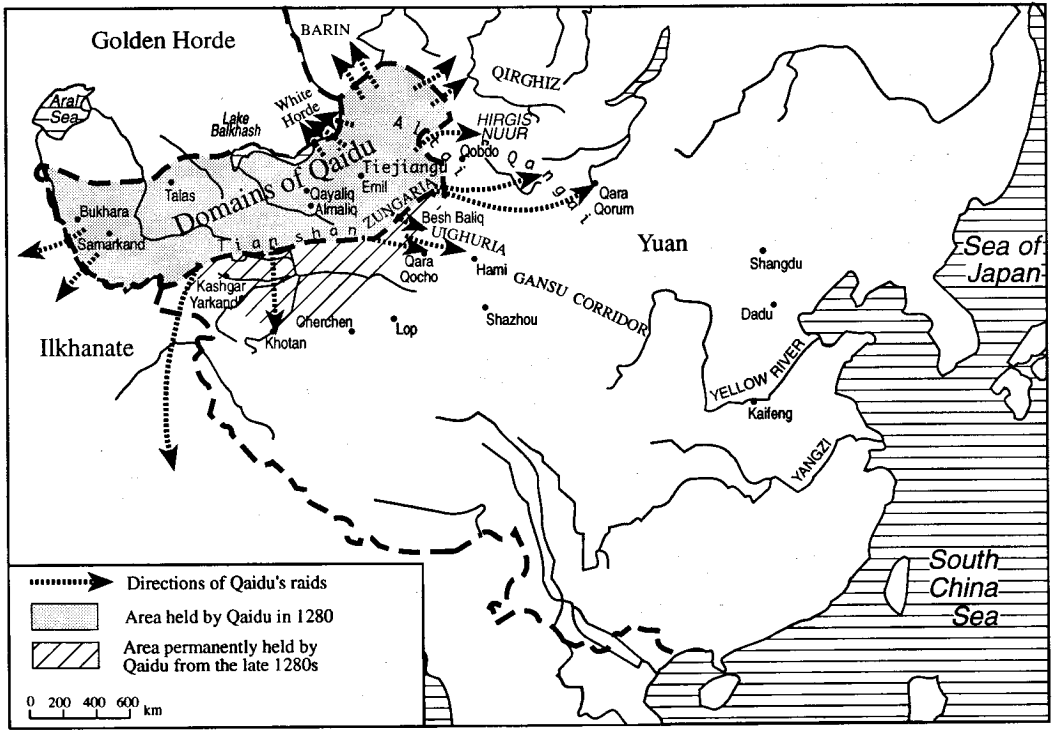
Maps

Map 1: The Mongol Empire after the Death of Möngke (1259)



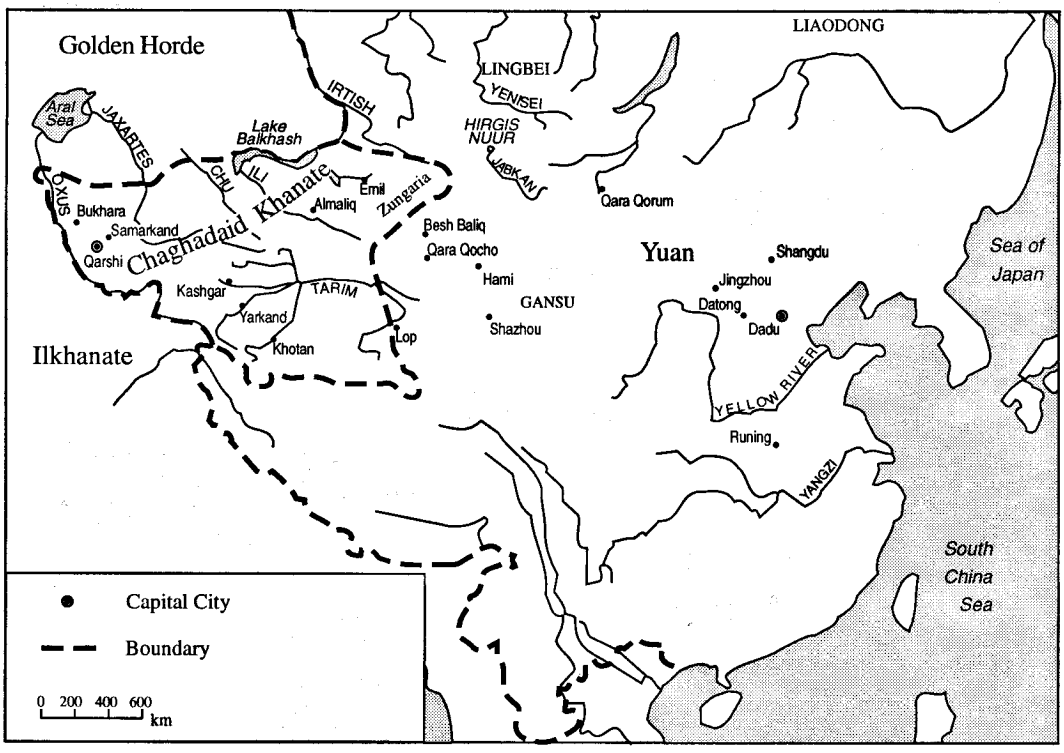
After R. Amitai-Preiss, *Mongols and Mamluks* (Cambridge, 1995), 236.

Map 2: Qaidu and the Yuan



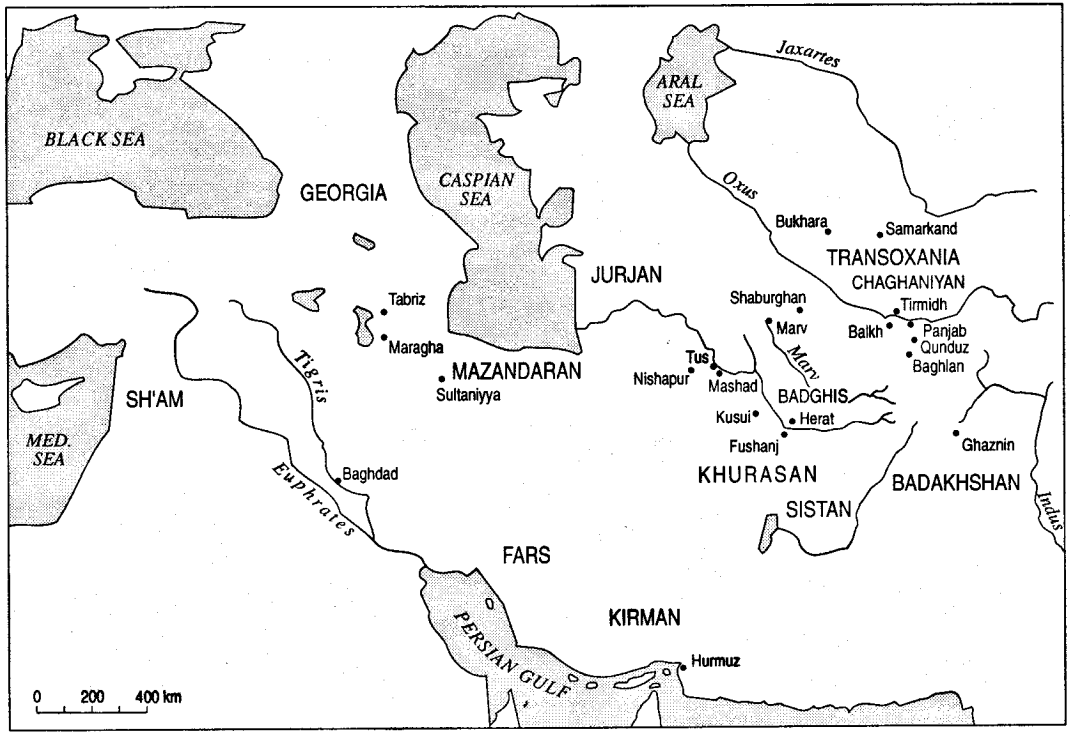
After Tan Qixiang, *Zhongguo lishi ditu ji* (Shanghai, 1982), VII, 3–4.

Map 3: The Yuan Dynasty and the Chaghadaid Khanate, 1330.

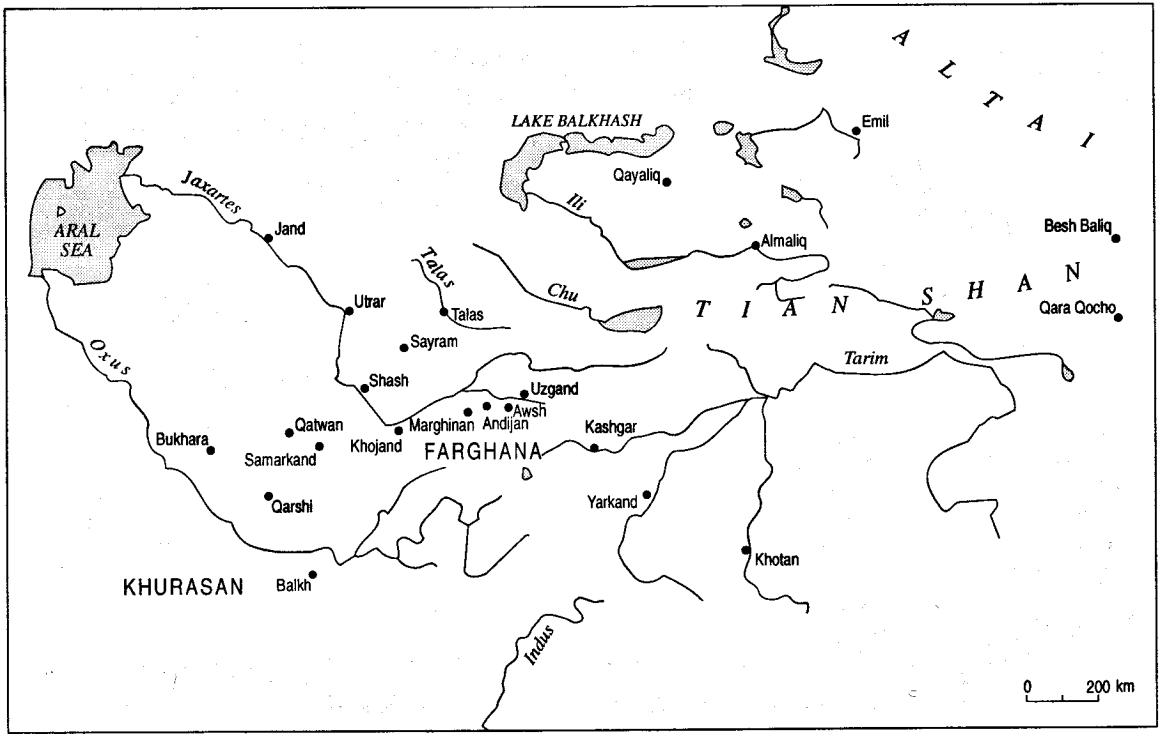


After Tan Qixiang, *Zhongguo lishi ditu ji* (Shanghai, 1982), VII, 5–6.

Map 4: Greater Iran in the Thirteenth Century



Map 5: Turkestan under the Mongols



Genealogical Tables

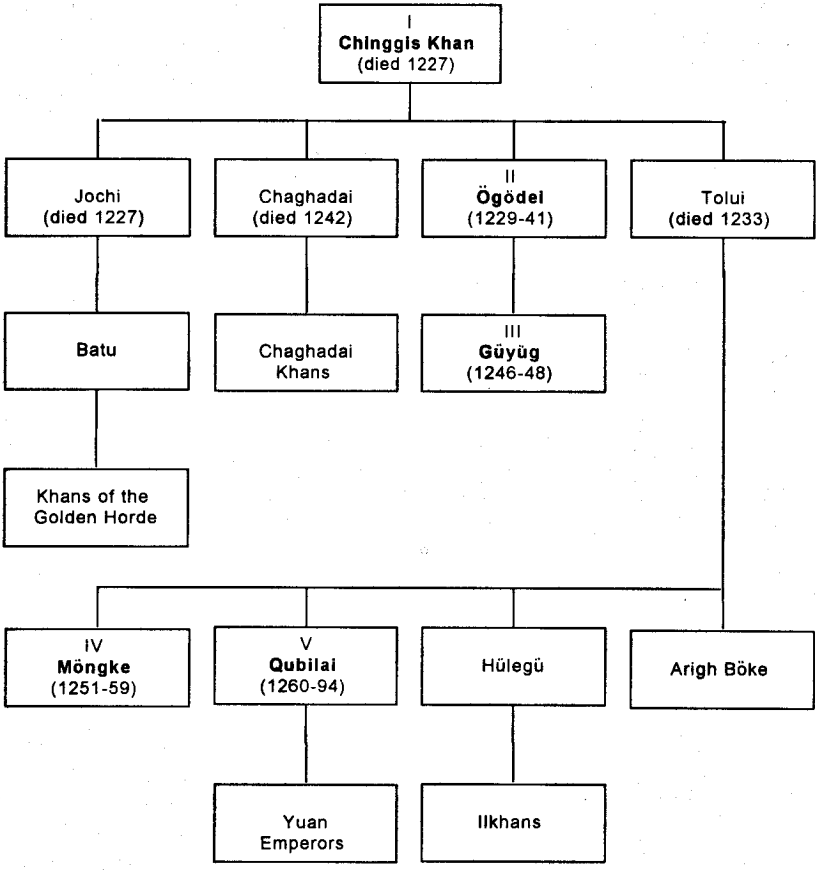


Figure 1: The Great Khans

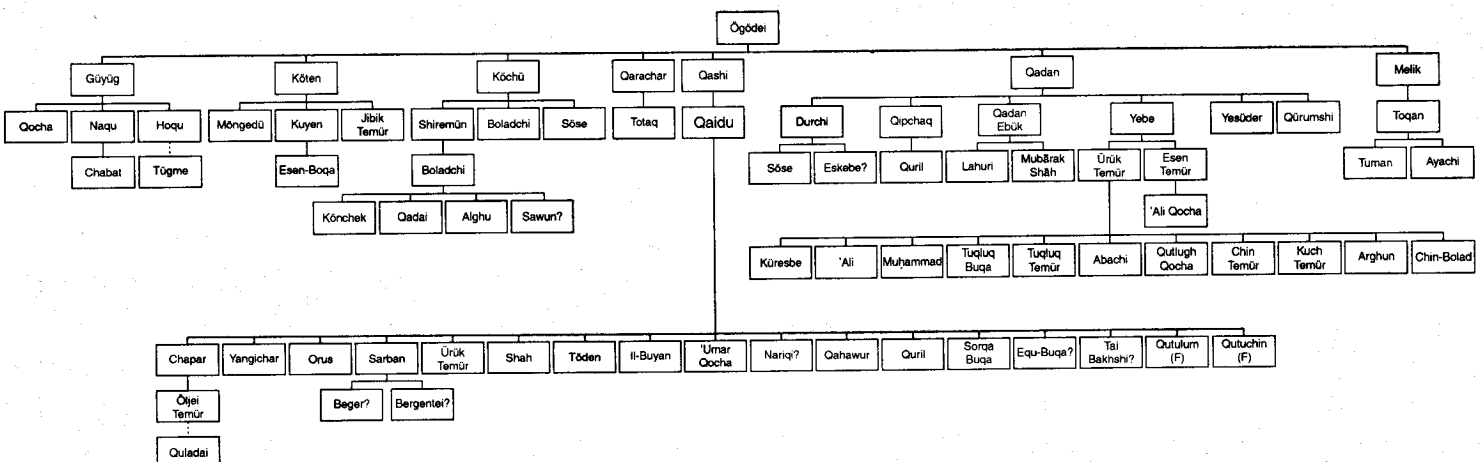


Figure 2: The House of Ögödei

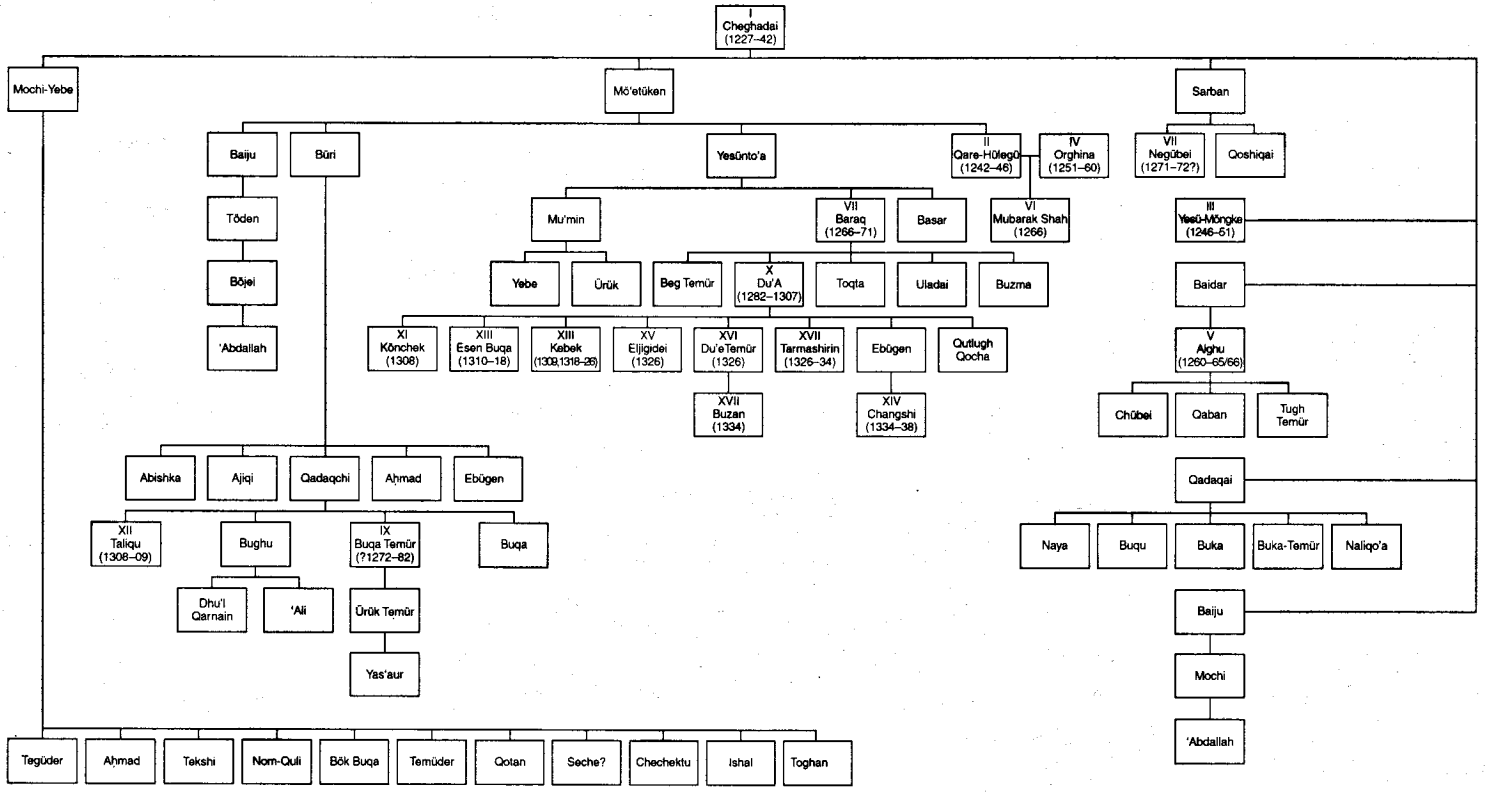


Figure 3: The Chaghadaids (1227–1338)

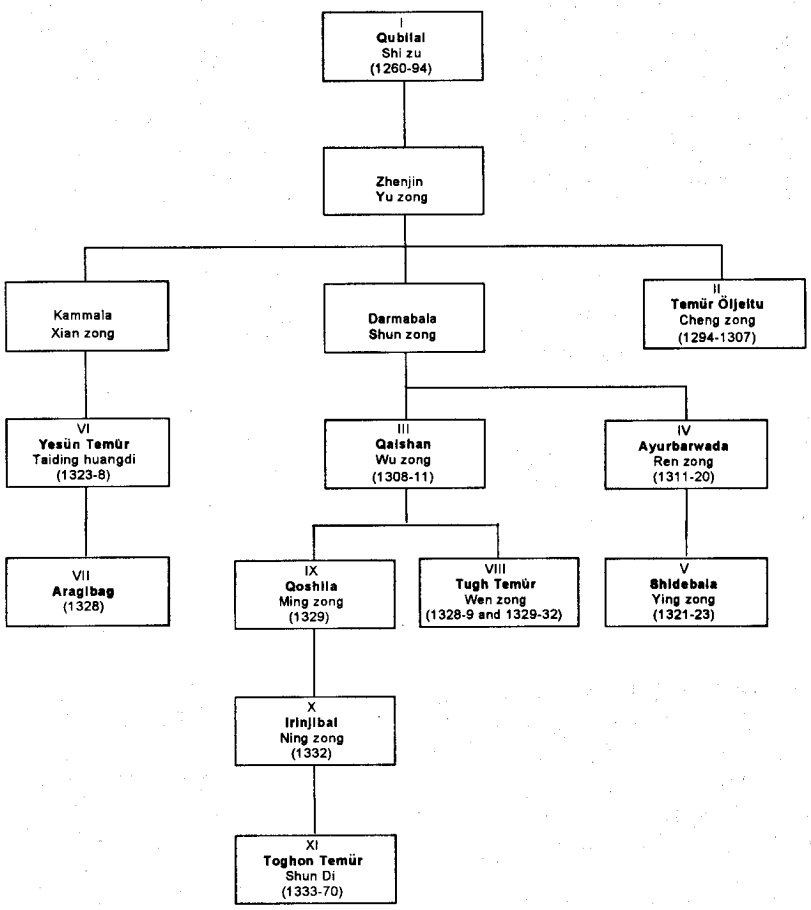


Figure 4: Yuan Emperors

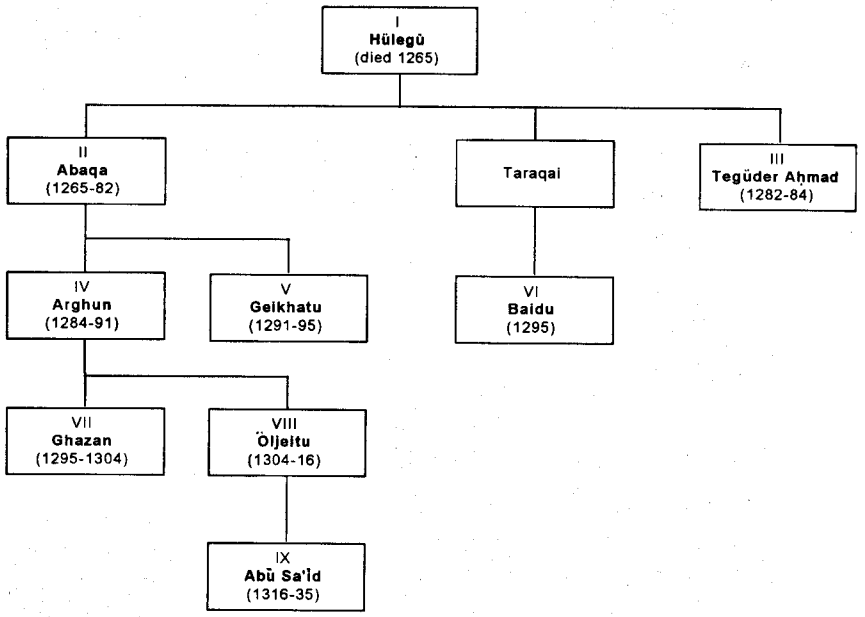


Figure 5: Ilkhans of Persia

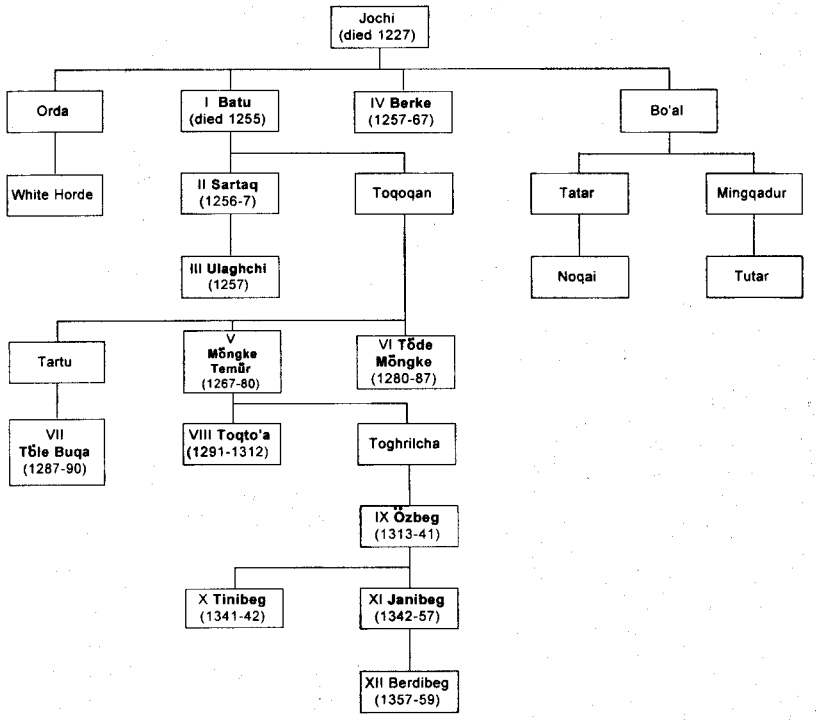


Figure 6: Khans of the Golden Horde

Glossary of Chinese Characters

Ali Buge 阿里不哥
Alimali 阿力麻里
Ananda 阿難答
Asahutu 阿撒忽圖
Azhiji 阿只吉
Anchasi 按察司
An Tong 安童
Aoluchi 奧魯赤

Baba 八八
Badashan 八答山
Bala (Balahe) 八剌，八剌合
Balin 八鄰
Balin wanhu 八鄰萬戶
Baihu 白戶
Beiping wang 北平王
Beiting 北庭
Bieerge 別兒哥
Bieshi bali 別失八里
Bodaer 伯答兒
Boyan 伯顏
Busiba (Buzaoma) 卜思巴（不早麻）

Caizhou 蔡州
Chabaer 察八兒
Chengzong 成宗
Chubai, Chuban 出佰，出班

Dadu 大都
Datong 大同

Daifu 大夫
Duhufu 都護府
Duwa (Tuhe) 篤哇，都哇（禿呵）
Dunhuang 敦煌

Fan chen 反臣

Elinqin 額林沁

Ganmala 甘麻剌
Gansu 甘肅
Gaochang 高昌
Gao Zhiyao 高智耀

Hadan 哈丹
Hala hata 哈剌哈塔
Hala huozhou 哈剌火州
Hamili 哈米里
Haidu (Handu) 海都（罕都）
Haishan 海山
Haiyali 海押立
Hanghai 沆海
Hedan 合丹
Helin 和林
Henan 河南
Heshi 合失
Heshiheer 合失合兒
Hexi 河西
Hubilie 忽必列
Huladai 忽剌怠
Huanghuo Tiemuer 晃火帖木兒
Huoerhatu 火兒哈禿
Huohu (Huohe, Hehu) 火忽, 霍忽（火和，和忽）
Huonichi 火你赤

Jin shan 金山
Jingzhou 京州

Kaifeng 開封
Kebuduo 科布多
Kuanshe 寬闍
Kuobielie (Kubuli) 闊別列（庫布哩）

Kuolijisi 闊里吉思
Kuokuochu 闊闊出

Liaodong 遼東
Liaoyang 遼陽
Lingbei 嶺北
Liu En 劉恩
Luobu 羅不

Menggedu 蒙哥都
Mieli 蔑里
Mingli Tiemuer 明里帖木兒
Mobei 漠北

Naiyan 乃顏
Nanjiatai Nangjiatai 南家台, 囊家台
Nanjing 南京
Nanmugan (Namuhan) 南木干（那木罕）
Nianhao 年號
Niegubai 聶古佰

Qianhu 千戶
Qiebo 怯伯
Qilijisi 乞里吉思
Querzhi 曲兒只
Quxian talin 曲先塔林

Runing 汝寧

Saliman 撒里蠻
Sangge 桑哥
Shazhou 沙州
Shangdu 上都
Shangshu sheng 尚書省
Shenhan 申罕
Shi Tianlin 石天麟
Suigedu 歲哥都

Taihe 太和
Taizi 太子
Tiemuer 帖木兒
Tiemuer buhua 帖木兒不化

Tuqumie 禿曲滅
Tutuha 土土哈
Tuoertuohai 脫兒脫海
Tuohei tiemuer 脫黑帖木兒
Tuntian 屯田
Tuotuo 脫脫

Wanhu 萬戶
Wanzhe tiemuer 完者帖木兒
Wenzong 文宗
Wuertu 兀兒禿
Wulusi buhua 兀魯思不化
Wusihu 五絲戶
Wuzong 武宗

Xiban 昔班
Xibei 西北
Xiliji 昔里吉
Xingsheng 行省
Xuanweisi 宣慰司

Yahudu 牙忽都
Yan Fu 閻復
Yaomuhuer (Yaobuhuer) 要木忽兒 (要不忽兒)
Yao Sui 姚燧
Yeligannaoer 葉里干腦兒
Yelu Chucai 耶律楚材
Yemili 也米里
Yeerdeshi 也兒的石
Yilihun chahaner 亦里渾察罕兒
Yuxi Tiemuer 玉昔帖木兒
Yuechichaer 月赤察兒

Zhabugan 扎不干
Zhangji 章吉
Zhi yuan 至元
Zhuangwuer 狀兀兒

Notes

Introduction

1. Qa'an was the title assumed by Ögödei upon his accession to the throne to clarify the subjugation of his brothers, entitled khans, to his supreme authority. Qa'an is the Mongolian form of the Uighur Turkic title Khaqan, khan of the khans. (I. de Rachewiltz, "Qan, Qa'an and the seal of Güyüg," in K. Sagaster and M. Weiers (eds.), *Documenta Barbarorum: Festschrift für Walter Heissig zum 70. Geburstag* (Wiesbaden, 1983), 273; F. Doerfer, *Türkische und mongolische Elemente im Neupersischen* (Wiesbaden, 1963–1975), III, 141–79.) Throughout the work the term Great Khan is completely synonymous with the term Qa'an.
2. Rashīd al-Dīn. *The Successors of Genghis Khan*, tr. J.A. Boyle (New York and London, 1971) 27, n.74 (hereafter Rashīd/Boyle); V.V. Barthold, *Turkestan down to the Mongol Invasion* (4th ed. London, 1977), 491.
3. Mīrkhwānd, *Ta'rīkh-i rawḍat al-ṣafā* (Tehran, 1961), V, 218.
4. On Qutulun, whom Marco Polo called Aijaruc, see e.g. Marco Polo, *The Book of Sir Marco Polo*, tr. H. Yule (London,1903), II, 393–96. [hereafter *Polo*. Throughout the work I refer to Yule's translation. I cite Moule and Pelliot's version only when it is significantly different from Yule's]; Rashīd/Boyle, *loc.cit.*; Rashīd al-Dīn, *Shuʿāb-i panjgāna*, MS Topkapi Sarayi Ahmet III, no. 2937, f. 127a; Anon. *Muʿizz al-ansāb* MS Biblioteque Nationale A. F. Pers 67, f.44b; Mīrkhwānd, V, 218; P. Pelliot, *Notes on Marco Polo* (Paris, 1959–73), I, 15. Qutulun's case was dealt in details by Rossabi (M. Rossabi, "Khubilai Khan and the Women in his Family," in W. Bauer (ed.), *Studia Sino-Mongolica: Festschrift für Herbert Franke* (Wiesbaden, 1979), 174–75; idem, *Khubilai Khan* (Berkeley, 1988), 104–5) and is therefore only generally referred to here. On Qutulun see also Chapter II, section 2; Chapter III.
5. Mīrkhwānd, V, 219. According to Rashīd al-Dīn, however, after falling in love with the slave girl, the son-in-law planned to go over to the Qa'an with her. When Qaidu learned about it, he executed him.

(Rashid/Boyle, 27, n.74; *Shuʿāb-i panjgāna*, f. 127a; See also *Muʿizz al-ansāb*, f.44b.)

6. For Rossabi's interpretation see the references in note 4 above.
7. On the importance of revenge among the Mongols, see e.g., P. Ratchnevsky, *Genghis Khan* (Oxford, 1991), 152; L.V. Clark, "The Theme of Revenge in the *Secret History of the Mongols*," in idem and P.A. Draghi, eds., *Aspects of Altaic Civilization – II* (Bloomington, 1978), 33–57; For the position of Women under the Mongols, see e.g. Rossabi, "Women," *passim*; H. Franke, "Women under the Dynasties of Conquest," in L. Lanciotti, ed., *La donna nella Cina imperiale e nella Cina Repubblicana* (Florence, 1980), 23–43, esp. 36ff. (Rpt. in idem, *China under Mongol Rule* (London, 1994), art. VI.).
8. L. Olschki, *Marco Polo's Asia* (Berkeley, 1960), 357.
9. See e.g. H.H. Howorth, *History of the Mongols from the Ninth to the Nineteenth Century* (London, 1876), I, 180; R. Grousset, *The Empire of the Steppes* (New Brunswick, 1970), 336; Zhu Feng and Wang Lu, "Hubilie de dingxin gegu," in Lu Minghui (ed.), *Menggu zu lishi renwu luji* (Beijing, 1981), 59; I. de Rachewiltz, "Turks in China under the Mongols," in M. Rossabi (ed.), *China Among Equals* (Berkeley, 1983), 293–94; J.F. Fletcher, "The Mongols: Ecological and Social Perspectives," *HJAS*, 46 (1986), 94; Zhou Liangxiao, *Hubilie* (Jilin, 1986), 151 ff.; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 104–11; *idem*, "The Reign of Khubilai Khan," in D. Twitchett and H. Franke (eds.), *The Cambridge History of China Vol. 6* (Cambridge, 1994), 442–43.
10. The term West, when the East refers to China, refers here principally to the Muslim World of West Asia.
11. The term Central Asia in this work refers to the area encompassing Transoxonia and Turkestan, from the Oxus to the Altai mountains, and the eastern fringes of modern Xinjiang.
12. On Jamāl Qarshī and his book see V.V. Barthold, *Turkestan down to the Mongol Invasion* (4th ed., London, 1977), 51–52; P. Jackson, "Djamāl Qarshī," *EI2*, Supp. III-IV (1981), 240. On Jawharī and his dictionary see C. C. Berg, "Djawharī," *EI2*, II (1965), 495–97 and the references there.
13. *Polo*, II, 457–67 and *passim*. On European sources for Mongol History, see e.g. Morgan, *The Mongols* (Oxford, 1986), 23–27 and the references there; On Mamluk sources in general see D.P. Little, *An Introduction to Mamluk Historiography* (Wiesbaden, 1970), *passim*.
14. On Chinggis's *jasagh* (*Yasa*), a body of Chinggisid law and customs, see chapter IV, part 3, and the references there.
15. For the vast literature on Rashīd al-Dīn see D.O. Morgan, "Rashīd al-Dīn Ṭabīb", *EI2*, VIII (1995), 458–59 and the many references there. On *Shuʿāb-i panjgāna*, the geneaological appendix of *Jāmiʿ al-tawārīkh*, see A. Zeki Validi Togan, "The Composition of the History of the Mongols by Rashīd al-Dīn," *CAJ*, 7 (1962), 68–71. On Persian sources for Mongol history in general see E.G.A. Browne, *A Literary History of Persia* (Cambridge, 1951–53), III, 1–104.
16. On Juwaynī, one of the most important sources for early Mongol history see, e.g., Boyle's introduction to his translation of Juwaynī's

work: Juwaynī, *History of World Conqueror*, tr. J.A. Boyle (Manchester, 1958), I, xv-xxxv; also Morgan, *The Mongols*,12–15.

17. Indeed, when Waṣṣāf read part of his book to the Ilkhan Öljeitu the latter was unable to make heads or tails of it, an experience that many subsequent readers have shared. On Waṣṣāf see Browne, III, 67–68; Morgan, *Mongols*, 15–16.
18. Barthold, *Turkestan*, 58. On Mīrkhwānd (1433/4–98) see A. Beveridge-B. F. Manz, "Mīrkhwānd," *EI2*, VII (1990), 126–27; Browne, III, 431–33.
19. On the *Yuan shi* and its composition see e.g. Cang Xiuliang (ed.), *Zhongguo shixue mingzhu pinglie* (Jinan, 1990), II, 223–45; Wang Shenrong, *Yuanshi tan yuan* (Changchun, 1991), 1–336; F.W. Mote, "A Note on Traditional Sources for Yuan History," in D. Twitchett and H. Franke (eds.), *The Cambridge History of China Vol.6* (Cambridge, 1994), 689–83; on the structure of the official histories and the method of their composition, see e.g. Yang Lien-sheng, "The Organization of Chinese Official Historiography," in E.G. Pulleyblank and W.G. Beasley (eds.), *Historians of China and Japan* (London, 1961), 44–59.
20. On the concept and characteristics of Chinese biographies see e.g. D.S. Nivison, "Aspects of Traditional Chinese Biography," *Journal of Asian Studies*, 21 (1961–62), 457–63; D. Twitchett, "Problems of Chinese Biography," in A.F. Wright and D. Twittchet (eds.), *Confucian Personalities* (Stanford, 1969), 24–42.
21. On this work see Mote, 696.
22. On these works see Wang Shenrong, 362–70, 408–21, 422–27; Mote, 696–97. On the *Secret History of the Mongols*, the Mongols' most important record of their own early history up to the reign of Ögödei (1229–41), see Mote, 693–94 and the many references there.
23. The reference to the dates and to the sources of these writers in itself raises the problem of distinguishing between primary and secondary sources. My distinction is based on that of Rossabi in his *Khubilai Khan*.
24. D'Ohsson's pioneering work drew heavily on Muslim sources for Mongol history. See: C. M. d'Ohsson, *Histoire des Mongols depuis Tchinguis Khan jusqu'a Timour Bey* (The Hague, 1834–35), 4 vols.
25. On Hong see Wang Shenrong, 427–34; A.W. Hummel, *Eminent Chinese of the Ch'ing* (Washington DC, 1943–44), I, 360–61.
26. On Tu Ji see Wang Shenrong, 434–44; Cang, III, 377–98.
27. On the *Xin Yuan shi* see Wang Shenrong, 445–53; Cang, III, 399–426.
28. Barthold, *Turkestan*; idem, *Four Studies on the History of Central Asia* (Rpt. London, 1956–62); *idem*, *Zwölf Vorlesungen über die Geschichte der Türken Mittelasiens* (Berlin, 1935).
29. See Bibliography.
30. *Ulus* was the name for the subjects of a Mongol prince, or his descendants. It can also denote the compound of people and territories, i.e. a state or empire. In the following pages *ulus* refers to the territory and men under the descendants of Chinggis, mainly under his four main sons, Jochi, Chaghadai, Ögödei and Tolui. For a detailed discussion on the term see Doerfer, I, 175–78.

31. For discussion of the bias of the sources see P. Jackson, "The Dissolution of the Mongol Empire," *CAJ*, 22 (1978), 188–91.
32. Jackson, "Dissolution," 191–92; P.D. Buell, "Tribe, Qan and *Ulus* in Early Mongol China: Some Prolegomena to Yuan History," (Unpublished Ph.D dissertation, University of Washington, 1977), 34–40, 125 ff.
33. Jackson, "Dissolution," 192–93.
34. Barthold, *Turkestan*, 479; Jackson, "Dissolution," 193–95; Fletcher, "Turco-Mongolian Monarchic Tradition in the Ottoman Empire," *Harvard Ukranian Studies*, 3–4 (1979–80), 239–40. As Fletcher noted, Juwaynī's assertion about the right of the youngest to succeed was only meant to legitimize the later Toluid accession. (Juwaynī, *Ta'rikh-i jahān-gushā*, ed. M. Qazwīnī (Leiden, 1912), III, 3 (hereaftar, Juwaynī/Qazwīnī) / Juwaynī, *History of World Conqueror.* trans. by J.A. Boyle (Manchester, 1958), II, 549 (hereafter, Juwaynī/Boyle); the same claim is maintained by Rashīd al-Dīn, see Rashīd al-Dīn, *Jāmi^c al-tawārīkh*, ed. Blochet (Leiden, 1912), 16 (hereafter Rashīd/Blochet) / Rashīd/Boyle, 30–31.
35. Jackson, "Dissolution," 193–95; see also R.P. Lindner, "What Was a Nomadic Tribe," *Comparative Studies in Society and History*, 24 (1982), 689–711.
36. Fletcher, "Turco-Mongolian," 239.
37. On the *quriltai* institution see e.g. Fletcher, "Turco-Mongolian," 239 and, more comprehensively, E. Endicott-West, "Imperial Governance in Yuan Times," *HJAS*, 46 (1986), 525–40.
38. Th.T. Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism* (Berkeley, 1987), 218 n.4.
39. Juwaynī/Qazwīnī, I, 142 / Juwaynī /Boyle, I, 180; *Secret History*, par. 255 and see de Rachewiltz's notes in "The Secret History of the Mongols Chapter 11," *POFEH*, 30 (1984), 138–39. On the attempted putsch of Chinggis's brother Temüge Odchigin see below.
40. Barthold, *Turkestan*, 462; Xiao Gongqin, "Lun Da Menggu guo de hanwei jicheng weiji," *Yuan shi ji beifang minzu shi yanjiu jikan*, 5 (1981), 53; Th. T. Allsen, "The Rise of the Mongolian Empire and Mongol Rule in North China", in H. Franke and D. Twitchett (eds.), *The Cambridge History of China Vol. 6* (Cambridge, 1994), 366.
41. Barthold, *Turkestan*, 463; Jackson, "Dissolution," 196; Allsen, "Rise," 366.
42. Barthold, *Turkestan*, 464. On Chinggis's *jasagh* (*Yasa*) see note 14 above.
43. Barthold, *Turkestan*, 464–65; Allsen, "Rise," 366.
44. Rashīd/Blochet,214 / Rashīd/Boyle, 164.
45. *Secret History*, par. 255.
46. See e.g. *Secret History*, par. 254, 255, 269; Juwaynī/Qazwīnī, I, 141–48 / Juwaynī /Boyle, I, 179–87; Rashīd al-Dīn, Jāmi^c al- tawārīkh, ed. B. Karīmī (Tehran, 1959), I, 385; Rashīd/Blochet, 2–3, 15–16 / Rashīd/Boyle, 17–18, 30–31; *YS*, 2/29.
47. de Rachewiltz, "The Secret History of the Mongols Chapter 11," *POFEH*, 24 (1984), 140, and see, e.g., Barthold, *Turkestan*, 462; Jackson, "Dissolution," 197; Allsen, "Rise," 366. However, Krawulsky recently offered a different interpretation: based on the various versions of the nomination story and of the division of Chinggis's armies (about

which see below), as well as on the reports of the chaos in the interregnum between Chinggis and Ögödei, she suggested that in fact Chinggis died without nominating a successor. The succession agreement was concluded among Ögödei and Tolui, the only two sons who accompanied their father to his last campaign in China. According to this agreement, Ögödei got the supreme rulership while Tolui maintained most of the army under his immediate control. The two years of interregnum were the time required for the brothers to enforce the depriving agreement on their elder brother, Chaghadai. (D. Krawulsky, "Das Testament von Chinggis Khan: Eine quellenkritiche Studie zum Thema Legitimation und Herrschaft," in idem, *Mongolen und Ilkhane – Ideologie und Geschichte* (Beirut, 1989), 65–85.) Provocative as it is, this explanation lacks any hint in the sources and is therefore hard to accept, especially *vis-à-vis* the unquestionable position of Ögödei's nomination even during the future legitimation struggles between the Ögödeids and the Toluids.
48. Juwaynī/Qazwīnī, I, 31 / Juwaynī/Boyle, I, 42.
49. Juwaynī/Qazwīnī, I, 31–32 / Juwaynī/Boyle, 1, 42–43; Barthold, *Turkestan*, 392–93; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 45; *idem*, "Rise," 366–67.
50. Jackson, "Dissolution," 210–11; Allsen, "Rise," 366; see also Buell, "Tribe," 34–36, though the division of lands that he gives seems a little too schematic; Juwaynī mentioned that in addition to the sons, Chinggis's younger brother, Temüge Odchigin, received a territory "in the region of Khitai" (Juwaynī/Qazwīnī/Boyle, *loc.cit.*).
51. Allsen, "Rise," 367, based on the partition given by Rashīd al-Dīn (Rashīd/Karīmī, I, 399–417). The *Secret History*, however, describes a very different, much more equal, partition, according to which Chinggis's mother and his younger brother, Temüge Odchigin, received 10,000 men; Jochi 9,000; Chaghadai 8,000; Tolui and Ögödei 5,000 each and Chinggis's other brothers got lesser numbers. (ph. 242, de Rachewiltz, "The Secret History of the Mongols, chapter 10," *POFEH*, 26 (1982), 46–47, 72). Though the difference is quite considerable, the mentioning of Odchigin together with his mother gives credibility to the practice of inheritance of the younger son of most of his parents property, thus explaining the allocation of most of the army to Tolui after Chinggis's death. Cf. Krawulsky, 75–77. Moreover, the army that was allocated was only the Mongolian army. Apart from it each of the princes has at his command auxiliary troops; their real forces were, therefore, bigger than the numbers I have cited imply. (Allsen, "Rise", 367, n.60).
52. Xiao, 56–57; Allsen, "Rise," 367.
53. Barthold, *Turkestan*, 462–63; Jackson, "Dissolution," 197; *YS*, 115/2885; 146/3457, where Tolui is convinced by Chinggis's Khitan advisor, Yelu Chucai, to enthrone Ögödei in accordance to Chinggis's order; cf. Rashīd/Blochet, 219 / Rashīd/Boyle, 166 and Juwaynī/Qazwīnī, III, 3 / Juwaynī/Boyle, II, 549 according to them Tolui acted to ensure Ögödei's election. (Jackson, *loc.cit.*). Tolui's regency may have been a later interpolation, and see below.

54. Rashīd/Blochet, 16 / Rashīd/Boyle, 29–30; *YS*, 2/29; see also Allsen, "Rise," 367; cf. Krawulsky, *loc.cit.*
55. Juwaynī/Qazwīnī, 144–51 / Juwaynī/Boyle, I, 183–89; *Secret History*, par. 269; Allsen, "Rise," 368.
56. Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 44; Juwaynī/Qazwīnī, I, 210; Juwaynī/Boyle, I, 255.
57. The branch secretariat (*xing sheng*) was an administrative institution the Mongols adopted from the Jin dynasty that ruled North China before them (1125–1234). This body, a branch of the central secretariat (*shangshu sheng*), was established in newly conquered territories and its official-in-charge enjoyed wide military and civil authority. The Mongols established a branch secretariat in North China in 1214 under Chinggis's general, Muqali. Ögödei's new administrative bodies retained the same name. (Allsen, "Rise," 361). On Mongol administration under Chinggis see, e.g., Ratchnevsky, 175–86.
58. Buell, "Sino Khitan Administration in Mongol Bukhara," *Journal of Asian History*, 13 (1979), 141–43; Allsen, "Rise," 374.
59. Buell, "Sino-Khitan," 143–47; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 45–46; idem, "Rise," 374. See Buell, "Sino-Khitan," *loc.cit.* for a detailed description of the Bukhara incident with Chaghadai in 1238. For a general description of Ögödei's administration and reforms, many of them ascribed to his Khitan advisor Yelu Chuchai, see Buell, "Tribe," 82–101; Allsen, "Rise," 372–81.
60. Allsen, "Rise," 379. In theory the Qa'an had the right to receive a certain amount of the appanages' revenues and to govern over their tax collection and military recruitment, yet practically the princes could usually do whatever they liked.
61. On Ögödei's campaigns see e.g. Morgan, *The Mongols*, 114, 136–41; Allsen, "Rise," 368–72.
62. See e.g. *Secret History*, par. 270, 278; Rashīd/Blochet, 18–19, 41, 42 / Rashīd/Boyle, 33, 54, 55.
63. The existence of such units is attested by Waṣṣāf (*Ta'rīkh-i Waṣṣāf* (Bombay, 1859–60), 50–51), who narrates the 1260s. He is cited in Barthold, *Turkestan*, 515–16 and subsequently in Buell, "Tribe," 249, n. 128. See also Chapter I below.
64. Rashīd/Blochet, 222 / Rashīd/Boyle, 169; Xiao, 57; Krawulsky, 77; Köten's later alliance with the Toluids in the succession struggles that continued well into the time of Qaidu can be explained against the background of his Toluid army. (Xiao, *loc. cit.*).
65. Rossabi, "Women," 160.
66. Rossabi, "Women," 159; Qara Qorum was built there by Ögödei because Chinggis had chosen this place to be his capital (Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 165–69). Its location is probably connected to the sacred position of the Mongolian steppes among the Mongols and the Turks.
67. Barthold, *Turkestan*, 462; Jackson, "Dissolution," 197.
68. Rashīd/Blochet, 4, 134, 240, 276 / Rashīd/Boyle, 19, 120, 180, 201; Rashīd al-Dīn, *Jāmiᶜ al-tawārīkh*, ed. A. A. ᶜAlizādāh (Moscow, 1953), I, 140–41; *YS*, 3/44, 124/3055; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 24.

69. Shiremün's nomination is stressed mainly in relation to the Ögödeids' abrogation of their father's will: see the last three references above. Juwaynī only said that a party favored him, and he does not mention at all Shiremün's claims to the throne before Möngke's enthrownment. (Juwaynī/Qazwīnī, I, 206 / Juwaynī/Boyle, I, 251; Jackson, "Dissolution", 198, and see there also for the problems of Shiremün's genealogy). Furthermore, from Chaghadai's statement that "Töregene is the mother of the princes who had the right to the Khanate" (Juwaynī/Qazwīnī, I, 196 / Juwaynī/Boyle, I, 240), it seems as if by the time of Ögödei's death the successor was not yet determined. According to the material of the *Yuan shi*, Xiao concluded that Ögödei left the decision about his successor to the *quriltai*. (*YS* 124/3055; Xiao, 52–53). The *Yuan shi* ascribes to Ögödei only a general statement saying that Shiremün was talented enough to rule all-under-heaven, and the Qa'an offered the same description to Möngke in the same place. In the genealogical tables of the *Yuan shi*, Shiremün is described as *taizi*, a title usually reserved for the heir apparent, yet this title is also given to Köten, Ögödei's second son. According to Juwaynī, Köten was chosen by Chinggis to succeed Ögödei, and his election failed only due to his ill health. (Juwaynī/Qazwīnī, I, 206 / Juwaynī/Boyle, I, 251; YS, 107/1716–7; L. Hambis, *Le chapitre CVII du Yuan Che* (Leiden, 1945), 76; Jackson, "Dissolution," 197.) In 1235 the Chinese messenger of the Song heard that Ögödei chose Qaidu's father, his fifth son Qashi, to be his heir, yet the latter died before his father. (Peng Daya and Xu Ting, *Heida shilue* in Wang Yunwu, ed. *Congshu jicheng* (Changsha, 1937),1, and see Chapter I.) Qarshī's assertion, according to which Ögödei wanted Qaidu to succeed him, is probably of later origin (Jamāl Qarshī, *Mulḥaqāt al-ṣurāḥ*, in V.V. Barthold, *Turkestan v epokhu 'mongol'skogo nashestiva* (St. Petersburg, 1900), I, 138, and see Chapter I).
70. Juwaynī/Qazwīnī, I, 206 / Juwaynī/Boyle, I, 251.
71. Jackson, "Dissolution," 201; Allsen, "Rise," 384–85.
72. C. Dawson (ed.), *The Mongol Mission* (New York, 1955), 25; Xiao, 54; Jackson, "Dissolution," 198; Allsen, "Rise," 385.
73. Rashīd/Blochet, 244–45 / Rashīd/Boyle, 181–82.
74. Allsen, "Rise," 382, 387.
75. Barthold, *Turkestan*, 480.
76. Jackson, "Dissolution," 201. Those praises can of course be a later interpolation.
77. Jackson, "Dissolution," 200–1; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 22–23; *idem*, "Rise," 386–89.
78. Jackson, "Dissolution," 201; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 22–24; *idem*, "Rise," *loc.cit.*.
79. D. Ayalon, "The Great Yasa of Chingiz Khan – a Reexamination," pt B, *Studia Islamica*, 34 (1971), 162; Jackson, "Dissolution," 203–4.
80. Juwaynī/Qazwīnī, III, 17, 19–20 / Juwaynī/Boyle, II, 558, 560.
81. Juwaynī/Qazwīnī, III, 18 / Juwaynī/Boyle, II, 559; Jackson, "Dissolution", 207. Jackson explains Batu's refusal to accept the throne as having originated from the old Jochid legitimacy question.

82. Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 23–25; *idem*, "Rise," 391; On Sorghoghtani and her actions to promote Möngke see Rossabi, "Women," 158–66.
83. Allsen, "Rise," 390.
84. Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 25; idem, "Rise," 392. According to Rashīd al-Dīn and the *Yuan Shi*, the Ögödeids stressed Shiremün's candidacy, basing it on Ögödei's nomination. Their claim was dismissed by the Toluids, who maintained that the Ögödeids themselves abrogated the Qa'an's decree by enthroning Güyüg. On the problems concerning Shiremün's nomination see note 69.
85. Jackson, "Dissolution," 204; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*", 25–26. The Ögödeids that attended the second *quriltai* were Melik and Qadan, both sons of Ögödei by a concubine and therefore ineligible to high position in the *ulus*, and the son of Köten, whose Toluid army probably encouraged him to back Möngke. Among the Chaghadaids there were Mochi, Chaghadai's son by a concubine, and Qara Hülegü, who was deposed by Güyüg in favor of Yesü Möngke. Qoja, Naqu, Shiremün and the reigning Chaghadaid Khan, Yesü Möngke, did not attend.
86. *Secret History*, par. 254, 255. In those paragraphs, Ögödei, while first nominated by Chinggis, expresses his concern that his descendants after him would prove to be unworthy for the Qa'anate. Chinggis answers that in that case, some capable candidate of another line will be nominated for the post, thereby conveniently enough asserting the Toluid claim. The external textual evidence that implies the fabrication of this claim is the version of the *Secret History*, written in the Uighur script, that was preserved only in a later Mongol chronicle, the seventeenth-century *Altan Tobchi*, and includes only the part dealing with Chinggis's reign (paragraphs 1–268). This version curiously lacks any specific statement of Chinggis in favor of the Toluids. Paragraph 255 and the parts dealing with the subject in paragraph 254 are missing completely, just like other references to the same issue. For a further discussion of those paragraphs and their significance for the dating of the *Secret History* see de Rachewiltz, "Chapter 10," pp. 93–96, 130–41; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 39–42, and the references in both.
87. Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 44. Tolui's adherence of the *jasagh* was stressed as a contrast to the Ögödeids abrogation of it, which unfitted them for the Qa'anate. Apart from being condemned for breaching Ögödei's order regarding Shiremün, they were blamed for executing without trial Chinggis's favorite daughter, a crime otherwise unattested, and for not accepting the decisions of the rightful *quriltai* regarding Möngke's election. Xiao, 54; Allsen, "Rise," 396.
88. Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 27–28, 34–44; idem, "Rise," 396. For adjusted Toluid biographies see, e.g., Rashīd/Blochet, 198–226 / Rashīd/Boyle, 157–72; *YS*, 115/2885–87.
89. Jackson, "Dissolution," 205–6 and see especially his reservations about the authenticy of this episode; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 30–31; *idem*, "Rise," 393.
90. Jackson, "Dissolution," 205–6; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 30–34; idem, "Rise," 393–95. William of Rubruck, the Franciscan missionary,

spoke about 300 grandees that were put to death, while the *Yuan shi* and Rashīd al-Dīn claimed that 77 officials and ministers were tried and executed in Mongolia alone. William of Rubruck also mentions that Oghul had ruined her whole family, and Kirakos and Juzjānī, contemporary Armenian and Persian historians respectively, testify that the Chaghadaids were almost completely eliminated.

91. Rashīd/Blochet, 8 / Rashīd/Boyle, 23.
92. Jackson, "Dissolution," 206; Allsen, "Rise," 395.
93. Juwaynī/Qazwīnī, III, 58–59 / Juwaynī/Boyle, II, 587–88.
94. Jackson, "Dissolution," 221. On Tegüder, see p. 30 and p. 146 n. 101.
95. Barthold, *Turkestan*, 483–85; Jackson, "Dissolution," 207.
96. Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 103–4, 54–59.
97. Allsen, "Rise," 394. On the exact meaning of Möngke's nomination see, e.g., Jackson, "Dissolution," 221 ff; R. Amitai-Preiss, *Mongols and Mamluks* (Cambridge, 1995), 12–14.
98. Allsen, "Rise," 394.
99. For more details about the conquests in Möngke's time see e.g. Allsen, "Rise," 403–7.
100. On the administration of Möngke's empire see especially Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, *passim*, especially chapters 4–7.
101. Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 99–107, especially 105.
102. On the background for the Hülegü-Berke dispute in Iran, that led to a long bloody confrontation between the Ilkhans, Hülegü's successors, and the Golden Horde, see e.g., Jackson, "Dissolution," 221 ff.; Allsen, "Rise," 412; Amitai-Preiss, *Mongols*, 86–91. See Chapter I and the references there.

Chapter I: The Rise of Qaidu

1. Qarshī, 138; Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 124. According to Howorth (I, 137, 142) and subsequently others (e.g. Han Rulin, *Yuan chao shi* (Beijing, 1986), I, 157), Qaidu participated in the Mongol invasion of Hungary in 1240–41. Pelliot proved this claim to be erroneous (Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 125).
2. Rashīd/ʿAlīzādah I, 343; Rashīd/Boyle, 22, note 47. This tribe's name is sometimes rendered as Berkin.
3. Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 125–26, and see there for discussion of the different possible dates; cf. Tu Ji, *Mengwuer shi ji* (Rpt. Taibei, 1962), 37/1a; Ke Shaomin, *Xin Yuan shi* (Rpt. Beijing, 1979), 110/511 (hereafter *XYS*); Rashīd/Blochet, 7; Rashīd/Boyle, 22. Hexi literally means west of the (yellow) river. Its domain included parts of modern Shanxi, Ningxia and Gansu provinces of the PRC. On Chinggis campaignes against the Tanguts see e.g. R. Dunnel, "The Hsi Hsia," in D. Twitchett and H. Franke (eds.), *The Cambridge History of China Vol.6* (Cambridge, 1994), 205–14, esp. 207.
4. *Heida shi lue*, 1. This source also notes that Qashi read and wrote Chinese; Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 125–26; Hambis, *CVII*, 72.
5. Qarshī, 136; Rashīd/Blochet, 7 / Rashīd/Boyle, 22.

6. *Ordo* is the camp of a Mongol prince, directed by one of his wives. (Rashīd/Boyle, 341). For a comprehensive discussion of this term see Doerfer, II, 32–39.
7. Qarshī, 136; Rashīd al-Dīn indicates that Qaidu grew up in the *Ordo* of Chinggis Khan, but probably means the *Ordo* of Ögödei. (Rashīd/Blochet, 7 / Rashīd/Boyle, 22).
8. Rashīd/Blochet, 7 / Rashīd/Boyle, 22.
9. On Möngke's purges see introduction, pp. 15–16.
10. *YS*, 3/45. The localities referred to in the passage can be found on the maps.
11. Between the lines dealing with Qaidu and with Totaq, the *Yuan shi* notes that Bieerge received Querzhi. Pelliot, and subsequently Allsen, identifies this prince as Berke, Khan of the Golden Horde (1257–67), and the area that he received as Georgia, given in Chinese transliteration of its Persian name *Kurj*. (P. Pelliot, *Notes sur l'histoire de la Horde d'Or* (Paris, 1950), 51; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 59; *idem*, "Rise", 412). It is not clear why Berke was inserted in a passage dealing with distribution of appanages to the sons of Ögödei (perhaps as compensation for the allocation to Qaidu of Qayaliq, which Waṣṣāf, e.g., claims belonged to the Golden Horde? (Waṣṣāf, 50; Ayātī, *Taḥrīr-i ta'rīkh-i Waṣṣāf* (Tehran, 1944), 27). In *YS* 3/44 the same Bieerge is mentioned only as one of the western princes who participated in the enthronement of Möngke. In the genealogy of the house of Jochi cited in the *YS* (chapter 107) Berke is not mentioned at all. I have been unable to identify a prince with a similar name in the house of Ögödei.
12. The Emil river is given in other sources as the appanage of Hoqu, the son of Güyüg. See e.g. *XYS*, 111/513; P. Jackson (tr. and ed.) and D. Morgan (ed.), *The Mission of Friar William of Rubruck* (London, 1990), 169–70.
13. Rashīd/Blochet, 5–6 / Rashīd/Boyle, 20.
14. L. Petech, *Central Tibet and the Mongols* (Rome, 1990), 13. This appanage was abolished by Qubilai in 1260.
15. Juwaynī/Qazwīnī, III, 69–70 / Juwaynī/Boyle, II, 595; Rashīd/Blochet, 307 / Rashīd/Boyle, 217.
16. Anon. *Shajarat al-atrāk*, MS Harvard University Pers 6F, f. 74a; on the Arulad tribe, see P. Pelliot and L. Hambis (trs. and eds), *Histoire des Campagnes de Genghis Khan* (Leiden, 1951), 344–60; cf. Rashīd al-Dīn's insistence that Qaidu's army was for the most part not the troops originally bequeathed to Ögödei by Chinggis Khan, though he admits that certain Ögödeid troops joined him. (Rashīd/Karīmī, I, 410–11). See also Chapter IV, section 1.
17. On the fate of the Ögödeid forces after Möngke's rise to power, see introduction, pp. 15–17.
18. Zeng lian, *Yuan Shu* (Shandong university's copy, undated), 42/3B.
19. *Rubruck*, 148.
20. Yan Fu, *Jingxuan ji*, rpt. in Wang Deyi (comp.), *Yuan ren wen ji zhen ben cong gan* (Taipei, 1985), II, 17b/550. On Yan Fu see his biography in the *Yuan Shi* (160/3772–74), and Wang Deyi et al., *Yuan ren zhuanji ziliao suoyin* (Taibei, 1979–82), III, 1995–96 and the references there.

21. *YS*, 153/3619; Xiao shi, *Qinzhai ji* (Si qu quan shu ed.), 3/14a-b. In his biography in the *Yuan shi* and in his epitaph, both cited above, Shi is described as a scholar versed in many languages, who was a member of the Ögödeid guard, worked under Yelu Chucai as a judge and administrator in Central Asia and subsequently entered Möngke's service. During the "imprisonment" he developed close ties with Qaidu and his followers. See also Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 128; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 53; idem, "Rise", 412.
22. *YS*, 3/50, 126/3088, 155/3660, 158/3713; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 34–35; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 51.
23. Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 53; idem, "Rise", 412.
24. On the struggle between Arigh Böke and Qubilai see, e.g., Jackson, "Dissolution," 227–30; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 53–62; Zhou, 46–65.
25. Rashīd/Blochet, 7, 398, 433 / Rashīd/Boyle, 24, 255, 266; Mīrkhwānd, V, 200 (see there on Qaidu's abandoning of Arigh Böke). Also see e.g. d'Ohsson, III, 360; Howorth, I, 174; Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 125–26; Barthold, *Turkestan* , 433; Tu Ji, 74/7B; *XYS*, 110/512; Zhou, 152. The Chinese sources give this information only based on Western sources (d'Ohsson).
26. *YS*, 4/68. Qaidu's revenues were frozen after his "revolt" against Qubilai but were given again to his son, Chapar, after the latter surrendered to the Yuan. See Chapter III.
27. Seventeen princes are mentioned in the passage. Twelve of them are definitely identified (according to the genealogy of the mongols in Gao wende et al., *Menggu shi xi* (Beijing, 1979)), and ten are known from the *Yuan shi* to have supported Qubilai. None of them is identified as a supporter of Arigh Böke.
28. For example, he gave an allowance to Baraq in 1268, and see below.
29. On Alghu see Rashīd/Blochet, 403–20 / Rashīd/Boyle, 150, 257–61; Waṣṣāf, 12–16 / Ayātī, 2–5; Barthold, *Turkestan*, 488–92; Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 123–24; Zhou, 55–56; Liu Yingsheng, "Ali Buge zhi luan yu Chahatai hanguo de fazhan", *Xinjiang daxue xuebao*, 1987, 30–34 (hereafter, Liu, "rebellion").
30. Rashīd/Blochet, 410 / Rashīd/Boyle, 259.
31. Rashīd/Blochet, 398 / Rashīd/Boyle, 255. Boyle's punctuation may lead one to conclude that those battles were fought between Qaidu and Hülegü, Qubilai's and Arigh Böke's brother and the founder of the Ilkhanate. I follow Dr. Peter Jackson's reading of the Persian text, according to it Alghu is the one who fought with Qaidu. (Personal communication, January 1995). In any case, those battles were certainly fought only after Alghu (and Hülegü) turned to Qubilai's side.
32. Mīrkhwānd, V, 201; B. Spuler, *Die Goldene Horde* (Wiesbaden, 1965), 41. Berke's pretension to nominate another *ulus*' leader attests to the fluid position of the Qa'an at this stage.
33. Mīrkhwānd, *loc.cit.*; Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 123–24.
34. Rashīd/Blochet, 434 / Rashīd/Boyle, 266.
35. On Qubilai's transferral of the capital and its consequences, see e.g., Jackson, "Dissolution," 228–29. Shangdu is the famous Xanadu of Coleridge's poem.

36. *YS*, 6/107, 95/2416; Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 127 (He dates it to 1265). Other Ögodeids also got revenues from this province together with Qaidu.
37. Rashīd/Blochet, 398 / Rashīd/Boyle, 255–56; Mīrkhwānd, V, 196.
38. Rashīd al-Dīn, *Jāmiᶜ al-Tawārīkh vol. III* (ed. ᶜAlīzādah, Baku, 1957), 109 (hereafter: Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah); Qarshī, 138; Qāshānī, *Ta'rīkh-i Ūljaytū* (ed. M. Hambly, Tehran, 1969), 214.
39. See Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 124–25.
40. *YS*, 63/1569; Waṣṣāf, 12 / Ayātī, 2; Rashīd/Boyle, 259–60; Liu Yingsheng, "Zhiyuan chu nian de Chahatai Hanguo," *Yuanshi ji beifang minzu shi yanjiu jikan*, 9 (1985), 48 (hereafter: Liu, "the Chaghadai ulus").
41. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah A, 343; Barthold, *Turkestan*, 491.
42. *YS*, 122/3001; Yu Ji, *Daoyuan xue gu lu* (Wanyou wenku ed., Rpt. Shanghai, 1937), 24/403.
43. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 108; Waṣṣāf, 68–69 / Ayātī, 38–39; Mīrkhwānd, V, 285–86; and see later in the chapter.
44. *YS*, 63/1569. (translation in E.V. Bretschneider, *Medieval Researches from Eastern-Asiatic Sources* (London, 1910), II, 36). Cf. T. Allsen, "The Yuan Dynasty and the Uighurs in Turfan in the 13th Century," in M. Rossabi (ed), *China among Equals* (Berkeley, 1983), 254, see M. Biran, "The Battle of Herat" [Hebrew], Seminar Paper, the Hebrew University of Jerusalem, 1990), 40). Rashīd al-Dīn may have been referring to the events that preceded this battle (Rashīd/Blochet, 434–35 / Rashīd/Boyle, 266). One *li* is equal to half a kilometer.
45. Waṣṣāf, 68 / Ayātī, 38.
46. Rashīd/Blochet, 188 / Rashīd/Boyle, 151.
47. Qarshī, 138.
48. Juwaynī/Qazwīnī, III, 64–65 / Juwaynī/Boyle, II, 591–92; V.V. Barthold [J. A. Boyle], "Buraḳ Khān," *EI2*, I (1965), 1311. (See Boyle's note on the correct reading of this name [Baraq and not Buraq])
49. Rashīd/Blochet, 7, 169, 188 / Rashīd/Boyle, 23, 139, 151; Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 125.
50. *YS*, 5/91; Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 76.
51. Rashīd/Blochet, 188 / Rashīd/Boyle, 151; Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 125.
52. Rashīd/Blochet, 189 / Rashīd/Boyle, 151; al-ᶜUmarī, *Das Mongolische Weltreich: al-ᶜUmarī's Darstellung der mongolichen Reiche in seinem Werk Masālik al-abṣār fi' l-mamālik al-amṣār*, ed. K. Lech (Wiesbaden, 1968), 2.
53. Rashīd/Blochet, 169 / Rashīd/Boyle, 139–40; Waṣṣāf, 16, 67 / Ayātī, 5, 37.
54. Waṣṣāf, 68 / Ayātī, 38.
55. Rashīd al-Dīn also notes in one of his references to the matter that Baraq asked to return after Arigh Böke's surrender. Rashīd/Blochet, 189 / Rashīd/Boyle, 151.
56. Rashīd al-Dīn, *Ta'rīkh-i mubārak Ghāzānī* (ed. K. Jahn, Le Hauge, 1957), 11 (hereafter: Rashīd/Jahn) / Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 107; Mīrkhwānd, V, 295–96; Grousset, 332.
57. *YS*, 6/118; Liu Yingsheng, "Yuan chao yu Chahatai hanguo de guanxi," in *Yuan shi lun cong*, 3 (1986), 59. (hereafter: Liu, "Relationship "); cf. Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 76.

58. Waṣṣāf, 68 / Ayātī, 38.
59. Rashīd/Blochet, 169 / Rashīd/Boyle, 139–40.
60. Rashīd/Blochet, 9 / Rashīd/Boyle, 23; Cf. Liu, "Relationship", 59.
61. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 107; Mīrkhwānd, V, 284–85. According to Waṣṣāf, Qaidu was victorious in the first battle, and without Möngke Temür's assistance. (Waṣṣāf, 68 / Ayātī, 38; see also Rashīd/Blochet, 169, 189 / Rashīd/Boyle, 140, 152.)
62. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 108; Waṣṣāf, 68–69 / Ayātī, 38–39; Mīrkhwānd, V, 285–86.
63. *Ibid.*
64. Waṣṣāf, 68 /Ayātī, 38; on *daifu*, the Chinese title of the ruler of Bukhara, see Buell, "Sino-Khitan," 146; on Masᶜūd Beg, who later entered Qaidu's service; see Chapter IV, section 3.
65. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 109; Waṣṣāf, 69 / Ayātī, 39. Waṣṣāf does not establish a date for the *quriltai* but according to the sequence of events that he describes, one can set the date at circa 1267.
66. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 108–9; Mīrkhwānd, V, 286–87.
67. *Hizārah* is a unit of theoretically one thousand men – see Morgan, *The Mongols*, 89. Here the reference seems to be to army units stationed in Bukhara from the time of Möngke, as Barthold suggests (*Turkestan*, 491). In this context, see also Waṣṣāf, 50–51.
68. *kārkhānah* is a workshop that employs enslaved craftsmen, who manufacture cloth, weapons and other goods. On *kārkhānah*s in the Ilkhanate, see I.P. Petrushevsky, "The Socio-Economic Condition of Iran under the Ilkhans," in J. A. Boyle (ed.), *The Cambridge History of Iran, Vol. V* (Cambridge, 1968), 512–13.
69. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 109–10; Waṣṣāf, 69 / Ayātī, 39; Mīrkhwānd, V, 266–68; Rashīd/Blochet, 189 / Rashīd/Boyle, 152, where the battle plan is clearly attributed to Baraq; d'Ohsson, III, 492–93; Barthold, *Turkestan*, 491.
70. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 109–10; Mīrkhwānd, V, 266–68. On the term *anda* see Doerfer, I, 149–52; Pelliot and Hambis, 232.
71. Mīrkhwānd, V, 287.
72. Waṣṣāf, 69 / Ayātī, 39.
73. Mīrkhwānd, V, 289.
74. On the "peace" between the Golden Horde and the Ilkhans, see e.g. Spuler, *Die Goldene Horde*, 53; R. Amitai-Preiss, "The Mamluk Ilkhanid War: Its Origin and Conduct up to the Second Battle of Ḥoms (680/1281)," PhD Dissertation (Hebrew University, 1990), 107–8; idem, *Mongols*, 89.
75. Rashīd/Blochet 9 / Rashīd/Boyle, 24; Howorth, I, 175. Cf. Liu Yingsheng, "Lun Talasi huiyi," in *Yuan shi lun cong*, 4 (1992), 264 (hereafter: Liu, "Talas").
76. Liu, "Talas", 264; on the joint administration see introduction, pp. 10–11. There is no evidence to the continuation of this administration after Möngke's death. However, the fact that Masᶜūd Beg, the administrator of the areas under Möngke and under Alghu afterwards, remained in charge of the administration shows that mainly the old form of administration was continued. See also Buell, "Tribe," 151–52.

77. Liu, "Talas," 262, 265; Waṣṣāf, 69 / Ayātī, 39.
78. *Yuan shi*, 125/3073; Zhou, 152.
79. Han was one of the most important dynasties in Chinese history (221 BC – 220 AD), and its name became a synonym for the Chinese. In the Yuan Period the term *Han ren*, people of Han, applied principally to the northern Chinese.
80. On the northwest, see *YS*, 63/1567–74. With regard to the dates, an anecdote cited before the mention of the meeting of the northwestern princes is ascribed to the year 1268, which leads to the assumption that the conference was held later. The next date mentioned in the biography after 1268 is 1314. Accordingly, the meeting could have been held at any time between 1268 and 1314. The biography also indicates that Gao, the subject of the biography, who was supposed to deliver Qubilai's response to the princes, died on the way (in Shangjing in Manchuria!), and his son took his place. At the time of assuming his father's function, the son was sixteen years old. This son died, according to his biography, in 1314 at the age of sixty-six (*YS*, 125/3074). He was thus sixteen in 1264, so that the meeting referred to is likely to have been related to Arigh Böke's revolt, although it is strange that an event that occurred in 1268 is mentioned before it. Zhu Feng and Wang Liu solved the geographic and chronological problems by asserting that the claims of the meeting were expressed jointly by Arigh Böke, Qaidu and Nayan (who dwelt in Manchuria – see Chapter II, section 1) (Zhu Feng, 59). Muraoka suggests that this was the assembly of the princes, who rebelled against Qubilai circa 1276/7 (Muraoka, Rin, "Haidu yu Tuersitan: lun Talasi hulitai dahui," in *Papers Contributed to the Symposium for the History of the Yuan Dynasty – Abstracts* (Nanjing, 1986), 191). On this subject see chapter II, section 1. Muraoka does not explain his supposition, but he apparently assumes that the messenger was in fact twenty-six years old, and thus the complaint was addressed in 1274, close to the time of the princes' rebellion. Certainly the years of the princes' rebellion are within the time span from 1268 to 1314. (See also note 81 for further considerations in support of this opinion.) As regards the dates, it may also be noted that the princes' opposition to changing the system of writing probably relates to Qubilai's adoption of the 'Phags-pa alphabet. Qubilai announced this change only in 1269, and the alphabet was in widespread use only in the early 1270s (Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 155 ff, and see Chapter II, section 1, note 79). It is improbable that in early 1269 the princes who assembled in Talas were already aware of the use of this alphabet. Neither Rossabi nor other Western scholars of the Yuan cite this reference from the *Yuan shi*.
81. These considerations strengthen Muraoka's opinion that the princes who rebelled in 1276/7, most of them the sons of Arigh Böke and Möngke, whose original appanages were in Mongolia and the Yenisei region, which were part of the northwest region, and closer to Manchuria than to Talas, lived within the boundary of Qubilai's kingdom. They were better acquainted than Qaidu and his colleagues with the changes in script, in law and in the way of life introduced by Qubilai, and were more influenced by them. Their appanages also

probably diminished in importance when the capital was moved from Mongolia to China. In their opposition they could also see themselves as the successors of Möngke (and Arigh Böke?). (On the frictions between Qubilai and Möngke, see e.g., Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 50–51; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 33–34.)
82. Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 48, 126. See subsequently, e.g., Grousset, 333; Allsen, "Uighurs," 254.
83. Barthold, *Turkestan*, 493; cited by Grousset, 333.
84. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 135.
85. Mīrkhwānd, V, 308.
86. Howorth, I, 175.
87. On the term *quriltai* see Introduction, note 37, also E. Endicott West, *Mongolian Rule in China* (Cambridge, Mass., 1989), 44.
88. J.W. Dardess, "From Mongolian Empire to Yuan Dynasty," *Monumenta Serica*, 30 (1972–73), 133.
89. Waṣṣāf, 69 / Ayātī, 39; Mīrkhwānd, V, 288.
90. Spuler, *Die Goldene Horde*, 53.
91. *Zhi yuan* is the reign title (*nian hao*) for the main part of Qubilai's rule (1264–94).
92. *YS*, 134/3247–48.
93. See e.g., *YS*, 117/2909 and also Chapter II.
94. Chinese writers from the late Qing period situated the war between Möngke Temür and Qaidu before the *quriltai* and related it to Möngke's response to Qubilai's mission. They maintained that Qaidu, who found himself confronted with the Qa'an, the Golden Horde and Baraq, sued for peace with Möngke Temür, who indeed later helped him. (Hong Jun, *Yuan shi yi wen zheng bu liao jiaozhu* (rpt. Hebei, 1990), 212–13; Tu Ji, 74/7B; *XYS*, 110/523). This approach clearly originates in d'Ohsson's description of the events of that period (d'Ohsson, III, 428). D'ohsson speaks of two *quriltais*: first the *quriltai* as recounted by Waṣṣāf, which he says was followed by the war between Qaidu and Möngke Temür, and subsequently the *quriltai* as recounted by Rashīd al-Dīn. Barthold rightfully maintains that it is improbable that these were two separate events, and accordingly there is no justification for situating the war prior to the *quriltai*. (If the war had been waged before the *quriltai*, Baraq would have had no reason to *return* to Bukhara, where he ruled before the battles with Qaidu.)
95. Waṣṣāf, 69 / Ayātī, 39; Rashīd/Jahn, 9 / Rashīd/ ᶜAlīzādah, 113; Mīrkhwānd, V, 289.
96. *Ibid.*
97. Waṣṣāf, 70 / Ayātī, 40; Rashīd/Jahn, 15 / Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 114; Rashīd/Blochet, 173, 192 / Rashīd/Boyle, 142, 150; Mīrkhwānd, V, 293.
98. Rashīd/Jahn/ᶜAlīzādah, *loc.cit.*; Mīrkhwānd, V, 293; Waṣṣāf, 70 / Ayātī, 40. Waṣṣāf notes that apart from Qipchaq and Chabat, Qaidu also sent Mubārak Shāh. This is not apparently the Mubārak Shāh expelled by Baraq, but the grandson of Ögödei's son, Qadan. (On this Mubārak Shāh, see Hambis, *107*, 84).
99. Waṣṣāf, 70.

100. Rashīd/Jahn, 15 / Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 114; Harawī,*Ta'rīkh nāmah-i Harāt* (Calcuta, 1944), 303; Yunīnī,*Dhayl mira't al-zamān* (Hyderabad, 1954–55), II, 435; Ibn al-Dawādārī, *Kanz al-Durar* (Freiburg – Cairo, 1971), VIII, 149. (The latter two base themselves on a common source, perhaps al-Jazārī. See Little, 10–11, 33–36, 53–61.)
101. Tegüder was the Chaghadaid representative in the army that set out with Hülegü to Iran in 1253. Afterwards he remained in the service of the Ilkhans, apparently as commander of a *tümen* (a unit numbering, theoretically, 10,000 men). When Baraq had planned to invade Khurāsān, he contacted Tegüder and urged him to join him. Tegüder then asked Abaqa to return to his appanage in Georgia, intending to join Baraq through Darband, and meanwhile raided Armenian and Georgian villages. Abaqa suspected Tegüder, and when the latter refused his summons sent a sizeable Mongol force accompanied by Armenian and Georgian units against him. Tegüder was defeated, and he capitulated to Abaqa who exiled him. On Tegüder's rebellion, see Rashīd/Jahn, 14–15 / Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 111–13; Waṣṣāf, 72–73 / Ayātī, 42; Mīrkhwānd, V, 291; Harawī, 309; *Shajarat al-Atrāk*, f. 84a-b; Baybars al-Manṣūrī, *Zubdat al-fikra fī ta'rīkh al-hijra* MS British Library. Add. 23325, f. 81A–82B; al-ᶜAynī, *ᶜIqd al-jumān fī ta'rīkh ahl al-zamān*, MS Topkapi Sarayi, Ahmet III 2912, f. 106A; Ibn Furāt, *Ta'rikh al-duwal wa'l-mulūk* (Beirut, 1942),VII, 9; al-Nuwayrī, *Nihāyat al-Arab* (Cairo, 1984), XXVII, 396; Grigor of Akanc' (should be Akner) in R.P. Blake and R.N. Frye (eds. and trs.), "History of the Nation of the Archers," *HJAS*, 12 (1949), 375–77; M. Brosset (tr.), *Histoire de la Georgie* (St. Petersburg, 1895), Part I, 583–85. See also J.A. Boyle, "Dynastic and Political History of the Ilkhans," in *idem* (ed.), *Cambridge History of Iran vol. V*, 357; Biran, 10–12.
102. Rashīd/Jahn, 16 / Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 114–15, and Harawī, 310, maintain that there was not really a battle and a defeat, but that Tübshin fled immediately; see also Mīrkhwānd, V, 294; Waṣṣāf, 71 / Ayātī, 41; Yunīnī, II, 435; Ibn al-Dawādārī, VIII, 149.
103. Rashīd/Jahn, 17–18 / Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 115–19; Mīrkhwānd, V, 299.
104. Rashīd/Jahn, 17 / Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 117; Doerfer, II, 25–27. Rashīd/Blochet, 9 / Rashīd/Boyle, 23, may be referring to the same thing when saying that Qaidu and Abaqa called each other *shighaldash*, which has a similar meaning to *ortogh* (see Doerfer, I, 368).
105. On this important battle and its outgrowths see e.g. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 107–37; Rashīd/Jahn, 9–31 (where the passage dealing with the course of the battle is missing); Rashīd/Blochet, 170–71, 189–93 / Rashīd/Boyle, 140–41, 152–53; Waṣṣāf, 66–80 / Ayātī, 37–46; Harawī, 303–30; Mīrkhwānd, V, 283–312; Ḥamd Allah Mustawfī Qazwīnī,*Ta'rikh-i guzīda* (Leiden, 1913), 577, 582; Muᶜīn al-Dīn Naṭanzī,*Muntaḫab al-tawārīkh-i Muᶜīnī* (ed. J. Aubin, Tehran, 1957), 104–5; *Shajarat al-Atrāk*, f.84a-b, 109b–111b; Brosset, 573–86; Yunīnī, II, 410–11, 434–36; Ibn al-Dawādārī, VIII, 140–41, 148–50; Mufaḍḍal, *al-Nahj al-sadīd* (ed. Blochet, Paris, 1919–28), 178–83; *Zubda*, f. 77A; ᶜAynī, f.100A, 104A; Ibn Kathīr, *al-Bidāya wa'l-Nihāya* (Cairo, 1939), XIII,

255; Ibn al-Fuwaṭī, *al-Ḥawādith al-Jāmiᶜa* (Baghdad, 1932), 357; and see also Boyle, "Ilkhans," 357–61; Biran, *passim*.
106. The name of Baraq's brother is reproduced as Yasa'ur in Boyle's translation of Rashīd al-Dīn (Rashīd/Boyle, 139, 153), but according to the MS. reading it should be Basar (see, e.g., *Shuᶜāb-i panjgāna*, f. 120a). For the name Basar, see Pelliot, *Horde d'Or*, 72. I thank Dr. P. Jackson for the reproduction of Basar's name.
107. Waṣṣāf, 75 / Ayātī, 43; Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 133–35; Mīrkhwānd, V, 308; *Muᶜīzz al-ansāb*, f.36a.
108. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 135–37; Rashīd/Blochet, 192 / Rashīd/Boyle, 153.
109. Waṣṣāf, 76 / Ayātī, 44; Mīrkhwānd, V, 309; *Shajarat al-Atrāk*, f. 111b also attested that Baraq was poisoned by Qaidu.
110. Qarshī, 138.
111. *Ibid.*; Mīrkhwānd, V, 130.
112. Mīrkhwānd, V, 309.
113. Qarshī, 139–40.
114. E.A. Davidovitch, "Denezhnoe khoziaistvo i chastichnoe vosstanovlenie torgvoli v Srednei Azii posle mongol'skogo nashestvia," *Norody Azii i Afriki*, 6 (1970), 66–67. See Chapter IV, section 3.
115. Rashīd/Blochet, 192 / Rashīd/Boyle, 153. Nothing is known of such a grandson of Ögödei. Rashīd might have reffered to Chabat, Güyüg's grandson, who was sent by Qaidu to accompany Baraq. It should, however, be noted that according to Rashīd/Blochet, 230 / Rashīd/Boyle, 175 Chabat fell ill and died of fear after the battle of Herat. This prince is not mentioned in the *Yuan shi*. It should also be noted that the descendants of Köten, son of Ögödei, did not support Qaidu. Rashīd/Blochet, 6 / Rashīd/Boyle, 21.
116. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 138.
117. He was sent to command the Negudarid section of the Qara'unas in the Ghazna region. (Rashīd/Blochet, 230 / Rashīd/Boyle, 175). On the Qara'unas see Chapter II, section 2, note 187.
118. Waṣṣāf, 77 / Ayātī, 45; Mīrkhwānd, V, 311–12.
119. *Ibid.*
120. *Ibid.*
121. J.A. Montgomery (tr.), *The History of Yaballah 3rd* (New York, 1966), 35; E.A.W. Budge (tr.), *The Monks of Khubilai Khan* (London, 1928), 59.
122. *YS*, 12/249, 252; Rashīd/Blochet, 433, 539 / Rashīd/Boyle, 265, 299–300 indicates that they went over to the Qa'an's side. Marco Polo (*Polo*, IV, 459) describes a great battle between Qaidu and the "Qa'an's barons" Chibai and Chiban, identified as the sons of Alghu, Chübei and Qaban, although he dates it 1266. According to Polo, Qaidu scored a crushing victory, but the princes escaped thanks to their good horses. There may be an echo here of Qaidu's response to their actions. See also Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 263, and Chapter II below.
123. Qarshī, 138–39; Mīrkhwānd, V, 310. According to both authors he ruled for one year. According to Rashīd/Blochet, 193 / Rashīd/Boyle, 154, Negübei reigned for three years. This version is reinforced by the *YS*, 8/152 which describes an encounter, dated early 1274, between

Qubilai's forces and the "rebel vassal" (*fan chen*) Niegubai, identified as Negübei. It is possible that Negübei was expelled after his revolt, and that he reigned for one year only, but found his death later, circa 1274. *Muʿīzz al-ansāb*'s dating for Negübei's death (by the hands of Baraq's emissaries!) – 669/1268 is inconceivable with the information of the other souces. However, his testimony that soon after Baraq was defeated by Abaqa Negübei deserted him and went to Turkestan (to join Qaidu?), a fact attested also by Rashīd al-Dīn, might explain why Qaidu chose Negübei to be the new Chaghadaid Khan. (*Muʿīzz al-ansāb*, f.36a; Rashīd/ʿAlīzādah, 133–35).

124. Qarshī, 138–39; Rashīd/Blochet, 193 / Rashīd/Boyle, 154.
125. Qarshī, 139. In accordance with Rashīd al-Dīn (Rashīd/Blochet, 193 / Rashīd/Boyle, 154), according to whom Negübei reigned for three years and Buqa Temür fell ill and died, d'Ohsson and others concluded that Du'a was enthroned in 1274. (See e.g. d'Ohsson, III, 451; Grousset, 316.) Through Rashīd al-Dīn this version was also accepted in late-Qing Chinese studies (e.g., Tu Ji, 74/7B; *XYS*, 110/511).
126. On the combined activity of Qaidu and Du'a see the following chapters.
127. *YS*, 127/3113, 193/4384; Rashīd/Boyle, 266–67. See a detailed discussion of the subject in Chapter II, section 1.
128. Cf. Muraoka, 192. (He was not aware of Qaidu's enthronement in 1271.)
129. See Chapter II, section 2.
130. Waṣṣāf, 67 / Ayātī, 38; Mufaḍḍal, 631–32.
131. On the raids into India see Chapter III, note 36. On the changes in the southern border, see Chapter II, section 1.
132. Rashīd/ʿAlīzādah I, 91. On the White Horde see T. Th. Allsen, "Princes of the Left Hand," *Archivum Eurasiae Medii Aeivi*, 5 (1987), *Passim*. See Chapter II, section 3.
133. Qarshī, 150–51.
134. See e.g. Qāshānī, 33; Waṣṣāf, 451 / Ayātī, 266.
135. Waṣṣāf, 67 / Ayātī, 38; *YS*, 134/3248. See Chapter IV, section 1.
136. Rashīd/Blochet, 9 / Rashīd/Boyle, 23, 27.
137. Waṣṣāf, 66 / Ayātī, 38. Cited in D.O. Morgan, "The Great Yāsā of Chingiz Khan and the law of the Ilkhānate," *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African studies*, 49 (1986), 170.
138. Jackson, "Dissolution", 203; Waṣṣāf/Ayātī, *loc.cit*; ʿUmarī, 2; and see Introduction.
139. Qarshī, 136, and see p. 19.
140. See Chapter II, section 1. Qaidu could explain his supremacy over the Chaghadaids also by Berke's promise to accord him the leadership of the Chaghadaid *ulus* if he subdued Alghu, and Qaidu subdued Alghu's successor, Baraq. However, the Chaghadaid resistance to Qaidu's rule proves that it was the military force and not any ideological claims that brought the Chaghadaids ultimately to accept Qaidu's supremacy.
141. Waṣṣāf, 50–51 / Ayātī, 27–28.
142. Qāshānī, 235–36 (who maintains that Qaidu's claim was justified).

Chapter II: Qaidu and the Mongol *uluses*

1. These events are dealt with in Chapter I.
2. Mīrkhwānd, V, 204.
3. *YS*, 203/4537.
4. *Daoyuan*, 23/389; *YS*, 128/3132.
5. *YS*, 12/265; Tu Ji, 74/8B; Pelliot, *Polo*, II, 795; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 107. On Nomuqan see Tu Ji, 76/8a–9b.
6. *YS*, 6/111. The "north of the desert" is roughly equivalent to the modern state state of Outer Mongolia and borders on the Altai mountains. Zang Lihe (ed.), *Zhongguo gujin di ming da cidian* (Hong Kong, 1982), p. 101.
7. Chen Dezhi, "Yuan Lingbei xingsheng jianzhi kao – zhong", *Yuanshi ji beifang minzu shi yanjiu jikan*, 11 (1987), 5. (Hereafter, Chen II). See there also for details of the steps taken by Qubilai. See also Rashīd/Boyle, 311–12.
8. Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 135–36; Liu, "Relationship," 62; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 108. Rossabi maintains that Nomuqan was appointed also over the force that set out to the south of the Tarim basin, whereas Liu and Dardess think that these were two separate forces.
9. *YS*, 7/136; Liu, "Relationship," 62; Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 135–36. On Hexi see chapter I, note 3.
10. Liu, "Relationship," 62.
11. *YS*, 8/153; Liu, "Relationship," 63; Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 136. On the Mongol post, see e.g., Morgan, *The Mongols*, 103–8, and for further details P. Olbricht, *Das Postwesen in China unter den mongolen Herrschaft im 13. und 14. Jahrhundert*, (Wiesbaden, 1954).
12. *YS*, 8/154; Liu, "Relationship," 63; Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 136.
13. *YS*, 9/177, 132/3210–11, 162/3797; Montgomery, 35–36; Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 64–65, 207, 416, 423.
14. *XYS*, 111/513.
15. *YS*, 6/118.
16. *YS*, 7/130, 7/144, 8/147, 8/157, 8/164, 9/185; Pelliot, *Polo*, II, 795–96; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 108.
17. *YS*, 8/152; Tu Ji, 76/8b; Pelliot, *Polo*, II, 795–96; Liu, "Relationship," 62; Cf. Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 108. On Negübei and the differnt reports on his death, see also Chapter I, notes 123, 125. It is of course possible that the Chinese transcription refers to another rebel.
18. *YS*, 117/2908.
19. *Polo*, II, 460–62; Nuwayrī, XXVII, 354–55. Both authors seem to have confused these with the battles waged in order to suppress the princes' revolt that began in 1276. On this revolt see later in the chapter. Yule's assertion that Polo is referring to a battle waged by Qaidu and Shiregi against Bayan is untenable since Qaidu never fought alongside Shiregi. See below.
20. *YS*, 8/160; Wei Su, *Wei Taipu wen xu ji*, rpt. in Wang Deyi (comp.), *Yuan ren wenji zhen ben cong kan* (Taibei, 1985), VIII, 7/16a; Pelliot,

Polo, I, 128; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 108. On the *paiza* see e.g. *Polo*, I, 14–15. It is unclear when Qaidu had received those tablets in the first place.

21. *YS*, 203/4537; Pelliot, *Polo*, II, 796; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 108. On An Tong, the descendant of the famous Mongol general Muqali, see I. De Rachelwiltz, "Muqali, Bol, Tas and Antung," *POFEH*, 15 (1977), 56–58 and references there. (Rpt. in *idem* et al. (eds.), *In the Service of the Khan* (Wiesbaden, 1993), 3–12.)
22. *YS*, 134/3246–47.
23. *Ibid.*
24. For discussion of the different dates appearing in the *Yuan shi* for the princes' rebellion, see e.g. Tu Ji, 74/8a; Liu, "Relationship," 62.
25. Rashīd/Blochet, 438 / Rashīd/Boyle, 266.
26. *YS*, 203/4537.
27. See Chapter I, notes 80, 81.
28. Rashīd/Blochet, 203, 438, 596–97 / Rashīd/Boyle, 160, 266, 323.
29. *YS*, 12/239, 153/3619, 203/4537. See also *Qinzhai ji*, 3/14b.
30. Waṣṣāf, 67 / Ayātī, 38.
31. *YS*, 9/191, 12/239; Yelu Zhu, *Shuangxi zuiyin ji* (Si qu quan shu ed.), 2/3b; Rashīd/Blochet, 438–39 / Rashīd/Boyle, 267.
32. Tu Ji, 74/7b; Zhou, 158; Pelliot, *Polo*, II, 796.
33. Waṣṣāf, 76, and see Chapter I.
34. Rashīd/Blochet, 439–44 / Rashīd/Boyle, 267–68.
35. On the princes' rebellion, see e.g., Tu Ji 74/8b–10a; Zhou, 155–59; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 113–14. Grousset's indication (Grousset, 292) that Qaidu attacked Qara Qorum is due to a confusion between the princes' action and Qaidu's.
36. *YS*, 153/3619, which says that An Tong served as a minister of Qaidu.
37. *YS*, 128/3129.
38. On the conquest of the Southern Song by Qubilai, see e.g., Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 77–95; Zhou, 111–25.
39. *YS*, 12/249, 252; Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 263. See also Rashīd/Blochet, 176, 433, 539 / Rashīd/Boyle, 144, 265, 300.
40. See Chapter I.
41. Rashīd/Blochet, 444, 606; Rashīd/Boyle, 268, 327; *YS*, 128/3134; Waṣṣāf, 510–11. It is interesting to note that Melik Temür does not appear in the *Yuan shi* as the son of Arigh Böke, and his genealogy is known only from Persian sources. On this and on the different forms of *Yomuqur's name see Hambis, *107*, 94–97.
42. Rashīd/Blochet, 574–80 / Rashīd/Boyle, 313–14.
43. On the senior status of Melik Temür with Qaidu and subsequently with Chapar his son see e.g. *YS*, 23/525, 127/3114; Qāshānī, 34, 37. See also Chapter III.
44. Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 137; Liu, "Relationship," 70.
45. *YS*, 63/1569.
46. Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 137, 140.
47. *YS*, 11/221, 232, 12/240, 244, 246, 248, 251, 63/1569, 165/3883; Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 139; Liu, "Relationship," 70; Allsen, "Uighurs," 255.

48. *YS*, 63/1569; Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 139; Liu, "Relationship," 70.
49. *Ibid.* On the military colonies, garrisons in which the soldiers engaged in agriculture in order to supply their own needs, see *YS*, chapter 100; Hsiao Ch'i-Ch'ing, *The Military Establishment of the Yuan Dynasty* (Cambridge, Mass., 1978), 177, n. 77. For a picturesque description of the *tun tian*, see Waṣṣāf, 67.
50. *YS*, 10/204, 89/2273; Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 137, 140; Liu, "Relationship," 70; Allsen, "Uighurs," 255. On this bureau see D.M. Farquhar, *The Government of China under Mongolian Rule – A Reference Guide* (Stuttgart, 1990), 242.
51. *YS*, 12/253, 63/1569; Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 137,140; Allsen, "Uighurs," 255; Liu, "Relationship," 70. On this bureau see Farquhar, 411–12.
52. *YS*, 11/228, 230; 63/1569. The *duhufu* was the Uighur court of justice. Since its administrative authority was far greater than that of a court, it is thus translated as protectorate; see Farquhar, 245; Allsen, "Uighurs," 256, 275; Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 137, 140.
53. On the subordination of the Uighur society and economy to the Yuan rule see Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 140; Allsen, "Uighurs," 256; Liu, "Relationship," 71
54. *YS*, 10/197, 99/2539, 2541; Hsiao, *Military*, 110, 112; Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 138.
55. *YS*, 14/285; Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 140; Liu, "Relationship," 73; and see map 2.
56. *YS*, 14/295, 299; Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 140; Liu, "Relationship," 73.
57. Liu, "Relationship," 73.
58. *YS*, 15/314; Liu, "Relationship," 73.
59. See Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 137–38 for details of these steps.
60. *Yuan shu*, 43/5a; Tu Ji, 74/17a; *XYS*, 110/525. It is unclear where these appanages were or when Qaidu received them. On the appanages of the princes in the Yuan period, the *Wu si hu* ("the five silk farms") see H.F. Schurmann, *Economic Structure of the Yuan Dynasty* (Cambridge Mass, 1956), 90–91, 94; Endicott-West, *Mongolian Rule*, 88 ff.
61. *YS*, 11/225; Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 142, n. 94; Liu, "Relationship," 72.
62. *YS*, 166/3897; Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 141.
63. Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 141.
64. *YS*, 117/2908.*Yaqudu was the son of *Böchök, Tolui's son by a concubine. (Hambis, *107*, 100–102).
65. *YS*, 122/3001. There and on the Gaochang inscription, from which this passage of the *Yuan shi* is taken (Daoyuan, 24/403), the date suggested for this battle and for the subsequent siege is the twelfth year of the *Zhi yuan* period – 1275. (See the translation of this passage in F.W. Cleaves, "The Sino-Mongolian Inscription of 1362 in memory of Prince Hindu," *HJAS*, 12 (1949), 50.) Moreover, this passage served as testimony to the beginning of a large-scale confrontation between Qaidu and Qubilai in 1275 (Howorth, I, 176; Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 128; *Polo*, II, 460–62), even

though Qaidu took no part in the battle and it is unlikely that Du'a and Buzma were already acting in conjunction with him in 1275.

As early as the Qing period (1644–1911) Chinese historians barely acknowledged a relation between this passage and 1275 (see Wei Yuan, *Yuanshi xinbian* (Rpt. Yangzhou, 1990), 19/10; Tu Ji 74/8a): in 1275 Nomuqan's troops were still in Almaliq and it is difficult to imagine that Du'a's troops could get round them, reach Qara Qocho which is much further east and lay siege to it for six months without any response from Nomuqan's forces. Moreover, the *Yuan shi* shows clearly that the princes who, according to Du'a's boasts to the Uighur governor, did not resist him (Ajiki and *Ayachi), were not stationed in Central Asia in the 1270s. These problems, and the mention of Ajiki's dismissal from the border command in 1285 and his replacement by Bayan (*YS*, 127/3113; F.W. Cleaves, "Biography of Bayan of the Barin in the Yuan Shih," *HJAS*, 19 (1958), 261), moved Tu Ji to assert that on the inscription, and subsequently in the *Yuan shi*, the twenty-second year of the *Zhi Yuan* (1285) was accidentally replaced by the twelfth year (1275).

It can be further noted that in 1275/6 the sons of Baraq and Alghu laid waste to Bukhara (Waṣṣāf, 76). There is a good chance that Du'a and Buzma participated in this raid, and it is difficult to imagine how in the same year they were able to lay siege for six months to Qara Qocho before going on to destroy Bukhara. The *Yuan Shi* mentions that in 1285 a certain Alan called Bodaer occupied Besh Baliq, and when his army was at (the unidentified) Yilihun chahaner he fought with Tuhe (Du'a) and Buzaoma (Buzma) and was successful (YS, 132/3206; Liu, "Relationship," 68). While Bodaer's success can be local or even refer to the Chaghadaids retreat, this reference certainly proves that Du'a and Buzma were in Uighuria in 1285.

Tu Ji's view was approved by Pelliot (*Polo* I, 128), and the former's approach is accepted in Chinese scholarship (see e.g. Han, *Yuan*, 272; Zhou, 155; cf. Liu's embivalent reaction in "Relationship," 66–72). Although Liu dates the siege to 1275, he brings several arguments which reinforce Tu Ji's view, and did not solve the problems pointed by the latter. While the inscriptions indeed imply that there were two attacks on the Uighurs (perhaps one in 1275 and one in 1285 as Liu suggested), the siege was certainly the later incident.

On the other hand, the Japanese scholar Abe Takeo, an authority on the Uighurs, does not accept Tu Ji's qualifications. (He is the source for Allsen ("Uighurs", 254), who used only an English summary of Takeo's study.) Takeo maintains, without references, that the battle between Du'a and Ajiki (the battle in which Du'a boasts that the commanders did not resist him) was waged in 1270. (Abe Takeo, *Xi huihu guo shi de yanjiu* (Xinjiang, 1986), 106.) In addition to the fact that this does not solve the problems raised by Tu Ji, it is difficult to accept in view of the fact that in 1270 Baraq, Du'a's father, was fighting against Abaqa in Herat, and it is improbable that he could allocate any force, and particularly such a large force (estimated at 120,000) to a war on such a distant front. Takeo's determination that

the Uighurs went from Qara Qocho to Hami circa 1280 (and then it is strange that Du'a laid siege to the Uighur ruler in Qara Qocho in 1285, when the latter was supposed to be in Hami) is not as clear cut as Rossabi and Allsen asserted. While Takeo hesitates between 1283 and 1284, it is very possible that the transfer of the Uighur court occurred after 1285/6, perhaps precisely after the siege and Qaidu's and Du'a's attacks, as asserted, e.g., by Han and Zhou. (Abe Takeo, 92–94, 108; Han, *Yuan*, 272; Zhou, 155; Cf. Liu, "Relationship," 68).

66. Rashīd/Blochet, 536–37 / Rashīd/Boyle, 301–2. Rashīd al-Dīn dates this battle "at the end of Qubilai's life," which is closer to 1285 than to 1275; Liu, "Relationship," 70.
67. On this title of the Uighur ruler, which means in Turkish "holy luck," see Allsen, "Uighurs," 246 n. 15.
68. *YS*, 122/3001; Daoyuan, 24/403. In the Uighur text of the Gaochang inscription the siege is mentioned but undated (see Geng Shimin and James Hamilton, "L'inscription Ouigoure de la stèle commémorative des Iduq Qut de Qočo," *Turcica*, 13 (1981), 11–47; Kahar Barat and Liu Yingsheng, "Yiduhu Gaochang wang shixun bei Huigu bei wen zhi jiaokan yu yanjiu," *Yuan shi ji bei fang minzu shi yanjiu jikan*, 8 (1984), 57–106). The siege is also mentioned, oncemore undated, is the incription in the memory of prince Hindu (Cleaves, "1362," 32 (Chinese text), 86 (Mongolian text)).
69. *YS*, 154/3640, 165/3884; Allsen, "Uighurs", 255; Liu, "Relationship," 72; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 112.
70. *YS*, 14/292; Liu, "Relationship," 72.
71. Rashīd/Blochet, 530 / Rashīd/Boyle, 296–97. The event described occurred in the period of the minister Sang Ge, i.e. prior to 1291. On Sang Ge, see e.g. Cai Meibiao, *Zhongguo lishi da cidian, Liao, Xia, Jin, Yuan shi* (Shanghai, 1986), 423; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 192–94; H. Franke, "Sangha", in de Rachewiltz et al. (eds), *In the Service of the Khan* (Wiesbaden, 1993), 558–83. Even if the specific accusation is untrue, the very fact that Qubilai believed it can imply that Qaidu had harmed his revenues.
72. Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 142 dealt with these reasons. He is quoted by Allsen, "Uighurs," 261. On the damage of Qaidu's revolt to the Yuan revenues, see also H. Franke, *Geld und Wirtschaft in China unter der mongolen Herrschaft* (Leipzig, 1949), 277–78.
73. *YS*, 15/316; Liu, "Relationship," 73.
74. *YS*, 100/2560; Liu, "Relationship," 73.
75. *YS*, 15/325; Liu, "Relationship," 73.
76. Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 142.
77. Rashīd/Blochet, 502 / Rashīd/Boyle, 286. (Even though he is in fact referring to Temür's period, and see below.)
78. *YS*, 16/333; Rashīd/Blochet, 576 / Rashīd/Boyle, 314; Allsen, "Uighurs," 255.
79. On Tibet under the Mongols see T.V. Wylie, "The First Mongol Conquest of Tibet Reinterpreted," *HJAS*, 37 (1977), *passim*; H. Franke, "Tibetans in Yuan China," in J.L. Langlois (ed.), *China under Mongol*

Rule (Princeton, 1981), *passim*; L. Petech, "Tibetan Relations with Sung China and with the Mongols," in M. Rossabi (ed.), *China among Equals* (Berkeley, 1983), *passim*; Wang Puren et al. (eds), *Meng-Zang minzu guanxi shilue* (Beijing, 1985); L. Petech, *Central Tibet and the Mongols* (Rome, 1990), *passim*. On Phags Pa and the script called after him, see e.g. Franke, "Tibetans," 305–11; Han, *Encyclopedia*, 5–6; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 40–42, 143–46, 155–60, 221–22; L. Petech, "Phags Pa," in I. de Rachewiltz et al. (eds.), *In the Service of the Khan* (Wiesbaden, 1993), 646–54.

80. Petech, "Relations," 189; idem, *Central Tibet*, 26–31.
81. *Ibid.*; Wylie, 131–32; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 222; Wang Puren et al. maintain that the reference is probably to a prince hostile to Qubilai, such as Qaidu, but does not take a categorical stance (p. 34). I tend to accept this view. I have been unable to identify a Mongol prince with a name similar to that of Rin Chen.
82. Petech, "Relations," 189–90; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 222.
83. Wylie, 132; Petech, "Relations," 180–82. See also Chapter I, note 115.
84. Petech, *Central Tibet*, 21–22, 25.
85. Rashīd/Blochet, 500 / Rashīd/Boyle, 286.
86. Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 223; see the same argument in Zhou, 160–61.
87. Zhou, 154, 160; Chen II, 11–12; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 53.
88. On these changes see *YS*, 14/290, 59/1395, 91/2306; Farquhar, 391–92; Zhou, 161; Yao Dali, "Nayan zhi luan za kao", *Yuan shi ji beifang minzu shi yanjiu jikan*, 7 (1983), 75. Yao also suggests that the revolt had a religious nuance, since Nayan was a Nestorian Christian. However, Qubilai's religious tolerance, exemplified in the fact that he did not impute Nayan's crime to all Christians (Rashīd/Boyle, 286), makes this factor marginal at most.
89. *Polo*, II, 333.
90. Rashīd/Blochet, 533–34; Rashīd/Boyle, 298.
91. *Polo*, *loc. cit.*; see also Rashīd/Blochet/Boyle, *loc.cit.*
92. Hambis, *107*, 92; Zhou, *loc. cit.*; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 222–23.
93. *YS*, 14/298, 299; Rashīd/Blochet *loc.cit.* / Rashīd/Boyle, *loc.cit.*; *Polo*, II, 333–48 where there is also a detailed description of Nayan's execution; Pelliot, *Polo*, II, 789; Yao, 74; Zhou, 161; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 223–24.
94. Rashīd/Blochet, 534–35 / Rashīd/Boyle, 298; Chen II, 13. (Chen assumes that the fate of the *ulus* of Nayan and his allies was analogous to the destroying of the Ögödeid *ulus* by Möngke – see Introduction.)
95. On the battles with the remnants of Nayan's faction, see e.g. *YS*, 15/320, 323, 16/333, 339, 345, 352, 353.
96. *YS*, 15/308, 313, 315, 316, 317, 162/3798, 131/3195. The increase in Qaidu's activities at this time is attested to by the fact that Shao Yuanping and Chen Bangzhan maintain that Qaidu's revolt commenced only after Nayan's revolt. Shao Yuanping, *Yuan shi leibian* (Rpt. Taipei, 1968), 30/10; Chen Bangzhan, *Yuan shi jishi benmo* (Rpt. Beijing, 1979), 2/8 (hereafter *YSJSBM*).
97. Rashīd/ʿAlīzādah, 207. See section II.
98. *YS*, 15/323.

99. *YS*, 128/3134, 169/3974–75; Su Tianjue, *Yuan chao ming chen shilue* (Rpt. Beijing, 1962), 3/8a (hereafter, *ming chen*); *Daoyuan*, 23/390; *XYS*, 110/523.
100. *YS*,15/325, 128/3134; *Ming chen*, 3/8a; *Daoyuan*, 23/391; *Jingxuan ji*, 3/19b; Tu Ji 74/12a; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 224. See also Yao Sui, *Muan ji*, (Sibu Congkan ed.), 12/10a.
101. On Bayan see F.W. Cleaves, "The Biography of Bayan of the Barin in the *Yuan shi*," *HJAS*, 19 (1958), *passim*; Cai, 224; C.C. Hsiao, "Bayan", in I. de Rachewiltz et al., eds. *In the Service of the Khan* (Wiesbaden, 1993), 584–607 and the references there.
102. *YS*, 117/2908–9; Chen II, 15.
103. *YS* 127/3114; Cleaves, "Bayan," 267–68.
104. *YS*, 128/3134; *Ming chen*,3/8a; *Daoyuan*, 23/391; *Jingxuan ji*, 3/19b.
105. *YS* 127/3115; Cleaves, "Bayan," 269–70; *Ming chen*, 2/7a–8b; Yuan Mingshan, *Qinghe ji* (Ouxiang shiling ed., 17–18), 2/12b–13a. (See also Chapter IV, section 1.)
106. *YS*, 128/3134; *Ming chen*, 3/8b–9a; *Daoyuan*, 23/391; *Jingxuan ji*, 19b.
107. *Ibid.*
108. Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 151.
109. The Alans dwelt originally in the area of northern Iran and modern Georgia. In Möngke's time they were invaded by the Mongols and some of them were transferred in 1256 to the east, where they participated in Möngke's campaigns to conquer China. Qubilai employed them during the conquest of the Song, and they continued to be part of the Qa'an's army in the time of Temür. (Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 16, 25; Cai, 389; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 200, 208.)
110. *YS*, 18/389.
111. *Muan ji*, 12/10a.
112. *YS*, 128/3135; *Ming chen*, 3/8b–9a.
113. For Nauruz and his rebellion see section 2.
114. Chen Dezhi, "Yuan lingbei xingsheng jianzhi kao – Xia," *Yuan shi ji beifang minzu shi yanjiu jikan*, 12–13 (1990), 2 (hereafter Chen III). On Qubilai's campaigns towards Japan and southeast Asia, see Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 206–20. For reasons of convenience and in order to avoid confusion with the Ilkhan Öljeitu, I will not use Temür's full name (Temür Öljeitu), but only the name Temür.
115. Rashīd/Blochet, 500 / Rashīd/Boyle, 285. The passage appears in the section devoted to Qubilai, yet the description of the border commanders (see below) and comparison of their biographies in the *Yuan shi* makes it clear that it actually refers to Temür's period.
116. Kammala was Temür's brother of both mother and father (Rashīd/Blochet, 500), and Boyle's translation (Rashīd/Boyle, 298) according to which Kammala was the great uncle of the Qa'an on the father's side is therefore wrong. The location of the battles between Qaidu and the Qa'an in the next few years places in doubt the supposition that Kammala's control reached to Qayaliq (Rashīd/Blochet/Boyle, *loc.cit.*).
117. Rashīd/Blochet, 500–2, 593, 604–5, 609 / Rashīd/Boyle, 285–86, 322, 323–25, 328; Hsiao, *Military*, 58–59; Chen III, 1–2. On the border commanders see Tu Ji, 97/1, 76/5,13, 116/5.

118. *YS*, 18/380, 381; Dardess, "From Mongol Empire", 142; Liu, "Relationship," 75; Liu Yingsheng, "Yuan dai Quxian Talin kao," *Zhongya xuekan*,1 (1984), 243–52.
119. *YS*, 19/412, 413; Liu, "Relationship," 75.
120. Qāshānī, 34; Allsen, "Uighurs," 259; Liu, "Relationship," 76.
121. *YS*, 128/3135; *Ming chen*, 3/9a; *Daoyuan* 23/391; *Jingxuan ji*, 3/19b. From Rashīd al-Dīn (Rashīd/Blochet, 606 ff. / Rashīd/Boyle, 328), it can be understood that these princes returned to the Qa'an only in 1298 or later. The fact that they are mentioned in the *Yuan shi* in 1296 and 1297 makes it clear that they returned earlier. (Liu, "Relationship," 77). On *Durdoka see Rashīd/ʿAlīzādah I, 218–19.
122. Rashīd/Blochet, 607 /Rashīd/Boyle, 328; *Jingxuan ji*, 3/19b; Chen III, 2.
123. *YS*, 19/408, 410, 411, 414, 420, 166/3909.
124. *YS*, 118/2925, 128/3135, 132/3209; Su Tianjue, comp. *Yuan wen lei* (rpt. Shanghai, 1936), 23/13a (hereafter *YWL*); *Daoyuan*, 23/391–92. On Qaidu's general named Balin, who apparently was the head of the forces in the Barin regions, see Pelliot and Hambis, 299–303; Chen III, 3.
125. Rashīd/Blochet, 611–12 / Rashīd/Boyle, 329. There is no mention of this coalition in the *YS*. Chen, III, 3. Badakhshān is a mountanious region in the border of modern Afganistan and Tajikistan, on the upper riches of the Oxus. Its indigenous rulers retained their hold of the region during the Mongol conquests. On Badakhshān see Le Strange, *The Lands of the Eastern Caliphate* (Cambridge, 1953), 435–38.
126. *YS*, 118/2925; *YWL*, 23/13a.
127. Rashīd/Blochet, 605 / Rashīd/Boyle, 326; Mīrkhwānd, V, 215.
128. *Ibid.*; *YS*, *loc.cit*; *YWL*, *loc.cit.*
129. *YS*, 128/3136; *Daoyuan*, 23/392; Rashīd/Blochet, 610 / Rashīd/Boyle, 328; Chen III, 4.
130. *YS*, 118/2925.
131. Rashīd/Blochet, 610 / Rashīd/Boyle, 328.
132. *YS*, 118/2925; *YWL*, 23/13a.
133. Rashīd/Blochet, 609 / Rashīd/Boyle, 328; Mīrkhwānd, V, 215.
134. *YS*, 22/477.
135. *YS*, 119/2950; on Temür's preparations see also *Qinghe ji*, 2/12b; Mīrkhwānd, V, 216.
136. Rashīd/Blochet, 611–12 / Rashīd/Boyle, 329; cf. Liu, "Relationship," 78–79; Allsen, "Princes of the Left Hand," 23–24.
137. *YS*, 119/2950; Mīrkhwānd, V, 216; Waṣṣāf, 450 / Ayātī, 265; Rashīd/Blochet, 612 / Rashīd/Boyle, 329.
138. *XYS*, 110/511; Grousset, 329.
139. *YS*, 22/ 478; *Muan ji*, 26/4a, 4b.
140. *YS*, 22/478, 119/2950; *Qinghe ji*, 2/12b.
141. *YS*, 128/3136; *Daoyuan*, 23/392; Chen III, 5.
142. Mīrkhwānd, V, 216.
143. Waṣṣāf, 450 / Ayātī, 265.
144. *YS*, 22/478; Ma Zuchang, *Ma Shitian wenji*, Rpt. in Wang Deyi, *Yuan ren wen ji zhen ben cong kan* (Taibei, 1985), IV, 14/4a; Rashīd/Blochet, 9 / Rashīd/Boyle, 24.

145. *YS*, 22/478, 128/3136; *Daoyuan*, 23/392; *Ma Shitian*, 14/4a; Rashīd/Boyle, 27. (This passage does not appear in Blochet's edition.) This data on the locality of the battle, and later testimonies on domains held by Du'a and Qaidu's sons, make it impossible to accept Waṣṣāf's assertion (450), that the battle between Qaidu and Qaishan's forces was fought in the Qayaliq region, which is far more to the west.
146. Mīrkhwānd, V, 216; Waṣṣāf, 450/Ayātī, 265; *YS*, 21/451, 131/3185, 139/3335, 138/3321. For estimates of the size of the Yuan garrisons see chapter IV, section 1.
147. *YS*, 22/478; Mīrkhwānd, V, 216.
148. *Ibid.*
149. *Ibid*; Rashīd/Boyle, 27 n. 74. On *Qara Qada and a general discussion of the locality of the battle, see Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 128.
150. *YS*, 119/2951; *Qinghe ji*, 2/12b. See also *Muan ji*, 26/4a.
151. *YS*, 118/2923, 128/3136; *Daoyuan*, 23/392; Mīrkhwānd, V, 216; Rashīd/Boyle, 24, 188, 329.
152. *YS*, 132/3210.
153. *YS*, 22/477. See also Liu, "Relationship," 79; Chen III, 6, both of whom agree that also according to the *Yuan shi* Qaidu was victorious in the battle.
154. Waṣṣāf, 450 / Ayātī, 265; Mīrkhwānd, V, 217. See also Su Tianjue, *Zixi wen gao* (Shiyuan Congshu ed.), 11/9a, where it is said that the pacification office in Mongolia set fire to the granaries upon hearing of Qaidu's approach.
155. Rashīd/Blochet, 9 / Rashīd /Boyle, 24; Rashīd/ʿAlīzādah, 356.
156. *YS*, 21/451. See also *Daoyuan*, 23/392. Also, e.g., d'Ohsson, III, 516; Grousset, 329.
157. On the different dates for Qaidu's death and on the suing for peace, see Chapter III.
158. See Chapter I, p. 23.
159. Waṣṣāf, 50–51 / Ayātī, 27–28.
160. Waṣṣāf, 66 / Ayātī, 37.
161. *YS*, 9/177.
162. *Polo*, II, 463; *YS*, 153/3619.
163. L. Olschki, *Marco Polo's Asia* (Berkeley, 1960), 46; Liu, "Relationship," 76.
164. Rashīd/Blochet, 7–8 / Rashīd/Boyle, 24; *YSJSBM* 2/7; Wei Yuan, 19/6, etc.
165. Het'um, "La Flor des Estoires de la Terre d'Orient," in *Recueil des Historiens des Crusades, Historiens Armeniens*, II, 214; Qarshi, 138; Waṣṣāf, 66.
166. The clearest example of this is *YSJSBM* 2/7–9; cf. Tu Ji 74/17a.
167. Mīrkhwānd, V, 204, 216; Waṣṣāf, 66; Qarshi, 138; *Shajarat al-atrāk*, f.74a. Rashīd al-Dīn does not refer specifically to this issue (perhaps not wanting to admit that Qaidu was victorious).
168. See D. Sinor, "On Mongol Strategy," in Ch'en Chieh-hsien (ed.), *Proceedings of the Fourth East Asian Altaistic Conference* (Tainan, 1975), 240.

169. Shao, 30/10; *Yuan shu*, 42/3B; Waṣṣāf, 66 / Ayātī, 37; Liu Yingsheng, "Yuan chu chaoting yu xibei zhuwang guanxi kaolue," *Zhongguo minzu shi yanjiu*, 1987, 133 (hereafter: Liu, "Princes").
170. *Polo*, II, 457.
171. *YS*, 3/45. See also Chapter I.
172. See T.J. Barfield, *The Perilious Frontier* (Cambridge, Mass., 1989), 219.
173. Zhou, 156.
174. Chen III, 18. See also J.D. Dardess, *Conquerors and Confucians* (New York, 1963), chapter 1.
175. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 557; *YS*, 119/2951.
176. For a discussion of trade with China in the time of Qaidu see Chapter IV, section 3.
177. Rashīd/Blochet, 8 / Rashīd/Boyle, 23.
178. On these events see Chapter I.
179. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 207.
180. *Op.cit.*, 208.
181. On Nauruz, see e.g. Boyle, *The Ilkhans*, 377–78, 382; on Boqa and Arghun Aqa see their entries in the *Encyclopedia Iranica*, both written by P. Jackson.
182. Waṣṣāf, 313 / Ayātī, 190; *Kingshu was the son of Jumqur, Abaqa's brother who was among the princes who joined Boqa's rebellion. (Hambis, *107*, 94; Waṣṣāf, 234 / Ayātī, 140).
183. Waṣṣāf, 313 / Ayātī, 190.
184. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 268.
185. Waṣṣāf, 313 / Ayātī, 190; Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 268.
186. Rashīd/Blochet, 6–11 / Rashīd/Boyle, 25; Qāshānī, 54; Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 126.
187. On the Qara'unas, which had originated as the garrison (*tamma*) troops sent to Qunduz and Baghlān early in the thirteenth century see Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 183–204; J. Aubin, "L'Ethnogenese des Qaraunas," *Turcica*, 1 (1969), *passim*; H. Shimo, "The Qaraunas in the Historical Materials of the Ilkhanate," *Memoirs of the Research Department of the Toyo Bunko*, 35 (1977), *passim*; Jackson, "Dissolution," 242 ff; B. Manz, *The Rise and Rule of Tamerlane* (Cambridge, 1989), 25–27 and 179, n.19, 159–60. I follow Jackson's assertion that the Qara'unas surrendered to the Chaghadaids only in the last 1290s. On Nauruz as the commander of the Qara'unas see Waṣṣāf, 253, 314 / Ayātī, 152, 191; P. Jackson, "Chaghatayid Dynasty," *EIR*, V (1992), 345.
188. Waṣṣāf, 314 / Ayātī, 191; Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 268.
189. On the Ilkhans after Arghun's death, see Boyle, "Ilkhans," 372–379.
190. Waṣṣāf, 314 / Ayātī, 192.
191. *Ibid*; Mīrkhwānd, V, 103.
192. Rashīd/Blochet, 14 / Rashīd/Boyle, 28.
193. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 273; Qāshānī, 18, 54.
194. Harawī, 402; Rashīd/Blochet, 171 / Rashīd/Boyle, 141; Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 302. Harawī maintains that Du'a was able to stay in Māzandarān since Ghazan and his followers were engaged in the conquest of the *Sha'm* (greater syria) and *Rūm* (Anatolia). I have found no evidence that the Ilkhanid troops campaigned in these areas in 1295,

and Harawī might have confused the events of this year with Ghazan's incursion in 1300.
195. Harawī, 407–18.
196. *Op.cit.*, 417–21.
197. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 302–8; B. Spuler, *Die Mongolen in Iran* (Berlin, 1968), 93–96. In 1297, Nauruz found himself again in conflict with Ghazan. Yet, he knew that he could not turn to Qaidu, because of his former betrayal. His brothers, however, found refuge in Du'a's army. Waṣṣāf, 342 / Ayātī, 206–7.
198. Waṣṣāf, 367–71 / Ayātī, 218–21; Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 152; Aubin, 84; Jackson, "Chaghatayid Dynasty," 345.
199. Waṣṣāf, 367 / Ayātī, 218; Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, *loc.cit*; Aubin, *loc.cit.*; Jackson, "Chaghatayid Dynasty," 345.
200. Qāshānī, 193, 201.
201. Waṣṣāf, 370–71 / Ayātī, 220–21.
202. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 356.
203. Qāshānī, 18–19; Rashid/Blochet, 12 / Rashid/Boyle, 25–26; Jackson, "Chaghatayid Dynasty," 345.
204. Qāshānī, 34; cf. Spuler, *Iran*, 107.
205. Qāshānī, 54; Het'um, 214; Jackson, "Chaghatayid Dynasty," 345.
206. Qāshānī, 54; Waṣṣāf 511 / Ayātī, 287–88.
207. Rashīd/Blochet, 12 / Rashīd/Boyle, 26. On Qutulun see introduction, p. 2; also Chapter III.
208. On these incursions see, e.g. Boyle, "Ilkhans," 405; K. Kato, "Kebek and Yasawr – The Establishment of the Chaghatai Khanate," *Memoires of the Research Department of the Toyo Bunko*, 49 (1991), 97–118, especially 106–11. On the persistent nature of Central Asian forays into Khurāsān see ᶜUmarī, 39–40.
209. See Qāshānī, 34, where Du'a declares himself ruler of Turkestan and Khurāsān.
210. Th.T. Allsen, "Changing Forms of Legitimation in Mongol Iran," in G. Seaman and D. Marks (eds.), *Rulers from the Steppe* (Los Angeles, 1991), 232–236; *YS*, 29/643, 645, 646, 651, 661, 662, 30/667, 671, 672, 673, 674, 675, 677, 678, etc.
211. Allsen, "Legitimation," 235.
212. Amitai-Preiss, "PhD," I, 188–89; idem, *Mongols*, 88.
213. Het'um, 215; Jackson, "Chaghatayid Dynasty," 345; R. Amitai, "From Holy War to Reconciliation," (MA thesis, Hebrew University, 1984) 30–31; on the battle of Wādī Khaznadār, see Amitai, 24–32; See also D.O. Morgan, "The Mongols in Syria 1260–1300," in P.W. Edbury (ed), *Crusade and Settlement* (Cardiff, 1985), *passim* for another opinion on the Ilkhans' failure to conquer Syria.
214. Boyle, "Ilkhans," 393. See also Amitai, 37–40.
215. Boyle, "Ilkhans," 399; For the text of the letter in translation, see A. Mostaert and F.W. Cleaves, *Les Lettres de 1289 et 1305 des Ilkhan Arghun et Öljeitu a Philippe le Bel* (Cambridge, Mass., 1962), 55–88. See also Chapter III, pp. 71–72 and further references there.
216. Mufaḍḍal, 631–32; B. Spuler, *Die goldene Horde* (Wiesbaden, 1965), 54. The aforesaid letter is dated 680/1280–81, after the deaths of

Baybars and Möngke Temür, and it is difficult to determine the exact date on which it was written or delivered.

217. Ibn al-Furāt, VIII, 1; Baybars, 124a, 146a.
218. Mufaḍḍal, 631–32; Nuwayrī, XXVII, 376–78.
219. Nuwayrī, XXVII, 354–55. See also Rashid/ᶜAlīzādah I, 150, that mentions slaves (*ghulāms*) that were brought (to Iran?) from the *uluses* of Qaidu and the Qa'an.
220. ᶜUmarī, 41.
221. On these matters see Chapter I and the references there.
222. Rashīd/Blochet, 206, 438, 596–97 / Rashīd/Boyle, 160, 266, 323, and see section 1.
223. Waṣṣāf 67 / Ayātī, 38.
224. Rashīd/Blochet, 439, 441 / Rashīd/Boyle, 267, 268.
225. Spuler, *Die goldene Horde*, 54. On the "peace" between the Golden Horde and the Ilkhans see Chapter I, note 74.
226. On Noqai and on the dual rule in the Golden Horde see, e.g., G. Vernadsky, *The Mongols in Russia* (New Haven, 1953), 174 ff; Spuler, *Die goldene Horde*, 64–76.
227. Rashīd/Blochet, 444 / Rashīd/Boyle, 268.
228. Qarshī, 151–52. See also Chapter IV, section 3.
229. Waṣṣāf, 67/Ayātī, 38; Rashīd/Blochet 206 / Rashīd/Boyle, 160. Rashīd and Waṣṣāf may be referring to the steps taken by the White Horde after returning Nomuqan, about which see below.
230. *YS*, 117/2909.
231. Rashīd/Blochet, 96–97 / Rashīd/Boyle, 102–3.
232. Vernadsky, 188.
233. Rashīd/Blochet, 96–97 / Rashīd/Boyle, 100 (n. 13), 102; Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 127. On the White Horde see Allsen, "Princes of the Left Hand," *passim*.
234. Rashīd/Blochet, 439 / Rashīd/Boyle, 266.
235. Rashīd/Blochet, 444 / Rashīd/Boyle, 268.
236. *YS*, 15/307,320; Allsen, "Princes of the Left Hand," 21.
237. Rashīd/Blochet, 94 / Rashīd/Boyle, 101; Allsen, "Princes of the Left hand," 21. Allsen (*loc. cit.*) claims that in 1293 an ambassador from Qonichi arrived at the Ilkhanid court requesting a formal alliance, but the reference he cites (Rashīd/Jahn, 86) does not confirm this.
238. His name is reproduced that way by Boyle, yet Allsen restores it as Kūpālāk, (Mongolian, Köbelek) on the basis of the *Shuᶜāb-i panjganāh*.(Allsen, "Princes of the Left Hand," 22.)
239. Rashīd/Blochet, 96–98/ Rashīd/Boyle, 102–3.
240. *Ibid.* Rashīd/Blochet, 538–39 / Rashīd/Boyle, 300 mentions that Turkestan was ravaged by Bayan, yet it is hard to determine weather this happened during those fights or after Qaidu's death.
241. Rashīd/Blochet, 611/ Rashīd/Boyle, 329. See section 1.
242. Rashīd/Blochet, 96–98 / Rashīd Boyle, 102–3; Cf. Allsen, "Princes of the Left Hand", 22–23.
243. Many different versions for the name *Yangichar appear in the sources. (For instance, Rashīd/Boyle 103 transcribes it to *Bayanchar, and on page 24 as *Yangichar, although he is obviously referring to the same person.) On *Yangichar and his brother Shāh, see Chapter III and the references there.
244. Rashīd/Blochet, 10, 97–98 / Rashīd/Boyle, 24, 103.
245. Rashīd/Blochet, 96–98/ Rashīd/Boyle, 102–3.
246. Waṣṣāf, 475 notes that among the envoys who came to inform Öljeitu of the Mongol peace there were also envoys of *Qonchi and *Tarsu. This Qonchi is Qonichi, the head of the White Horde before Bayan (Waṣṣāf 454 / Ayātī, 268). I was unable to identify Tarsu,(suspiously looking like Deresü, a place in the border of the Qa'an and the Golden Horde [about which see Rashīd/Boyle, 103, n.25], yet Waṣṣāf is certainly reffering to a prince), but it seems that Waṣṣāf refers here to the contending sides within the Golden Horde, despite the fact that Bayan the son of Qonichi, and not Qonichi himself was then head of the Horde. Cf. Allsen, "Princes of the Left Hand," 24.
247. Mostaert and Cleaves, 56; Vernadsky, 171–74; Boyle, "Ilkhans," 398–99.
248. Waṣṣāf, 516 / Ayātī, 241; Qāshānī, 174.
249. Qāshānī, 174–76. *Shajarat al-atrāk*, f. 102b gives a blurred version of Baba's activities, and claims that after returning to Öljeitu Baba's decedents settled in Jurjān.
250. On the Golden Horde's influence in Transoxania and Central Asia before Qaidu's rise, see, e.g., Qarshī, 136; Waṣṣāf, 50–51; Rashīd/Blochet, 403 ff. / Rashīd/Boyle, 258; Barthold, *Turkestan*, 487; Jackson, "Dissolution," 207. See also the introduction of the book.

Chapter III: The Shift into the Chaghadaids: the Collapse of Qaidu's Kingdom after his death

1. Waṣṣāf, 450 / Ayātī, 265; Mīrkhwānd, V, 218; Qāshānī, 32. According to Rashīd al-Dīn (Rashīd/Blochet, 9, 173, 613 / Rashīd/Boyle, 24, 142, 329) Qaidu died of an injury sustained at the battle with the Qa'an (1301), but elsewhere Rashīd also indicates that Qaidu died of illness. (Rashīd/Boyle, 27, n. 74.)
2. Qarshī, 138.
3. Qāshānī, 32.
4. Mīrkhwānd, V, 218.
5. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 356.
6. Rashīd/Boyle, 27, n. 74.
7. *YS*, 22/478.
8. Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 128. Cf. Liu Yingsheng, "Shiji Wokuotai hanguo monian ji shi buzheng," *Yuan shi ji beifang minzu shi yanjiu jikan*, 10 (1986), 49–50, (hereafter: Liu, "Reconsideration"); Jackson, "Chaghatayid Dynasty," 345; Morgan, *Mongols*, 118. See also notes 76, 80, 87.
9. Qāshānī, 32.
10. Waṣṣāf, 450–51 / Ayātī, 266.
11. Qāshānī, 32.
12. Qarshī, 138.

13. Waṣṣāf, 452 / Ayātī, 266.
14. Waṣṣāf, 451 / Ayātī, 266.
15. Qāshānī, 32–33.
16. Rashīd/Blochet, 9 / Rashīd/Boyle, 24.
17. Liu Yingsheng, "Yuandai Menggu zhuhan de yuehe ji Wokuotai hanguo de miewang," *Xinjiang daxue xuebao*, 1985, 32. (hereafter: Liu, "Peace Agreement").
18. Rashīd/Blochet, 5, 10 / Rashīd/Boyle, 20, 24–25.
19. Qāshānī, 32–33, 34; Rashīd/Blochet, 13 / Rashīd/Boyle, 27. On Qutulun, see introduction, p. 2; Chapter II, section 2.
20. Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 128–29.
21. Qarshī, 139; Barthold, *Four Studies*, *loc.cit.*
22. See e.g., Qāshānī, 37, 38; Waṣṣāf, 517,518 / Ayātī, 291, 292; *YS*, 119/2951.
23. Qāshānī, 33; *YS*, 119/2951; *Qinghe ji*, 2/13a; Liu, "Peace Agreement," 33–34.
24. Qāshānī, 33. The *YS* 21/454 also indicates that after Temür learned of the princes' wish for peace he contacted the prince of the pacification of the west, Ananda. Liu, "Peace Agreement," 34.
25. *YS*, 119/2951; *Qinghe ji*, 2/12b–13a. On *Yochicar see Tu Ji, 28/10 ff; on Ananda see Tu Ji 76/5; see also Chapter II, section 1.
26. Qāshānī, 33–34. Qara Qorum of course did not originally belong to Ögödei's appanage, but to Tolui's; Ögödei, however, built his capital there. Du'a's proposal might have been an attempt to create dispute between Chapar and the Yuan.
27. Waṣṣāf, 453. (Ayātī, 266 indicates only that Chapar agreed to Du'a's wishes.)
28. *YS*, 21/454.
29. *YS*, 21/460.
30. *YS*, 128/3136–37; *Daoyuan*, 23/393; Liu, "Peace Agreement," 35. The date of 1305 is erroneous since the princes surrendered as early as 1303/4 according to both the *Yuan shi* chronicles and Muslim sources. Melik Temür occupied a key position in Chapar's camp, and perhaps this is why he appears in the *Yuan shi* in proximity to the two other princes.
31. Qāshānī, 31
32. Waṣṣāf, 475–77 / Ayātī, 277.
33. The English translation of the letter is given in B. Spuler, *History of the Mongols* (London, 1971), 142–43. For the Mongol source and an annotated French translation see Mostaert and Cleaves, 55–85. See also W. Kotwicz, "Les Mongols, promoteurs de l'idee de paix universelle au debut du XIII [sic] siecle," *Rocznik Orientalistyczny* 16 [1950], 428–34; Boyle, "Ilkhans," 399; Hsiao C.C. "Mid-Yuan politics," in H. Franke and D. Twitchett (eds.), *The Cambridge History of China Vol. 6* (Cambridge, 1994), 501–4.
34. See e.g. Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 128; Rashīd/Blochet, 98, 500, 524–25, 618 / Rashīd/Boyle, 103, 285, 298–99, 329; *YS*, 22/478, 117/2909, 118/2916, 119/2950, 122/3001, 132/3210, 135/3283.
35. See pp. 69–70.
36. On the forays into India see K.S. Lal, *History of the Khaljis, 1290–1320*, 2nd ed. (Calcutta, 1967), Ch. IX; A. Aḥmad, "Mongol Pressure

in alien land", *CAJ*, 6 (1961), 192–93. See also Rashīd/ʿAlīzādah, 152; Waṣṣāf, 312 / Ayātī, 182; Amīr Khusraw Dihlawī, *Khazā'in al-Futūḥ* ed. M. Waḥīd Mīrzā (Calcutta, 1967), 33–41. On the Qara'unas see Chapter II, section 2, note 187. Though Du'a's troops were the main threat to India, Qaidu's forces, probably those under his son Sarban, also took part in the invasions, as attested by Amīr Khusraw (*op.cit.*, 33–36).
37. Mīrkhwānd, V, 216.
38. *YS*, 128/3137; Waṣṣāf, 452–53 / Ayātī, 267.
39. Waṣṣāf, 454 / Ayātī, 268. See note 36.
40. Waṣṣāf, 454/Ayātī, 268.
41. Waṣṣāf, 476 / Ayātī, 277.
42. *YS*, 128/3137; *Daoyuan*, 23/393.
43. Rashīd/Blochet, 96–98 / Rashīd/Boyle, 102–3; Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 129. See also Chapter II, section 3.
44. Liu, "Peace Agreement," 33.
45. Waṣṣāf, 454, 476 / Ayātī 268, 277.
46. See below. *Aqa*, elder brother in Mongolian, is used to denote the eldest and senior prince in an *ulus* or among the sons of the Chinggisid family.
47. See Chapter I and the references there.
48. Waṣṣāf, 454 / Ayātī, 268.
49. This attitude towards the Qa'an is explicitly expressed, some ten years later in another arena, by the adviser of Özbeg, Khan of the Golden Horde (1313–41). This adviser counselled Özbeg not to engage in battle against the Qa'an, since he would achieve more by obeying him (Qāshānī, 146). In this context ʿUmarī's perception of the Qa'an's authority may also be mentioned: according to ʿUmarī (died 1349), the heads of the Mongolian states informed the Qa'an of important events in their kingdoms, but did not require his permission in these matters (ʿUmarī, 26). See also Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 130.
50. On the relations between China and Central Asia, see e.g. Barfield, 59–60. For more details see for instance J.K. Fairbank (ed.), *The Chinese World Order* (Cambridge, Mass., 1968).
51. *YS*, 21/460, 462, 463, 466, 468.
52. Liu, "Peace Agreement," 33.
53. Qāshānī, 33–34. The fact that Du'a presented himself to Chapar as the ruler of Turkestan and Khurāsān although he had received no endorsement for rule of the latter region from the Qa'an, also attests to the opportunistic nature of his subjection to the Qa'an.
54. *YS*, 22/483, 496–97, 53/1383, 91/2307; Liu, "Reconsideration," 57; Chen III, 10–12. See also below.
55. See map 3. For discussion of the original 1330s map and its locations see Bretschneider, Vol. II.
56. Qāshānī, 34–35.
57. Qāshānī, 34.
58. Qāshānī, 36, 54–55; Waṣṣāf, 510–12 / Ayātī, 286–88.
59. Qāshānī, 35–36; Waṣṣāf, 515–16 / Ayātī, 290–91.
60. Qāshānī, 36–37, 209, 214; Waṣṣāf, 516–17, 519 / Ayātī, 290–91, 294. According to Waṣṣāf, Shāh fled to *Yangichar, Qaidu's son who dwelt

on the border with the White Horde and then surrendered to Toqto'a. However both Waṣṣāf (519) and Qāshānī (209, 214) mention Shāh subsequently as active in the ranks of the Chaghadaid army.

61. *YS*, 22/477.
62. Qāshānī, 35 (where he mistakenly indicates that Du'a sent his brother Orus; the fact is, of course, that Chapar sent Orus), 38.
63. Qāshānī, 38.
64. *YS*, 22/477–78; Ma Zuchang, 14/4a; Qāshānī, 38; Waṣṣāf, 517 / Ayātī, 291–92.
65. Waṣṣāf/Ayātī, *loc.cit.*
66. Qāshānī, 38.
67. Qāshānī, *loc. cit.*; Waṣṣāf, 517 / Ayātī, 292.
68. *YS*, 22/478.
69. Qāshānī, *loc.cit.*; Waṣṣāf/Ayātī, *loc.cit.*
70. Qāshānī, 38–39 and it is difficult to accept his words on the size of the reinforcements sent by the Yuan to Du'a; *YS*, 22/478 indicates only that after Melik Temür's surrender Qaishan seized the camp and the family of Chapar, while Chapar fled to Du'a.
71. Qāshānī, 40; Waṣṣāf, 518 / Ayātī, 292; *YS*, 119/2951.
72. *YS*, 118/2909.
73. *YS*, 22/496–97. This number probably also includes a large part of the army. It should be noted that in a *Daoyuan* 23/393 the number of men who surrendered to the Yuan at the time of Chapar's and Melik Temür's surrender is estimated at over a million, but it is difficult to imagine that there were so many people living in Mongolia in the said period. Liu, "Reconsideration," 57; Chen III, 11.
74. *YS*, 91/2307; 58/1383; 22/483.
75. On Lingbei see Chen III, 10–12; Farquhar, 396–97 and see map 3.
76. Qāshānī, 39–40. Qāshānī dates these events to 704 / 1304/5, but since according to his report the events described occurred after Temür Qa'an's death (early 1307) it is clear that his dates are incorrect. Among the heads of Qaidu's followers who were captured mention is also made of *Tudkur Oghul, who is probably identical to *Burkur who is mentioned in a similar context on page 38, but I have been unable to identify him.
77. Qāshānī, 40; Waṣṣāf, 518 / Ayātī, 292. Unlike Qāshānī, Waṣṣāf does not indicate explicitly that *Yangichar was enthroned, but merely notes that Du'a gave him Chapar's private lands. On the enthronement of *Yangichar, see also Liu, "Reconsideration," 54–55.
78. Waṣṣāf, 518/Ayātī, 292; Qāshānī, 39, where the allocation of domains to Tügme appears only as a lure to bring him to Du'a's territory.
79. Waṣṣāf, 513 / Ayātī, 288–89. (Although according to Qāshānī, Kürsebe, the chief prince among Qaidu's followers who fought at this time, had wished to go over to Du'a's house some years previously, and had been killed by the supporters of the house of Qaidu (Qāshānī, 35)).
80. According to Waṣṣāf, 518 / Ayātī, 293 (late 706 a.h.). According to Qāshānī, the news of Du'a's death reached Öljeitu's court in late December 1306. Again, since according to Qāshānī's description Du'a's death clearly occurred after the death of Temür Qa'an (early 1307), his chronology is again mistaken.

81. Waṣṣāf, 518–19 / Ayātī, 293–94 (where Taliqu is called Balighu); Qāshānī, 148; Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 131–32.
82. Waṣṣāf, 518 / Ayātī, 293; Barthold, *Four Studies*, *loc.cit.*
83. Waṣṣāf, 519 / Ayātī, 294; Qāshānī, 148–49. Most surprisingly, Qāshānī estimates the troops of the house of Ögödei at that time at 30 *tümens*, a magnitude that seems exaggerated in relation to other estimates of the army of Qaidu-Chapar, and especially after they lost most of their force. (See Chapter IV, section 1.)
84. Qāshānī, 148–49.
85. *YS*, 119/2951.
86. *YS*, 22/502.
87. Qāshānī, 149. The date that he gives for these events, 1313/712, is inaccurate, since according to the *Yuan shi* Chapar surrendered in 1310.
88. *YS*, 119/2951.
89. Qāshānī, 149. This may have been accompanied by a ceding of Tügme's appanage, since the Emil remained in the possession of the Chaghadaids. See map 3.
90. Qāshānī, 41.
91. *YS*, 23/525.
92. Qāshānī, 149. The conditions of surrender to the Yuan were not modified, it emerges, from the 1260s until the early fourteenth century. They consisted of: 1) a cessation of fighting; 2) establishment of postal stations; 3) attending the court. (See Chapter II, section 1.)
93. *YS*, 23/525.
94. *XYS*, 110/525; Tu Ji, 74/16A-B.
95. *YS*, 25/570; Hambis, *107*, 79–80. See Map 3.
96. Tu Ji, *loc.cit.*; Hambis, *loc.cit.*; and see there also the discussion of the family relationship between Chapar and his two successors.
97. *Ibid.*; on the struggle between Aragibag, the eight-years-old son of the Yuan emperor Yesün Temür (1324–28) and between Tugh Temür, Qaishan's second son, see Dardess, *Conquerors*, 31–52; Hsiao, "Mid-Yuan," 541–45.
98. *YS*, 27/600; Liu, "Reconsideration," 57.
99. *YS*, 27/610; Liu, "Reconsideration," 57. See Map 3.
100. Liu, "Reconsideration," 57.
101. Ratchnevsky, 280. On Temür Lang and his Chaghadaid and Ögödeid puppet rulers see Manz, *passim*.
102. Hsiao, *Military*, 56.
103. On Nayan's rebellion see Chapter III, section 1. On Tegüder's revolt see Chapter I, note 101.
104. See Chapter IV, section 1.

Chapter IV: The Mongol State of Central Asia: Internal Administration under Qaidu

1. *YS*, 134/3248; *Zixi wen gao*, 11/9a; Waṣṣāf, 67 / Ayātī, 37; Polo, II, 457; Het'um, 214; ʿUmarī, 39 (where he speaks of the Transoxanian army in general).

2. Rashīd/Blochet, 8 / Rashīd/Boyle, 24.
3. Rashīd/Karīmī, 410–11.
4. *Ibid.*
5. *Shajarat al-atrāk*, f. 73b–74a.
6. See Chapter I and references there.
7. Abā Ghāzī Bahādur Khan, *Histoire des Mongols et des Tatars*, Tr. Peter I. Desmanisons. (Rpt, Amsterdam and St. Louis, 1970), 42.
8. Mīrkhwānd, V, 201. See Chapter I.
9. Waṣṣāf, 51 / Ayātī, 28; see also Chapter I.
10. On Hoqu see Chapter II, section 1. Princes of the house of Ögödei who played a major role in Qaidu's forces are the descendants of Hoqu, the sons of Ögödei's son Qadan, and Qaidu's sons. Among his supporters are also identified descendants of Ögödei's sons Köchü and Melik. See also Chapter I, note 115 and the genealogical table of the house of Ögödei.
11. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 135–37, and see Chapter I.
12. See Chapter I. Yet several Chaghadaid princes retained allegiance to other Mongol branches. Alghu's sons and Ajiqi (Azhiji) son of Büri are eminent in the Qa'an troops (*YS*, 15/312; Rashīd/Blochet, 174, 423, 526–27 / Rashīd/Boyle, 139, 265, 299–300 and see Chapter II, section 1), and Mubārak Shāh and his sons, for example, retained allegiance to the Ilkhanate (Rashīd/ᶜAlīzāda, 137–38; 152–53. See also the genealogical table of the house of Chaghadai.
13. *YS*, 133/3231; Rashīd al-Dīn indicates that in Ögödei's time several princes of the house of Jochi Qasar served under the command of Chaghadai. They fought with Baraq against Abaqa and subsequently, again according to Rashīd al-Dīn, chose to surrender to Abaqa. Some of them may have decided to join Qaidu. Although the main princes from the house of Jochi Qasar who supported Qaidu, Ebügen son of Toqu son of Jochi Qasar and his sons Baba and Temür, are not among the princes who were sent according to Rashīd al-Dīn (sons of Qaralju and *Jirqdai). (Rashīd/Karimi, I, 206.) On the other hand it is possible that Qutuqu, who fought with Qaidu against Alghu circa 1263 (Rashīd/Blochet, 398 / Rashīd/Boyle, 255), is the son of Qaralju son of Jochi Qasar, who was, as aforesaid, in Central Asia at this time. If this is so, then the cooperation between Qaidu and the house of Jochi Qasar commenced long before the 1280s.
14. See Chapter II, section 1.
15. See Chapter II, section 2.
16. See Chapter II, section 2, note 187.
17. Rashīd/Blochet, 14, 173 / Rashīd/Boyle, 28, 142.
18. See Chapter II, section 1.
19. On Chinggis Khan's organization of the army see, e.g., Ratchnevsky, 92–94; Morgan, *Mongols*, 84–96.
20. Rashīd/Blochet, 96–98 / Rashīd/Boyle, 103; Qāshānī, 34–38. See also Chapter III.
21. Qāshānī, 18; Waṣṣāf, 510 / Ayātī, 294.
22. Qāshānī, 36, 37, 39, 207, 209.
23. Qāshānī, 38. Cf. the dispersing of the forces of Nayan after his surrender to Qubilai; the dispersing of Tegüder's troops after his

surrender to Abaqa, and the dispersing of Chapar's army after his surrender to the Qa'an. On the consequences that the failure to disperse the Chaghadai forces had on Qaidu's kingdom, see Chapter III.

24. Waṣṣāf, 510 / Ayātī, 286. For further evidence of the separation see Waṣṣāf, 314.
25. Waṣṣāf, 510 / Ayātī, 286. In this context see also Waṣṣāf, 51 / Ayātī 27, where it is indicated that the descendant of Chinggis who will serve as the Qa'an (*ulūgh qūl*) will see eight of the *hizarahs* in Bukhara as his *Khāṣṣa* (apparently the army directly subject to him).
26. Rashīd/Blochet, 5, 330 / Rashīd/Boyle, 20, 175; Mīrkhwānd V, 293. Cf.ᶜUmarī, 99.
27. See e.g., the list of *Amīrs* in Waṣṣāf, 511 / Ayātī, 286; *YS*, 15/313, 166/3897, 128/3134; *Daoyuan*, 23/390–91; *Muan ji*, 13/10a (where an unidentified prince Elinjing appears).
28. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah I, 343–45 and see Chapter I.
29. *Shajarat al-atrāk*, f. 74a; Rashīd/Blochet, 579 / Rashīd/Boyle, 314. On the Arulad see Pelliot and Hambis, 342–59.
30. Rashīd/Blochet, 580 / Rashīd/Boyle, 27 note 74, 315. On Qorulas/Qorulat see Pelliot and Hambis, 59–60.
31. *Shuᶜāb-i panjgāna*, f. 127a; *Muᶜīzz al-ansāb*, f.44a; On the Olqunu'ud see Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah I, 402–4.
32. Rashīd/Blochet, 576, 579 / Rashīd/Boyle, 314; Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah I, 139.
33. Rashīd/Blochet, 575, 577, 578, 580 / Rashīd/Boyle, 314, 315. On the Süldüs see Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah I, 441–54.
34. Rashīd/Blochet, 575, 578 / Rashīd/Boyle, 314. On them see Pelliot and Hambis, 73–74.
35. Rashīd/Blochet, 578 / Rashīd/Boyle, 314. On the Merkid see Pelliot and Hambis, 227–28.
36. Rashīd/Blochet, 580 / Rashīd/Boyle, 315. On this tribe see Pelliot and Hambis, 81–82.
37. Rashīd/Blochet, 576 (where they are called the *Qanqiyat*) / Rashīd/Boyle, 314. On them see Pelliot and Hambis, 159–60, 393–95.
38. Rashīd/Blochet, 579 / Rashīd/Boyle, 314.
39. On this subject see, e.g., Hsiao, *Military*, 12–17; D.O. Morgan, "The Mongol Armies in Persia," *Der Islam* 56 (1979), 89; Amitai-Preiss, *Mongols*, 26, 40, 183, 189, 195, 196, 199, 225, 227.
40. Rashīd al-Dīn, e.g., mentions a *tümen* made up of residents of Uighuria, Kashgar, and Kocha that accompanied Hülegü on his campaign into Iran (Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah I, 154; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 203–4) and a *hizārah* of the Bekrin that was also sent to Iran in Hülegü's time (Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah I, 353; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 211).
41. *YS*, 132/3209; Pelliot and Hambis, 300.
42. Rashīd/Blochet, 580 / Rashīd/Boyle, 315.
43. Harawī, 409.
44. Qarshī, 139; O.D. Chekhovitz, "Bukhariskii Vakf XIII veka," *Narody Azii i Afriki*, 3 (1967), 75, 80–82.
45. Qarshī, 140; Chekhovitz, 75; and see Chapter I.

46. See e.g., J. Paul, *The state and the Military: the Sāmānid case* (papers of Inner Asia no. 26, Bloomington, 1994), *passim.*
47. *YS*, 128/3135.
48. According to Moule's and Pelliot's translation of Marco Polo's acount of Nayan's revolt it can be concluded that both Nayan and Qaidu had foot soldiers. (Moule and Pelliot, I, 174, cited in D. Sinor, "Horse and Pasture in Inner Asian History", *Oriens Extremus*, 19 (1972), 172). Cf., however, Yule's translation (*Polo*, II, 335–37), which does not mention this fact at all. In the two translations, Polo clearly emphasized the horsemen as the major component of the princes' army.
49. See e.g. Qāshānī, 18, 36, 37, 38, 39; Waṣṣāf, 510, 511, 512, 514, 515, 516, 517; Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 136, 137.
50. On the number of men in a *tümen* see e.g. Morgan, "Army," 89–91; Hsiao, *Military*, 170–71, note 27; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 193; Cf. J.M. Smith, "Mongol Manpower and Persian Population", *Journal of Economic and Social History of the Orient*, 18 (1975), 271–78.
51. Waṣṣāf, 516. On the definition of *amīr qūl* among the Ilkhans, see ᶜUmarī, 93.
52. Qāshānī, 36.
53. Rashīd/Blochet, 575–80 / Rashīd/Boyle, 313–15.
54. Het'um, 214.
55. Polo, II, 457–58.
56. *YS*, 119/2951.
57. E.g., Wei Yuan, 19/6.
58. Waṣṣāf, 517. (Ayātī, 292 translates this into a hundred thousand men; on this see note 50.)
59. Qāshānī, 37, 148. The highest estimate appears precisely at a time when the situation of Chapar and his allies was likely to have been at the lowest. See also Chapter III.
60. *YS*, 122/3001; Cleaves, "1362", 59, 80.
61. Harawī, 402.
62. *Ibid.* Qaidu's son, Sarban, for example, accompanied Du'a.
63. Qarshī, 138.
64. Although Smith does so. For the Chaghadaid army, Smith chose to accept Het'um's estimate of Chapar's army, which is the highest estimate. The division that he suggested, between seventeen Mongol *tümens* and twenty-three *tümens* of auxiliary forces is unfounded as he himself admitted (Smith, "Manpower," 290). As shown by Morgan, the *tümens* that Smith cited from Temür's time are administrative units and not military units. (Morgan, "Army," 89–90; see also section 3 of this chapter.)
65. Het'um, 215.
66. Polo, II, 335; Smith, "Manpower", 289.
67. ᶜUmarī, 29, 39, 68.
68. Mīrkhwānd, V, 217; *Zixi wen gao*, 11/10b, cited in Chen III, 7.
69. See note 1.
70. Rashīd/Blochet, 600 / Rashīd/Boyle, 324; Hsiao, *Military*, 59.
71. Cleaves, "1362," 89; Hsiao, *Military*, 59.

72. Rashīd/Blochet, 500–2 / Rashīd/Boyle, 285–86; Hsiao, *Military*, 59.
73. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 107; Mīrkhwānd, V, 284–85; *YS*, 166/3897. Although in both cases the garrison in question was stationed in Khotan (in 1266 and 1281).
74. *YS*, chapter 99; Hsiao, *Military*, 109–15.
75. *Muan ji*, 24/15a; Hsiao, *Military*, 59. On North West see *YS*, 63/1567–74. Cf. Hsiao, *ibid.* On Yao Sui see Cai, 385–86.
76. See e.g., Waṣṣāf, 67–68, 74, 450, 511, 516; Mīrkhwānd, 306; *Polo*, II, 460.
77. See e.g., Waṣṣāf, 67–68, 313, 450, 510, 511, 515, 516; *Polo*, *loc.cit.*
78. See e.g., Waṣṣāf, 67–68, 450, 511; *Polo*, *loc.cit.*
79. See e.g., Mīrkhwānd, V, 290; Waṣṣāf, 71, 511, 516; *Polo*, *loc.cit.*
80. See e.g., Waṣṣāf, 514.
81. See e.g., Waṣṣāf, 450, 511.
82. Mīrkhwānd, V, 249, 306; Waṣṣāf, 369, 450, 516.
83. *Polo*, II, 460.
84. Harawī, 406.
85. Harawī, 328; Waṣṣāf, 518.
86. R.W. Reid, "Mongolian Weaponry in *The Secret History of the Mongols*," *Mongolian Studies*, 15 (1992), 88–89; Dawson, 33–35. On Mongolian arms, see also H.D. Martin, "The Mongol Army," *JRAS*, 1943, 50–53.
87. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 110; Waṣṣāf, 69 / Ayātī, 39; see Chapter I.
88. Waṣṣāf, 68 / Ayātī, 39.
89. Harawī, 314–15; Waṣṣāf, 68 / Ayātī, 38. Plunder of arms is not described in the sources as part of Qaidu or Du'a's invasions.
90. Het'um, 214.
91. *Zixi wen gao*, 11/10b, cited in Chen III, 7.
92. *YS*, 90/2284–88; *XYS*, Chapter 61; Farquhar, 275–82.
93. *Ming chen*, 3/ 8b–9a, 22a; *Muan ji*, 26/4a; *Daoyuan*, 23/392; *Qinghe ji*, 2/12b.
94. Biran, 22; Cf. A.P. Martinez, "Some Notes on the Ilkhanid Army", *Archivum Eurasiae Medii Aeivi*, 6 (1988), 155.
95. *YS*, 8/166 and see Chapter II, section 1.
96. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 107.
97. *YS*, 154/3640.
98. *Zixi wen gao*, 11/10b, cited in Chen III, 7.
99. *Polo*, II, 461.
100. Mīrkhwānd, V, 217.
101. Waṣṣāf, 370 / Ayātī, 220–21.
102. Harawī, 406; Cf. Dawson, 37.
103. See Chapter II, section 2.
104. *Ibid.*
105. See Chapter II, section 1.
106. *Ibid.*
107. *YS*, 128/3135, 132/3209.
108. *YS*, 128/3136; *Daoyuan*, 23/391–92.
109. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah I, 343–45. See also Chapter I.
110. Rashīd/Blochet, 500–2 / Rashīd/Boyle, 285.

111. *YS*, 134/3248.
112. *YS*, 117/2908. On *Yaqudu see Chapter II, section 1, note 64.
113. *YS*, 127/3114; Cleaves, "Bayan," 268.
114. On this subject, see Chapter II, section 2.
115. Rashīd/Jahn, 20–21 / Rashīd/ʿAlīzādah, 124–26; Mīrkhwānd V, 303–5; Harawī, 320–23; Boyle, "Ilkhans", 539; Biran, 18–19. On Ilkhanid (and Mamluk) spies see Amitai-Preiss, "PhD," I, 158–79; *idem*, *Mongols*, chapter 6, esp. 152ff.
116. Mīrkhwānd, V, 217.
117. Harawī, 402, 409. It is possible that these descriptions are only a rhetorical means employed by the author, in order to accentuate Du'a's failure.
118. On this subject see, e.g. Fletcher, "Mongols", 40–43.
119. Sinor, "Horse and Pasture," 178; S. Jagchid and C.R. Bawden, "Some Notes on the Horse Policy of the Yuan Dynasty," *CAJ*, 10 (1965), 246; also, e.g., *YS*, 15/324, 325, 154/3640, 118/2925; Cleaves, "Bayan", 269.
120. Qāshānī, 18; Rashīd/Blochet, 11–12 / Rashīd/Boyle, 25–26; *YS*, 15/316, 118/2925; *YWL*, 23/13b.
121. Qāshānī, 18; Rashīd/Blochet, 11–12 / Rashīd/Boyle, 25–26.
122. Waṣṣāf, 450; Polo, II, 338; and see also Rashīd/Blochet, 22 / Rashīd/Boyle, 37.
123. See e.g., Polo, II, 461; Harawī, 411.
124. Waṣṣāf, 315 / Ayātī, 192; *YS*, 22/477–78. During raids Qaidu might have tried using night attacks, not always succesfully. See Rashīd/Blochet, 526–27 / Rashīd/Boyle, 299; *Muan ji*, 26/4a.
125. Waṣṣāf, 510,516 / Ayātī, 206.
126. See e.g. *YS*, 127/3114; Cleaves, "Bayan", 267; Waṣṣāf, 450.
127. *YS*, 122/3001; Cleaves, "1362", 50, 89; Harawī, 402–418.
128. Harawī, 402–18. This description is similar to Carpini's descriptions of the Mongol siege (Dawson, 37) and to the description of Hülegü's siege of Baghdad (Waṣṣāf, 25–45 / Ayātī, 13–25). On the Mongol siege, see also Martin, 65–68.
129. See note 127.
130. Grousset, 339. Although his withdrawal can be attributed also to the Delhi Sultan's strong garrison force.
131. *YS*, 134/3248.
132. *YS*, 169/3974.
133. *Zixi wen gao*, 11/9a.
134. H. Masaki, "On the Xuanwei Inscription and the Xuanweijun Fortress," in *Papers Contributed to the Symposium for the History of the Yuan Dynasty* (Nanjing, 1986), 73. This is the only evidence that the Han army encamped in a fortress.
135. On the garrisons see Hsiao, "Military," 57–60; Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 149–59; Chapter II, section 1.
136. See e.g. *YS*, 117/2908, 118/2916, 135/3282.
137. *YS*, 128/3134.
138. De Rachelewiltz, "Turks," 289; Hsiao, *Military*, 46–47, 99–110.
139. *YS*, 128/3133–37; *Daoyuan*, 23/390–92. See also Chapter II, section 1.

140. Cleaves, "Bayan," 268.
141. *Op.cit.*, 268–69, 283; Dardess, 158–59, and compare there. See also *Ming chen* , 2/5a-b; *Qinghe ji*, 2/12b–13a.
142. On the horses and their role in the relationship between China and Central Asia, see, e.g., H.G. Creel, "The Role of the Horse in Chinese History," *The American Historical Review*, 70 (1965), 647–72; Sinor, "Horse and Pasture," *Passim*.
143. *YS*, 7/130, 144, 8/147, 152, 157, 164, 9/185. See also Chapter II, section 1.
144. *YS*, 162/3798.
145. Jagchid, 256–63.
146. See Chapter II, section 2.
147. Het'um, 214; *YS*, 119/2951; Jagchid, 253.
148. Mīrkhwānd, V, 219; cf. Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 199.
149. Rashīd/Boyle, 27, n.74; Mīrkhwānd, V, 219. Qaidu also ordered that Baraq be buried on a high mountain, even though Baraq converted to Islam before his death (Rashīd/ʿAlīzādah, 137). On the nomadic burial practices, see e.g. J.A. Boyle, "The 13th Century Mongols' Conception of the After life: The Evidence of their Funerary Practices," *Mongolian Studies*, 1 (1974), 5–14.
150. Harawī, 413. There may be a connection between these "incantations" and "the science of stone and rain" in which *Marghāvil, Baraq's general at the battle of Herat, was versed (Waṣṣāf, 68 / Ayātī, 38). On Shamanist ceremonies for changing the weather among the Mongols and the Turks, see J.A. Boyle, "Turkish and Mongol Shamanism in the Middle Ages," *Folklore*, 83 (1972), 184–91.
151. Harawī, 410, 415. (Referring to Du'a's invasion to Kusūi and Fushang in 1295); Dilhawī, 33–36 (Referring to Qaidu's forces that invaded Delhi in 1298).
152. Waṣṣāf, 517 / Ayātī, 293; Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 131–32. The fact that he was not a descendant of Du'a also contributed to Taliqu's fall. See Chapter III.
153. ʿUmarī, 38, 41; and see also Qazwīnī, 575. Under Tarmashirin, as well, the rise of Islam did not go without opposition. On this subject see e.g. Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 134–35; Jackson, "Chaghatayid Dynasty," 346.
154. Rashīd/Blochet, 14 / Rashīd/Boyle, 28; Waṣṣāf, 314 / Ayātī, 192; Mīrkhwānd, V, 103.
155. Rashīd/Blochet, 11, 14 / Rashīd/Boyle, 25, 28; *Shuʿāb-i panjgāna*, f. 126b.
156. Rashīd/Blochet, 11,14 / Rashīd/Boyle, 25,28; Hambis, *107*, 83; in *Shuʿāb-i panjgāna*, f. 127a, ʿUmar appeared as Qaidu's grandson.
157. Qarshī, 139; Waṣṣāf, 68 / Ayātī, 38; Barthold, *Turkestan*, 491.
158. Rashīd/ʿAlīzādah, 133; Waṣṣāf, 75 / Ayātī, 43; Mīrkhwānd, V, 308.
159. Thus, e.g., Baraq's son was called Mu'min, and his cousin Aḥmad. Another Aḥmad of the house of Chaghadai was the son of Mochi Yebe, Chaghadai's oldest son. This Aḥmad's sons were ʿAmr and Mubārak Shāh, and thus they were also Muslims. In another branch of the family, one ʿAbdallah appears (Rashīd/Blochet, 159, 163, 167 / Rashīd/Boyle, 136, 138, 139; Hambis, *107*, 63–64.) Yasa'ur, son of Ürük Temür was

also a Muslim (Qāshānī, 213). On Yasa'ur's Islam see Kato, 100, 110. See also the Chaghadaid genealogical table.

160. Qāshānī, 37.
161. See Chapter I, note 2.
162. Qarshī, 141 ff.; *Polo*, I, 164, 169, 173, 179, 180; Dawson, 81.
163. *Polo*, I, 169, 173; Dawson, 137; Pelliot, *Polo* I, 164, 207, 209. Further testimonies of the presence of Christians in Central Asia can be found, e.g., in Rashīd/Boyle, 298 (in Alghu's territories), and in the descriptions by Rubruck and Carpini of Güyüg's and Möngke's courts.
164. *Polo*, I, 173.
165. *Polo*, I, 184; *Rubruck*, 137–39.
166. Mīrkhwānd, V, 218.
167. Qarshī, 138; Barthold, *Turks*, 197–98.
168. Qarshī, 138, who gives the impression that Chapar almost converted to Islam.
169. Qarshī, 139.
170. Chekhovitz, 78.
171. *Op. cit.*, 81–82.
172. Qarshī,141–50. See Chapter IV, section 3 for discussion on the *ṣadrs*.
173. See e.g., Qarshī, 141–42.
174. This contrasts with Chaghadai's harsh treatment of the Muslims. On this subject, see e.g., Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 115–17.
175. On Qubilai's anti-Islamic policy see Rashīd/Blochet, 521–24 / Rashīd/Boyle, 293–94; Mīrkhwānd, V, 210–11; M. Rossabi, "The Muslims in the Early Yuan Dynasty," in J.D. Langlois (ed.), *China under Mongol Rule* (Princeton, 1981), 291–94; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 199–201. I do not accept Rossabi's notion that this policy was partly motivated by the fact that Qaidu was a Muslim – he was not – nor do I agree with Ratchnevsky that it was motivated by the bitter rivalry between the Ilkhans and the Mamluks and the latter's alliance with the Golden Horde (Ratchnevsky, 209). Moreover, Prof. Cleaves recent translation of Qubilai's edict prohibiting the slaughtering of animals by slitting the throat (i.e. in the Muslim fashion) proves that Qubilai banned Muslim ritual slaughter for economic and *not* for religious or political reasons (F.W. Cleaves, "The Rescript of Qubilai Prohibiting the Slaughtering of animals by Slitting the Throat," *Journal of Turkish Studies*, 16 (1992), 72–73). Qubilai was finally persuaded to change his policy (by Central Asian merchants!) also due to economic reasons.
176. Qarshī, who wrote almost a decade after the conversion of the Mongols in Persia to Islam, still praises Qaidu's attitude towards Islam. Ürük Temür's son Küresbe, who according to Rashīd al-Dīn was suspected of Islamic tendencies, was not killed by Qaidu and continued to play a role in the struggles between the houses of Chaghadai and of Ögödei after Qaidu's death. (See, e.g., Waṣṣāf, 518 / Ayātī, 283; Qāshānī, 35–38).
177. On the religious tolerance of the Mongols see, e.g., ʿUmarī, 82; Ratchnevsky, 197–98; Morgan, *Mongols*, 41.
178. Dawson, 137–39; *Rubruck*, 148 ff.

179. Montgomery, 35; Grousset, 303; Cf. Budge, 49, 139.
180. For the text of the letter, see K.E. Lupprian, *Die Beziehungen der Päpste zu islamichen und mongolichen Herrschern im 13. Jahrhundert anhand ihres Briefwechsels* (Vatican City, 1981), 349; similar letters were sent to Qubilai and Arghun. It seems that the letter to Qaidu did not reach its destination. Dawson, XXIX–XXXI; Grousset, 410.
181. Rashīd/ʿAlīzādah, 109–10.
182. Rashīd/ʿAlīzādah, 131, 135 / Rashīd/Jahn, 15; Mīrkhwānd, V, 293; Waṣṣāf, 451 / Ayātī, 266.
183. *YS*, 153/3619; *Qinzhai ji*, 3/14a-b. On Shi Tianlin see Chapter I, note 21; on An Tong see Chapter II, section 1, note 21.
184. *YS*, 153/3619.
185. See e.g., Endicott-West, *Mongolian Rule*, 126–28; Vernadsky, 210.
186. Thus, e.g., Sarban son of Qaidu dwelt in the upper Oxus and the cities of Bughlān and Balkh also belonged to his appanage (Qāshānī, 36); the Chaghadaid Yasa'ur the Great dwelt near Khojand and Farghāna (Qāshānī, 36); Baba, one of the descendants of Jochi Qasar, had an estate near Samarkand, as did Kuch Temür, grandson of Yebe, son of Ögödei. (Qāshānī, 35, 37).
187. As determined by the *quriltai* of 1269, see note 1.
188. Qāshānī, 39.
189. On salaries for the Mongol troops in China see Hsiao, *Military*, 25–27; on the *Iqṭāʿ* in Persia in Ghazan's time see Morgan, "Army," 92–95.
190. ʿUmarī, 40. On the *Jasagh* (*Yasa*) see D. Ayalon, "The Great Yasa of Chingiz Khan – A Reexamination," *Studia Islamica*, pt. a: 33 (1971), 97–140; pt.b: 34 (1971), 151–80; pt.c1: 36 (1972), 113–52; pt.c2: 38 (1973), 107–56; Morgan, "Yasa," *passim*; Morgan, *Mongols*, 96–99; Cf. Ratchnevsky, 186–95; I. de Rachewiltz, "Some Reflections on Chinggis Qan's *Jasagh*," *East Asian History*, 6 (1993), 91–104.
191. One specific reference, though not very instructive, is given by Naṭanzī. He states that Baraq was strict about observation of the *Jasagh*, and cites specific example to prove it. At the height of winter in the coldest place in Turan, Baraq's foot froze and he fell from his horse. Baraq hit the frozen foot eighty times because it violated the *Jasagh* (that it is forbidden to dismount). Naṭanzī, 105.
192. Waṣṣāf, 66/ Ayātī, 37.
193. Rashīd/Blochet, 7–8 / Rashīd/Boyle, 22. This approach does not differ from the usual Mongol custom, according to which each ruler presents himself as defender of the *Jasagh* and his rivals as its opponents. See Ayalon, pt. B, 152.
194. Waṣṣāf, 452–53 / Ayātī, 267. Emphasis on Chinggis's legacy of unity appears on other occasions in the sources, but not in relation to the *Jasagh* (see e.g., *YS*, 128/3135; Rashīd/ʿAlīzādah, 109–10).
195. Waṣṣāf, 451 / Ayātī, 265–66. In this context see also Ratchnevsky, 189, according to whom every Mongol *ulus* had its own *Jasagh*.
196. Pelliot, *Polo*, I, 127–28; Qarshī, 138; Rashīd/ʿAlīzādah, 109; Montgomery, 35; Budge, 59.
197. Qāshānī, 37 (*sira ordu*); Waṣṣāf, 517 / Ayātī, 291 (*sir ordu*).

198. Dawson, 5, 62, 81–82 (*sira ordu*); see also Rashīd/Blochet, 49 / Rashīd/Boyle, 63; Juwaynī/Qazwīnī, I, 194 / Juwaynī/Boyle, I, 239; and Doerfer, II, 34–35 for a comprehensive discussion of this term.
199. Waṣṣāf, 452 / Ayātī, 266 (where it is translated as "capital").
200. Rashīd/Boyle, 27, note 74.
201. Qarshī, 138.
202. See Chapter III.
203. Barthold (*Four Studies*, I, 131), citing Qāshānī, 54, mentions the palace of Yuldūz (= star), where Du'a's son Könchek (Chaghadaid Khan, 1307–8) resided. This palace never appears in other texts, and it is possible that it serves only as a metaphor for the approaching end of Könchek (who set out for the palace of the star). My thanks go to Prof. Zand for this interpretation. A permanent capital in Central Asia dates from the time of the Chaghadaid Khan Kebek (1310–1326). It was Qarshī (Nekhsheb) in Transoxania. (Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 51–52, 133–34).
204. Qarshī, 138, 143–44; Mīrkhwānd, V, 218.
205. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 108; Waṣṣāf, 68–69, 78 / Ayātī, 38–39; Mīrkhwānd, V, 285–86.
206. On Alghu's rebellion see Chapter I, note 29.
207. On Masᶜūd Beg, see, e.g., *XYS*, 133/571–72; Barthold, *Turkestan*, 464, 472; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 102–3; J.A. Boyle, "Masᶜūd Beg," *EI2*, VI (1991), pp. 782–83; Th.T. Allsen, "Masᶜūd Beg," in I. de Rachewiltz et al. (eds), *In the Service of the Khan* (Wiesbaden, 1993), 128–30.
208. Qarshī, 139–40.
209. Qarshī, 139, although he may tend to be biased in favor of Masᶜūd and his sons.
210. On this institution see particularly Endicott-West, *Mongol Rule*, *passim* and also Morgan, *Mongols*, 108–11; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 72–73; on the importance of the population censuses for the Mongol administration, see e.g., Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 116–42.
211. Waṣṣāf 68 / Ayātī, 38. On the rulers of Bukhara see Chapter I, note 64. Daifu does not occur in the sources after Baraq's period, and he may have died in the raid on Bukhara carried out by Abaqa or by Alghu's sons.
212. Harawi, 314–16. The translation of the terms *umanā'* and *ᶜummāl* is according to the Glossary in A.K.S. Lambton, *Continuity and Change in Medieval Persia* (Cambridge, 1988).
213. Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 48; *idem*, *Turks*, 195; Qarshī, 140 (Bozar Khan and his sons in Almaliq, it is unclear whether the dynasty continued after 1274), 147 (king of Khotan), 148 (king of Khojand), 149 (king of Farghāna), 150 (king of Shāsh, apparently before Qaidu's time).
214. Waṣṣāf, 80.
215. Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 49.
216. O. Pritsak, "Āl-i Burhān," *Der Islam*, 30 (1952), *passim*; C.E. Bosworth, "Ṣadr in Transoxania," *EI2*, VIII (1994), 748–49; *idem*, "Āl-e Borhān," *EIr*, I (1985), 753–54; for the definition of the term see

R. Dozi, *Supplément aux dictionaires Arabes* (3rd. ed, Paris, 1967), I, 822.
217. Chekhovitz, 75, 82. For other mentions of *ṣadrs* in the thirteenth to fourteenth centuries see Pritsak, 82–83; Bosworth, "Ṣadr," 754.
218. Qarshī, 142–50.
219. Qarshī, 143.
220. Chekhovitz, 75–76; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 210.
221. Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 52; Davidovitch, 66–67; Chekhovitz, *ibid.*
222. Morgan, "Army," 90; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 194.
223. Chekhovitz, 75–76.
224. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 109–10.
225. Qarshī, 139; Waṣṣāf, 80.
226. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 135.
227. J.M. Smith, "Mongol and Nomadic Taxation," *HJAS*, 30 (1970), 54–55; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 153–54.
228. Rashīd/Blochet, 530 / Rashīd/Boyle, 296. On *tenge* see Doerfer, II, 587–92.
229. The "daily salary" Du'a allocated to Chapar, four heads of sheep, which were probably supplied from the taxes, reinforces this supposition. Qāshānī, 39.
230. On Mongol taxation, see e.g., H.F. Schurmann, "Mongolian Tributary Practices of the 13th Century," *HJAS*, 19 (1956), 304–89; Smith, "Taxation," *passim*; Petrushevski, 529–37; Morgan, *Mongols*, 100–3; Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism*, 144–88.
231. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 135. On emissaries as part of the Golden Horde's administrative system, see Ch.J. Halperin, *Russia and the Golden Horde* (Bloomington, 1987), 40.
232. A.M. Khazanov, *Nomads and the Outside World* (Cambridge, 1984), 224–25, according to whom this was also the system in the Golden Horde, where separation was likewise maintained between the nomads and the sedentary population.
233. Rashīd/Blochet, 502 / Rashīd/Boyle, 286. See also Chapter II, section 1.
234. As attested, e.g., by the actions of Malik Nāṣir al-Dīn Kashgarī, and see Chapter II, section 1.
235. Davidovitch, 63, 64. Kanjak is one of the four small towns near Talas, which make up the urban complex called by the general name Talas. See ᶜUmarī, 38; Liu, "Chaghadai Ulus," 49–50.
236. Davidovitch, 65–66.
237. *Op. cit.*, 46, 66.
238. *Op. cit.*, 66; Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 48. This was not a rare phenomenon in Central Asia. Under the Qara-Khitai, for example, the vassals were permitted to mint coins only with the name of the local ruler, without any evidence of the subjection to Qara-Khitai (K.A. Wittfogel and Feng Chia-cheng, *History of Chinese Society: Liao* (Philadelphia, 1949), 667); Davidovitch indicates that Central Asian coins from Möngke's time did not always bear his name, unlike coins from this period minted in Iran (Davidovitch, 61).
239. Davidovitch, 65. Davidovitch's study is based principally on hoards of coins found in Tajikstan in the 1950s and on the inventories of coins in

the former Soviet Union. Most of the few coins from Qaidu's time mentioned in Zambaur also appear in Russian catalogues that were unavailable to me. (E. von Zambaur, *Die Münzprägungen des Islam* (Wiesbaden, 1968), 53, 110, 171, 202.)

240. Davidovitch, 67; Barthold, *Four Studies* I, 48. It is possible that already from Kebek's period the names of the rulers also appear on the coins. On Chaghadaid coins from the mid-fourteenth century the name of the ruler appears followed by the title *Khāqān al-ᶜĀdil*. See e.g., S. Lane-poole (ed.), *Catalogue of Oriental Coins in the British Museum* (London, 1881), VI, 200–2.
241. Davidovitch, 66.
242. Waṣṣāf, 78, 80 / Ayātī, 46; Qarshī, 139.
243. *YS*, 119/2951; Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 557.
244. Barthold, *Turks*, 193; Rashīd/Boyle, 300.
245. See note 205.
246. Rashīd/ᶜAlīzādah, 110.
247. Rashīd/Jahn, 13–14; Waṣṣāf, 71 / Ayātī, 40. See also Chapter I.
248. See Chapter I, notes 119–21.
249. Mīrkhwānd, V, 308.
250. Waṣṣāf, 68 / Ayātī, 46.
251. Chekhovitz, 75–82.
252. See e.g., Qāshānī, 35.
253. Waṣṣāf, 517, 519 / Ayātī, 294.
254. ᶜUmarī, 123; Cf. Liu, "Peace Agreement," 33.
255. Qarshī, 144, 147–49. Developed agriculture is attested to in Transoxania and Turkestan also in the accounts of *Nuzhat al-Qulūb*, but it is difficult to establish to what period these descriptions apply.(Ḥamd Allah al-Mustawfī Qazwīnī, *Nuzhat al-Qulūb* (ed. G. LeStrange, London, 1915), e.g. 238.) See also *Polo*, I, 169, 173–74; it is possible that Qarshī's account of the devastation of Kashgar relates to the years in which he dwelt there (from 1273 onwards), and he may perhaps be referring to the time of Hoqu's rebellion (ca. 1275, see Chapter II). The non-dated attack of the *Jete* (groups of nomads that left their tribes and became bandits) on Kashgar (Qarshī, 146) may also have some connection to this. On this subject, see Barthold, *Turks*, 195.
256. *Polo*, I, 169, 173, 174.
257. Waṣṣāf, 454 / Ayātī, 268. See also Chapter III.
258. Dawson, 226–29.
259. E. Endicott-West, "Merchant Associations in Yuan China: The Ortogh," *Asia Major*, n.s. 2 (1989), 147; Schurmann, *Economic Structure*, 222–30.
260. On this subject, see e.g., T.Th. Allsen, "Mongolian Princes and their Merchant Partners 1200–1260," *Asia Major*, n.s. 2 (1989), 83–126.
261. Spuler, *Die goldene Horde*, 406; Amitai-Preiss, "PhD," I, 287–92; *idem*, *Mongols*, 207–11.
262. Davidovitch, 66.
263. Chekhovitz, 75–82.
264. Waṣṣāf, 519 / Ayātī, 294.
265. Qarshī, 147, 149, 151.

266. See e.g., Mīrkhwānd, V, 211, 213; Rashīd/Blochet 542 / Rashīd/Boyle, 301. On the role of the Central Asians under Qubilai, see e.g., Rossabi, "Muslims," 273–74; Ch'en Yuan, *Western and Central Asians in China under the Mongols* (Berkeley and LA, 1966), *passim*.
267. Mīrkhwānd, V, 218.
268. On this route see Ren Rongkang, "Yuanchu de Yuan-Yi lianmeng yu Zhongya jiaotong," *Zhongya xuekan*, 1 (1984), 184–93.
269. ᶜUmarī, 30.
270. Spuler, *Die Goldene Horde*, 406.
271. On this trade, see e.g., Ayalon, pt. C1, 126–27; Amitai-Preiss, "PhD," I, 103–4; *idem*, *Mongols*, 85–86.
272. See Chapter II, section 3.
273. Naṭanzī, 106; *Nuzhat al-Qulūb*, 239; LeStrange, 465; Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 106. Qaidu's sympathetic attitude toward trade is also demonstrated by the bustling markets described by Rubruck in Qayaliq under Qaidu's rule (1253).
274. Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 23, 50; *Turks*, 192. Unlike the building of Andijān, the restoration of Tirmidh, that took place sometime between its destruction by the Mongols in the 1220s and the visit of Ibn Baṭṭūṭa (d. 1377) in the first half of the fourteenth century, is nowhere connected specifically to Qaidu or Du'a. (Barthold, *Four Studies*, II, 4–7; cf. Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 106.)
275. Dardess, "From Mongol Empire," 133–34. Davidovitch also seems to ascribe all the credit to Masᶜūd Beg; Qaidu is not mentioned at all in her article.
276. On this subject see Petrushevski, 483–93.
277. Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 179 ff.
278. On these elements in Qubilai's rule, see Endicott-West, *Mongolian Rule*, 105–28.
279. See e.g., Rossabi, *Khubilai*, 125–26 on Qubilai's court.
280. Khazanov, *Nomads*, 213.
281. See e.g., Wittfogel and Feng, 660; Fletcher, "Mongols," 40–41.
282. Barthold, *Four Studies*, I, 51.

Conclusion

1. Rashīd/Boyle, 27.

Bibliography

A. Sources

Arabic Sources

al-ᶜAynī, Badr al-Dīn Maḥmūd b. ᶜAlī. *ᶜIqd al-jumān fī ta'rīkh ahl al-zamān*. MS. Topkapi Sarayi, Ahmet III 2912.

Baybars al-Manṣūrī al-Dawādār, Rukn al-Dīn. *Zubdat al-fikra fī ta'rīkh al-hijra*. MS British Library Add. 23325.

Ibn al-Dawādārī, Abū Bakr b. ᶜAbdallah. *Kanz al-durar wa-jāmiᶜ al-ghurar*. Vol. XIII: *al-Durra al-Kanziyya fī akhbār al-dawla al-turkiyya* (*Der Bericht über die frühen Mamluken*). Ed. U. Haarmann ("Quellen zur Geschichte des islamichens Ägypten," vol. Ih-Ii). Freiburg-Cairo, 1971. Vol. IX: *al-Durr al-fākhir fī sīrat al-malik al-nāṣir* (*Der Bericht über den Sultan al-Malik an-Nāṣir Muḥammad ibn Qalā'ūn*). Ed. H.R. Roemer. Freiburg-Cairo, 1960.

Ibn al-Furāt, Nāṣir al-Dīn. *Ta'rīkh al-duwal wa'l-mulūk*. Vol. VII. Ed. Q. Zurayk. Beirut, 1942.

Ibn al-Fuwaṭī, Kamāl al-Dīn Abū 'l-Faḍl. *al-Ḥawādith al-jāmiᶜa wa'l- tajārib al-nāfiᶜa fī al-mi'a al-sābiᶜa*. Ed. M. Jawād. Baghdad, 1351/1932–3.

Ibn Kathīr, Abū al-Fidā'. *al-Bidāya wa'l-nihāya fi'l-ta'rīkh*. Vol. XIII. Cairo, 1358/1939.

Mufaḍḍal Ibn Abī al-Faḍā'il. *al-Nahj al-sadīd wa'l-durr al-farīd fīmā baᶜda ibn al-ᶜamīd (Histoire des sultans mamlouks)*. Ed. and tr. E. Blochet. (Patrologia orientalis, vols. XII, XIV, XX). Paris, 1919–28.

al-Nuwayrī, Shihāb al-Dīn Aḥmad b. ᶜAbd al-Wahhāb. *Nihāyat al-arab fī funūn al-adab*. Vol. XXVII. Ed. F. ᶜAshūr. Cairo, 1984.

Qarshī, Jamāl. *Mulkhakāt al-ṣurāḥ* in Bartold, V V. *Turkestan v epokhu 'mongol'skogo nashestiva*. St. Petersburg, 1900. Vol.I (texts), 128–52.

al-ᶜUmarī, Aḥmad b. Yaḥya ibn Faḍl Allah. *Das Mongolische Weltreich: al-ᶜUmarī's Darstellung der mongolischen Reiche in seinem Werk Masālik al-abṣār fī mamālik al-amṣār*. Ed and tr. K. Lech. (Asiatische Forschungen, vol. XIV). Wiesbaden, 1968.

al-Yūnīnī, Quṭb al-Dīn Mūsa b. Muḥammad. *Dhayl mira't al-zamān fī ta'rīkh al-aᶜyān*. Hyderabad, 1954–61. 4 vols.

Persian Sources

Anon. *Shajarat al-atrāk*. MS Harvard University Pers 6F.

Anon. *Muᶜīzz al-ansāb*. MS Biblioteque Nationale A.F. Pers 67.

Ayātī, ᶜAbd Āl Muḥammad. *Taḥrīr-i ta'rīkh-i Waṣṣāf*. Tehran, 1346/1967.

Dihlawī, Amīr Khusraw. *Khazā'in al-futūḥ*. Ed. M. Waḥīd Mīrzā. Calcutta, 1953.

Harawī, Sayf b. Muḥammad b. Yaᶜqūb. *Ta'rīkh nāmah-i Harāt*. Ed. M.Z. al-Ṣidqī. Calcuta, 1944.

Juwaynī, ᶜAlā' al-Dīn ᶜAṭā'-malik. *Ta'rīkh-i jahān gushā*. Ed. M.M. Qazwīnī. London, 1912–37. 3 vols.

——. *The History of World Conqueror*. Tr. J. A. Boyle. Manchester, 1958. 2 vols.

Mīrkhwānd, Muḥammad b. khwāndshāh. *Ta'rīkh-i rawḍat al-ṣafā*. Vol. V. Tehran, 1339/1961.

Naṭanzī, Muᶜīn al-Dīn. *Muntakhab al-Tawārīkh-i Muᶜīnī (Anonym d'Iskandar)*. Ed. J. Aubin. Tehran, 1957.

Qāshānī, ᶜAbd al-Qāsim ᶜAbdallah b. ᶜAlī. *Ta'rīkh-i Ūljaytū*. Ed. M. Hambly. Tehran, 1969.

Qazwīnī, Ḥamd Allah b. Abī Bakr Mustawfī. *Ta'rīkh-i guzīda*. Ed. E.G. Browne. Leiden, 1913.

Qazwīnī, Ḥamd Allah b. Abī Bakr Mustawfī. *Nuzhat al-qulūb*. Ed. Guy Le Strange. London, 1915.

Rashīd al-Dīn. *Jāmiᶜ al-tawārīkh*. Ed. A. A. ᶜAlīzādah. Vol I, Moscow, 1953. Vol. III, Baku, 1957.

——. *Jāmiᶜ al-tawārīkh* Vol. 2. Ed. Blochet. London and Leiden, 1911.

——. *Jāmiᶜ al-tawārīkh*. Ed. B. Karīmī. 2 vols. Tehran, 1338/1959.

——. *Ta'rīkh-i mubārak Ghāzānī*. Ed. K. Jahn. s'Gavenhage, 1957.

——. *The Succesors of Genghis Khan*. Tr. J. A. Boyle. New York and London, 1971.

——. *Shuᶜāb-i panjgāna*. MS Topkapi Sarayi Ahmet III, No. 2937.

Waṣṣāf, ᶜAbdallah b. Faḍl Allah. *Ta'rīkh-i Waṣṣāf (Tajziyat al-amṣār wa-tazjiyat al-aᶜṣār)*. Rpt. Tehran, 1338 S/1959–60 of ed. Bombay, 1269 H/1852–3. [See also Ayātī above].

Chinese Sources

Chen, Bangzhan 陳邦瞻. *Yuan shi jishi benmo* 元史紀事本末 [The Official History of the Yuan Retold in Topical Format]. Rpt. Beijing, 1979.

Hong, Jun 洪鈞. *Yuan shi yiwen zhengbu jiaozhu* 元史譯文證補校注 [An Annotated Edition of Translated supplements to the Yuan History]. Ed. Tian Hu 田虎. Rpt. Hebei, 1990.

Ke, Shaomin 柯劭忞. *Xin Yuan shi* 新元史 (The New Official History of the Yuan]. Beijing, 1979.

Ma, Zuchang 馬祖常. *Ma Shitian wenji* 馬石田文集 [Ma Zuchang's Literary Collection]. Rpt. in Wang Deyi 王德毅, ed. *Yuan ren wenji zhen ben cong kan* 元人文集珍本叢刊. Taibei, 1985. IV, 509–681.

Peng, Daya and Su, Ting 彭大雅，徐霆. *Heida shilue* 黑韃事略 [Summary of the Records on the Tatars]. Congshu Jicheng ed. Rpt., Changsha, 1937.

Shao, Yuanping 劭遠平. *Yuanshi leibian* 元史類編 [Compilations of Yuan History]. Rpt. Taibei, 1968.

Song, Lian 宋濂. *Yuan shi* 元史 [The Official History of the Yuan]. Rpt. Beijing, 1976.

Su, Tianjue 蘇天爵. *Yuan chao ming chen shilue* 元朝名臣事略 [A Review of the Illustrious Ministers of the Yuan dynasty]. Rpt. Beijing, 1962.

Su, Tianjue 蘇天爵, comp. *Yuan wen lei* 元文類 [Yuan Literary Genres]. Guoxue jiben congshu ed. Shanghai, 1936.

Su, Tianjue 蘇天爵. *Zixi wen gao* 滋溪文稿 [Su Tianjue's Literary Collection]. Shiyuan Congshu ed.

Tu, Ji 屠寄. *Mengwuer shiji* 蒙古兒史記 [Historical Records of the Mongols]. Rpt. Taibei, 1962.

Wei, Su 危素. *Wei Taipu wen xu ji* 危太僕文續集. [Wei Su's Literary Collection] Rpt. in Wang Deyi 王德毅 *Yuan ren wenji zhen ben cong kan* 元人文集珍本叢刊. Taibei, 1985. VII, 486–604.

Wei, Yuan 魏源. *Yuanshi xinbian* 元史新編 [New Compilations on Yuan History]. Rpt. Yangzhou, 1990.

Xiao, Ju 蕭剞. *Qinzhai ji* 勤齋集 [Xiao Ju's Literary Collection]. Si qu quan shu ed.

Yan, Fu 閻復. *Jingxuan ji* 靜軒集 [Yan Fu's Literary Collection] Rpt. in Wang Deyi 王德毅, ed. *Yuan ren wenji zhen ben cong kan* 元人文集珍本叢刊. Taipei, 1985. II, 541–70.

Yao, Sui 姚燧. *Muan ji* 牧庵集 [Yao Sui's Literary Collection]. Sibu Congkan ed.

Yelu, Zhu 耶律鑄. *Shuangxi zuiyin ji* 雙溪醉隱集 [Yelu Zhu's Literary Collection]. Si ku quan shu ed.

Yu, Ji 虞集. *Daoyuan xue gu lu* 道園學古錄 [Yu Ji's Literary Collection]. Wanyou wenku ed. Shanghai, 1937.

Yuan, Mingshan 元明善. *Qinghe ji* 清河集 [Yuan Mingshan's Literary Collection]. Ouxiang Shiling ed.

Zeng, Lian 曾廉. *Yuan shu* 元書 [The Book of the Yuan Dynasty]. Shandong University's copy. undated.

Miscellaneous Sources

Abū Ghāzī, Bahādur Khan. *Histoire des Mongols et des Tatars*. Tr. Peter I. Desmanisons. Rpt. Amsterdam and St. Louis, 1970.

Brosset, M., tr. *Histoire de la Georgie*. Part 1. St. Petersburg, 1895.

Budge, E. A. W., tr. *The Monks of Khubilai Khan*. London, 1928.

Dawson, Christofer, ed. *The Mongol Mission*. New York, 1955.

Grigor of Akanc' (should be Akner), in R. P. Blake and R. N. Frye, eds. and trs. "History of the Nation of the Archers," *HJAS*, 12 (1949), 269–399.

Het'um (Hayton/Hetoum). "La Flor des estories de la Terre d'Orient," in *Recueil des Historiens des Crusades*. Historiens Armeniens, II, 111–253.

Marco Polo. *The Book of Sir Marco Polo*. Tr. and ed. Henry Yule. London, 1903. 2 vols.

Marco Polo. *The Description of the World*. Trs. and eds. Antoine C. Moule and Paul Pelliot. London, 1935–38. 2 vols.

Montgomery, J. A., tr. *The History of Yaballah 3rd.* New York, 1966.
De Rachewiltz, Igor, tr. "The Secret History of the Mongols," *POFEH*, 4 (1971), 115–63; 5 (1972), 149–75; 10 (1974), 55–82; 13 (1976), 41–75; 16 (1977), 27–65; 18 (1978), 43–80; 21 (1980), 17–57; 23 (1981), 111–46; 26 (1982), 39–84; 30 (1984), 81–160; 31 (1985), 21–93; 33 (1986), 129–37.
William of Rubruck, in Peter Jackson, tr. and ed., and David O. Morgan, ed. *The Mission of Friar William of Rubruck.* London, 1990.

B. Modern Studies

Western Studies

Ahmad, Aziz. "Mongol Pressure in Alien Land," *CAJ*, 6 (1961), 182–93.
Allsen, Thomas, T. "Changing Forms of Legitimation in Mongol Iran," in Gary Seamen and Daniel Marks, eds. *Rulers from the Steppe.* Los Angeles, 1991. 223–41.
Allsen, Thomas, T. "Masᶜūd Beg," in I. de Rachewiltz et al., eds. *In the Service of the Khan. Eminent Personalities of the Early Mongol-Yuan Period.* Wiesbaden, 1993. 128–30.
Allsen, Thomas, T. *Mongol Imperialism: The Policies of the Grand Qan Möngke in China, Russia and the Islamic Lands.* Berkeley, 1987.
Allsen, Thomas, T. "The Princes of the Left Hand: An Introduction to the History of the *ulus* of Orda in the Thirteenth and Early Fourteenth Centuries," *Archivum Eurasiae Medii Aeivi*, 5 (1987), 5–39.
Allsen, Thomas T. "The Rise of the Mongolian Empire and Mongolian rule in North China," in Denis Twitchett and Herbert Franke, eds. *The Cambridge History of China Vol. 6: Alien Regimes and Border States 907–1368.* Cambridge, 1994. 321–413.
Allsen, Thomas, T. "The Yuan Dynasty and the Uighurs in Turfan in the 13th Century," in Morris Rossabi, ed. *China Among Equals.* Berkeley, 1983. 243–80.
Amitai, Reuven. "From Holy War to Reconciliation: The Relations between the Mongols of Iran and the Mamluks during the Reign of al-Nāṣir Muḥammad b. Qalawūn." [Hebrew] MA thesis, Hebrew University of Jerusalem, 1984.
Amitai-Preiss, Reuven. "The Mamluk-Ilkhanid War: Its Origin and Conduct up to the Second Battle of Ḥoms (680/1281)." PhD dissertation. Hebrew University of Jerusalem, 1990.
Amitai-Preiss, Reuven. *Mongols and Mamluks: The Mamluk-Īlkhānid War, 1260–1281.* Cambridge, 1995.
Aubin, Jean. "L'ethnogenese des Qara'unas," *Turcica*, 1 (1969), 65–94.
Ayalon, David. "The Great Yasa of Chingiz Khan – a Reexamination," *Studia Islamica*, Pt.A: 33 (1971), 97–140; pt.B: 34 (1971), 151–80; pt.C1: 36 (1972), 113–58; pt.C2: 38 (1973), 107–56. Rpt. in Idem. *Outsiders in the Lands of Islam: Mamluks, Mongols and Eunuchs.* London, 1988. Art. IVa-d.
Barfield, Thomas J. *The Perilous Frontier: Nomadic Empires and China.* Cambridge Mass., 1989.

Barthold, V. V. [J.A. Boyle]. "Burāḳ Khān," *EI2*, I (1965), 1311.
Barthold, V. V. *Four Studies on the History of Central Asia.* Rpt. Leiden, 1956–62. 3 vols.
Barthold, V. V. *Zwölf Vorlesungen über die Geschichte der Türken Mittelasiens.* Berlin, 1935.
Barthold, V. V. *Turkestan down to the Mongol Invasion.* 4th edition. London, 1977.
Berg, C.C. "Djawharī," *EI2*, II (1965), 495–97.
Beveridge, A. [B.F. Manz]. "Mīrkhwānd," *EI2*, VII (1990), 126–27.
Biran, Michal. "The Battle of Herat." [Hebrew] Seminar Paper, The Hebrew University of Jerusalem, 1990.
Bosworth, C. E. "Ṣadr in Transoxania," *EI2*, VIII (1994), 748–49.
Bosworth, C. E. "Āl-e Borhan," *EIr*, I (1985), 753–54.
Boyle, John Andrew. "Dynastic and Political History of the Ilkhans," in idem, ed. *The Cambridge History of Iran. vol. V.* Cambridge, 1968. 303–421.
Boyle, John Andrew. "Masᶜūd Beg," *EI2*, VI (1990), 782–83.
Boyle, John Andrew. "The Thirteenth-Century Mongols' Conception of the After Life: The Evidence of their Funeary Practices," *Mongolian Studies*, 1 (1974), 5–14. Rpt. in Idem. *The Mongol World Empire.* London, 1977. Art. XXIII.
Boyle, John Andrew. "Turkish and Mongol Shamanism in the Middle Ages," *Folklore*, 83 (1972), 177–93. Rpt. in Idem. *The Mongol World Empire.* London, 1977. Art. XXII.
Bretschneider, Emili V. *Medieval Researches from Eastern Asiatic Sources.* London, 1910. 2 vols.
Browne, Eduard G. *A Literary History of Persia.* Cambridge, 1951–53. 4 vols.
Buell, Paul D. "Sino-Khitan Administration in Mongol Bukhara," *Journal of Asian History*, 13 (1979), 121–51.
Buell, Paul D. "Tribe, *Qan* and *Ulus* in Early Mongol China: Some Prolegomena to Yüan History." Phd dissertation, The University of Washington, 1977.
Chekhovitz, O.D. "Bukhariskii Vakf XIII Veka," *Norody Azii i Afriki*, 3 (1967), 74–82.
Ch'en, Yüan. *Western and Central Asian in China under the Mongols: Their Transformation into Chinese.* Tr. Ch'ien Hsing-hai and L.Carrington Goodrich. Monumenta Serica Monographs no. 15. Berkeley and Los Angeles, 1966.
Clark, Larry V. "The Theme of Revenge in the *Secret History of the Mongols*," in idem and P.A. Draghi, eds. *Aspects of Altaic Civilization II.* Bloomington, 1978. 33–57.
Cleaves, Francis Woodman. "The Sino-Mongolian Inscription of 1362 in Memory of Prince Hindu," *HJAS*, 12 (1949), 1–133.
Cleaves, Francis Woodman. "The Biography of Bayan of the Barin in the Yuan Shih," *HJAS*, 19 (1958), 185–301.
Cleaves, Francis Woodman. "The Rescript of Qubilai Prohibiting the Slaughtering of Animals by Slitting the Throat," *Journal of Turkish Studies*, 16 (1992), 67–89.
Creel, H.G. "The Role of the Horse in Chinese History," *The American Historical Review*, 70 (1965), 647–72.

Dardess, John W. *Conquerors and Confucians: Aspects of Political Change in Late Yuan China*. New York, 1963.
Dardess, John W. "From Mongol Empire to Yuan Dynasty: Changing Forms of Imperial Rule in Mongolia and Central Asia," *Monumenta Serica*, 30 (1972–73), 117–65.
Davidovitch, E. A. "Denezhnoe khoziaistvo i chastichnoe vosstanovlenie torgvoli v Srednei Azii posle mongol'skogo nashestiva," *Norody Azii i Afriki*, 6 (1970), 57–67.
Doerfer, F. *Türkische und mongolische Elemente in Neupersischen*. Wiesbaden, 1963–75. 4 vols.
D'Ohsson, Constantine M. *Histoire des Mongols depuis Tchinguis Khan jusqu'a Timour Bey*. The Hague, 1834–35. 4 vols.
Dozy, R. *Supplément aux dictionnaires Arabes*. 3rd edition. Paris, 1967. 2 vols.
Dunnel, Ruth. "The Hsi Hsia," in Denis Twitchett and Herbert Franke, eds. *The Cambridge History of China Vol. 6: Alien Regimes and Border States 907–1368*. Cambridge, 1994. 154–214.
Endicott-West, Elizabeth. "Imperial Governance in Yuan Times," *HJAS*, 46 (1986), 523–49.
Endicott-West, Elizabeth. "Merchant Associations in Yuan China: The *Ortogh*," *Asia Major*, n.s., 2 (1989), 127–54.
Endicott-West, Elizabeth. *Mongolian Rule in China: Local Administration in the Yuan Dynasty*. Cambridge, Mass., 1989.
Fairbank, John King, ed. *The Chinese World Order*. Cambridge, Mass., 1968.
Farquhar, David M. *The Government of China under Mongolian Rule – A Reference Guide*. Stuttgart, 1990.
Fletcher, Joseph F. "The Mongols: Ecological and Social Perspective," *HJAS*, 46 (1986), 11–50.
Fletcher, Joseph F. "Turco-Mongolian Monarchic Tradition in the Ottoman Empire," *Harvard Ukranian Studies*, 3–4 (1979–80), 236–51.
Franke, Herbert. *Geld und Wirtschaft in China unter der mongolen Herrschaft: Beiträge zur wirtschafts geschichte der Yüan Zeit*. Leipzig, 1949.
Franke, Herbert. "Sangha," in Igor de Rachewiltz et al., eds. *In the Service of the Khan. Eminent Personalities of the Early Mongol-Yuan Period*. Wiesbaden, 1993. 558–83.
Franke, Herbert. "Tibetans in Yuan China," in J.D. Langlois, ed. *China under Mongol Rule*. Princeton, 1981. 296–328.
Franke, Herbert. "Women under the Dynasties of Conquest," in L. Lanciotti, ed. *La donna nella Cina imperiale e nella Cina repubblicana*. Florence, 1980. 23–43. Rpt. in Idem, *China under Mongol Rule*. London, 1994. Art. VI.
Geng, Shimin and Jeorge Hamilton. "L'inscription ouïgoure de la stèle commémorative des Iduq Qut de Qočo," *Turcica*, 13 (1981), 10–54.
Grousset, Rene. *The Empire of the Steppes*. Tr. N. Walford. New Brunswick, 1970.
Halperin, Charles J. *Russia and the Golden Horde*. Bloomington, 1987.
Hambis, Louis. *Le Chapitre CVII du Yuan Che*. Leiden, 1945.
Hambis, Louis. *Le Chapitre CVIII du Yuan Che*. Leiden, 1954.

Howorth, Henry H. *History of the Mongols from the Ninth to the Nineteenth Century*. London, 1876. 4 vols.
Hsiao, Ch'i Ch'ing. "Bayan," in Igor de Rachewiltz et al., eds. *In the Service of the Khan. Eminent Personalities of the Early Mongol-Yuan Period*. Wiesbaden, 1993. 564–607.
Hsiao, Ch'i Ch'ing. "Mid-Yuan Politics," in Denis Twitchett and Herbert Franke, eds. *The Cambridge History of China Vol. 6: Alien Regimes and Border States 907–1368*. Cambridge, 1994. 490–560.
Hsiao, Ch'i Ch'ing. *The Military Establishment of the Yuan Dynasty*. Cambridge Mass, 1978.
Hummel, Arthur W., ed. *Eminent Chinese of the Ch'ing Period*. Washington DC, 1943–44. 2 vols.
Jackson, Peter. "Abaqa," *EIr*, I (1985), 61–63.
Jackson, Peter. "Arghun," *EIr*, II (1987), 402–4.
Jackson, Peter. "Chahgatayid Dynasty," *EIr*, V (1992), 343–47.
Jackson, Peter. "The Dissolution of the Mongol Empire," *CAJ*, 22 (1978), 186–244.
Jackson, Peter. "Djamāl Qarshī," *EI2*, Supp. III-IV (1981), 240.
Jagchid, Sechin and C. R. Bawden. "Some Notes on the Horse Policy of the Yuan Dynasty," *CAJ*, 10 (1965), 247–68.
Kato, Kazuhide. "Kebek and Yasawr – The Establishment of the Chaghatai Khanate," *Memoires of the Research Department of the Toyo Bunko*, 49 (1991), 97–118.
Khazanov, Anatoly, M. *Nomads and the Outside World*. Cambridge, 1984.
Khazanov, Anatoly, M. "Characteristic Features of Nomadic Communities in the Euroasian Steppes," in W. Weisslader, ed. *The Nomadic Alternative*. The Hague, 1978. 119–26.
Kotwicz, Wladyslaw. "Les Mongols, promoteurs de l'idee de paix universelle au debut du XIII [*sic*] siecle," *Rocznik Orientalistyczny*, 16 (1950), 428–34.
Krawulsky, Dorothea. *Iran – Das Reich der Ilhane*. Wiesbaden, 1978.
Krawulsky, Dorothea. *Mongolen und Ilkhane – Ideologie und Geschichte*. Beirut, 1989.
Lal, K.S. *History of the Khaljis 1290–1320 A.D.*. 2nd ed. Calcutta, 1967.
Lambton, A.K.S. *Continuity and Change in Medieval Persia*. Cambridge, 1988.
Lane-Poole, Stanley. *Catalogue of Oriental Coins in the British Museum*. London, 1875–90.
Langlois, John D., ed. *China under Mongol Rule*. Princeton, 1981.
Le Strange, Guy. *The Lands of the Eastern Caliphate*. Cambridge, 1953.
Lindner, Rudi P. "What was a Nomadic Tribe?" *Comparative Studies in Society and History*, 24 (1982), 689–711.
Little, D. P. *An Introduction to Mamluk Historiography*. Wiesbaden, 1970.
Lupprian, Karl-Ernest. *Die Beziehungen der Päpste zu islamichen und mongolichen Herrschern im 13. Jahrhundert anhand ihres Briefwechsels*. Vatican City, 1981.
Manz, Beatrice Forbes. *The Rise and Rule of Tamerlane*. Cambridge, 1989.
Martin, H. D. "The Mongol Army," *JRAS*, 1943, 46–85.
Martinez, A. P. "Some Notes on the Il-Xanid Army," *Archivum Eurasiae Medii Aeivi*, 6 (1988), 129–242.

Masaki, Horie. "On the Xuanwei inscriptions and the Xuanwei jun Fortress," in *Papers Contributed to the Symposium for the History of the Yuan Dynasty-Abstracts*. Nanjing, 1986. 68–74.
Morgan, David O. "The Great Yāsā of Chingiz Khān and Mongol Law in the Ilkhanate," *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies*, 49 (1986), 163–76.
Morgan, David O. "The Mongol Armies in Persia," *Der Islam*, 56 (1979), 81–96.
Morgan, David O. "The Mongols in Syria 1260–1300," in P. W. Edbury, ed. *Crusade and Settlement*. Cardif, 1985. 231–35.
Morgan, David O. *The Mongols*. Oxford, 1986.
Morgan, David O. "Rashīd al-Dīn Ṭabīb," *EI2*, VIII (1995), 458–59.
Mostaert, Antoine et Cleaves, Francis Woodman. *Les Lettres de 1289 et 1305 des Ilkhan Arghun et Ölgheitu a Philippe le Bel*. Cambridge, Mass., 1962.
Mote, F.W. "A Note on Traditional Sources for Yuan History," in Denis Twitchett and Herbert Franke, eds. *The Cambridge History of China Vol. 6: Alien Regimes and Border States 907–1368*. Cambridge, 1994. 689–99.
Nivison, D.S. "Aspects of Traditional Chinese Biography," *Journal of Asian Studies*, 21 (1961–62), 457–63.
Olbricht, P. *Das Postwesen in China unter den mongolen Herrschaft im 13. und 14. Jahrhundert*. Wiesbaden, 1954.
Olschki, Leorando. *Marco Polo's Asia*. Berkeley, 1960.
Paul, Jürgen. *The State and the Military – The Samanid Case*. Papers of Inner Asia no. 26. Bloomington, 1994.
Pelliot, Paul. *Notes on Marco Polo*. Paris, 1959–63. 3 vols.
Pelliot, Paul. *Notes sur l'histoire de la Horde d'or*. Paris, 1950.
Pelliot, Paul and Louis Hambis, trs. and eds. *Histoire des Campagnes de Gengis Khan (Cheng-wou Ts'in-tcheng lou)*. Leiden, 1951.
Petech, Luciano. *Central Tibet and the Mongols*. Rome, 1990.
Petech, Luciano. "'P'ags-Pa," in Igor de Rachewiltz et al., eds. *In the Service of the Khan. Eminent Personalities of the Early Mongol-Yuan Period*. Wiesbaden, 1993. 646–54.
Petech, Luciano. "Tibetan Relations with Sung China and with the Mongols," in M. Rossabi, ed. *China Among Equals*. Berkeley, 1983. 173–203.
Petrushevski, I. P. "The Socio-economic Conditions of Iran under the Ilkhans," in J.A. Boyle, ed. *The Cambridge history of Iran. Vol. V*. Cambridge, 1968. 483–537.
Pritsak, Omeljan. "Āl-i Burhān," *Der Islam*, 30 (1952), 82–96.
de Rachewiltz, Igor. "Muqali, Bol, Tas and Antung," *POFEH*, 15 (1977), 45–62. Rpt. in idem et al., eds. *In the Service of the Khan. Eminent Personalities of the Early Mongol-Yuan Period*. Wiesbaden, 1993. 3–12.
de Rachewiltz, Igor. "Qan, Qa'an and the Seal of Güyüg," in K. Sagaster and M. Weiers, eds. *Documenta Barbarorum: Festschrift fur Walter Heissig zum 70 Geburstag*. Wiesbaden, 1983. 272–81.
de Rachewiltz, Igor and May Wang. *Repertory of Proper Names in Yuan Literary Sources*. Taibei, 1988. 3 vols.
de Rachewiltz, Igor. "Some Reflections on Chinggis Qan's Yasa," *East Asian History*, 6 (1993), 91–104.

de Rachewiltz, Igor. "Turks in China under the Mongols," in M. Rossabi, ed. *China Among Equals*. Berkeley, 1983. 281–310.
Ratchnevsky, Paul. *Genghis Khan – His Life and Legacy*. Tr. Th. N. Haining. Oxford, 1991. (Translation of his *Činggis Khan: Sein Leben und Wirken*. Wiesbaden, 1983.)
Reid, Robert W. "Mongolian Weaponry in *The Secret History of the Mongols*," *Mongolian Studies*, 15 (1992), 85–96.
Rossabi, Morris. *Khubilai Khan*. Berkeley, 1988.
Rossabi, Morris. "Khubilai Khan and the Women in his Family," in W. Bauer, ed. *Studia Sino-Mongolica: Festschrift für Herbert Franke*. Wiesbaden, 1979. 153–80.
Rossabi, Morris. "The Muslims in the Early Yuan Dynasty," in J.D. Langlois, ed. *China under Mongol Rule*. Princeton, 1981. 257–95.
Rossabi, Morris. "The Reign of Khubilai Khan," in Denis Twitchett and Herbert Franke, eds. *The Cambridge History of China Vol. 6: Alien Regimes and Border States 907–1368*. Cambridge, 1994. 414–89.
Saunders, J. J. *The History of the Mongol Conquests*. London, 1971.
Schurmann, H. F. *Economic Structure of the Yuan Dynasty*. Cambridge, Mass., 1956.
Schurmann, H. F. "Mongolian Tributary Practices of the 13th Century," *HJAS*, 19 (1956), pp. 304–89.
Shimo, Hirotoshi. "The Qaraunas in the Historical Materials of the Ilkhanate," *Memoirs of the Research Department of the Toyo Bunko*, 35 (1977), 131–81.
Sinor, Denis. "Horse and Pasture in Inner Asian History," *Oriens Extremus*, 19 (1972), 171–84. Rpt. in idem, *Inner Asia and its Contacts with Medieval Europe*. London, 1977. Art. II.
Sinor, Denis. "The Inner Asian Warriors," *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, 101 (1981), 133–44.
Sinor, Denis. "On Mongol Strategy," in Ch'en Chieh-hsien, ed. *Proceedings of the Fourth East-Asian Altaistic Conference*. Tainan, 1975. 238–49. Rpt. in idem *Inner Asia and its Contacts with Medieval Europe*. London, 1977. Art. XVI.
Smith, J.M. "Mongol and Nomadic Taxation," *HJAS*, 30 (1970), 46–85.
Smith, J.M. "Mongol Manpower and Persian Population," *Journal of Economic and Social History of the Orient*, 18 (1975), 271–99.
Spuler, Bartold. *Die Goldene Horde: Die Mongolen in Russland 1223–1502*. Wiesbaden, 1965.
Spuler, Bartold. *History of the Mongols*. London, 1971.
Spuler, Bartold. *Die Mongolen in Iran: Politik, Vervaltung und Kultur der Ilchanzeit 1220–1350*. Berlin, 1968.
Togan, Zeki Validi. "The Composition of the History of the Mongols by Rashīd al-Dīn," *CAJ*, 7 (1962), 60–72.
Twitchett, Denis. "Problems of Chinese Biography," in idem and A.F. Wright, eds. *Confucian Personalities*. Stanford, 1969. 24–42.
Vernadsky, Jeorge. *The Mongols and Russia*. New Haven, 1953.
Wittfogel, Karl A. and Feng Chia-cheng. *History of Chinese society: Liao (907–1125)*. Philadelphia, 1949
Wylie, Turrel V. "The First Mongol Conquest of Tibet Reinterpreted," *HJAS*, 37 (1977), 103–33.

Yang, Lien-sheng. "The Organization of Chinese Official Historiography," in E.G. Pulleyblank and W.G. Baesley, eds. *Historians of China and Japan*. London, 1961. 44–59.

Zambaur, Eduard K.M. von. *Die Münzprägungen des Islams*. Wiesbaden, 1968.

Chinese Studies

Abe, Takeo 安部健夫. *Xi Huihu guo shi de yanjiu* 西回鶻國史的研究 [Studies on the History of the Western Uighurs]. Xinjiang, 1986.

Cai, Meibiao 蔡美彪, ed. *Zhongguo lishi da cidian. Liao Xia Jin Yuan shi.* 中國歷史大詞典 遼夏金元史 [The Complete Historical Dictionary of China, History of the Liao, Xia, Jin and Yuan [Dynasties]]. Shanghai, 1986.

Cang, Xiuliang 倉修良, ed. *Zhongguo shixue mingzhu pingjie* 中國史學名著評介 [Review of Famous Works of Chinese Historiography]. Jinan, 1990. 3 vols.

Chen, Dezhi 陳得芝. "Yuan Lingbei xingsheng jianzhi kao 元嶺北行省建置考 [The Lingbei Province under the Mongol-Yuan rule]," *Yuan shi ji beifang minzu shi yanjiu jikan* 元史及北方民族史研究集刊, 9 (1985), 31–44; 11 (1987), 1–18 ; 12–13 (1990), 1–19.

Han, Rulin. 韓儒林, ed. *Yuan chao shi* 元朝史 [History of the Yuan Dynasty]. Beijing, 1986. 2 vols.

Han, Rulin 韓儒林, ed. *Yuan shi* 元史 [History of the Yuan], in *Zhongguo da baike quanshu; Zhongguo lishi juan* 中國大百科全書，中國歷史卷 [The General Encyclopedia of China, Chinese History section]. Shanghai, 1985.

Gao, Wende and Cai, Zhichun 高文德，蔡志純. *Menggu shixi* 蒙古史系 [Geneaology of the Mongols]. Beijing, 1979.

Kahar Barat and Liu Yingsheng 卡哈兒。把剌提，劉迎勝. "Yiduhu Gaochang wang shixun bei Huihu bei wen zhi jiaokan yu yanjiu, 亦都護高昌世勛碑回鶻語碑文之校勘與研究 [Regarding the Uighur inscription of the stele of the family achievements of the Iduq Qut Gaochang wang]," *Yuanshi ji beifang minzu shi yanjiu jikan* 元史及北方民族史研究集刊, 8 (1984), 57–106.

Liu, Yingsheng 劉迎勝. "Ali Buge zhi luan yu Chahatai hanguo de fazhan 阿里不哥之亂與察哈台汗國的發展 [The Rebellion of Arigh Böke and the developement of the Chagatai [sic] Khanate]," *Xinjiang daxue xuebao 新疆大學學報* 1987, 29–37.

Liu, Yingsheng 劉迎勝. "Lun Talasi huiyi 論塔剌思會議 [on the Talas' *quriltai*]," *Yuan shi lun cong* 元史論叢, 4 (1992), 256–65.

Liu, Yingsheng 劉迎勝. "Shiji's Wokuotai hanguo monian jishi buzheng 史集窩闊台汗國末年記事補正 [Supplements to the History of the late Ögödei *ulus* in the *Jāmi' al-tawārīkh*: a Reconsideration of the Peace Agreement among the Mongol *uluses* and the destruction of the Ögödei *ulus*]," *Yuan shi ji beifang minzu shi yanjiu jikan* 元史及北方民族史研究集刊, 10 (1986), 48–59.

Liu, Yingsheng 劉迎勝. "Yuan chao yu Chahatai hanguo de guanxi, 元朝與察哈台汗國的關系 [The Relationship between Yuan Empire and Caqadai [*sic*] Khanate]," *Yuan shi lun cong* 元史論叢, 3 (1986), 56–81.

Liu, Yingsheng 劉迎勝. "Yuan chu chaoting yu xibei zhuwang guanxi

kaolue 元初朝廷與西北諸王關系考略[An Outline of the Relations between Early Yuan Dynasty and the Princes of the Northwest]," *Zhongguo minzu shi yanjiu* 中國民族史研究, 1987, 118–34.

Liu, Yingsheng 劉迎勝. "Yuan dai Quxian talin kao 元代曲先塔林考 [On Quxian talin [Kucha] in the Yuan Period]," *Zhongya xuekan* 中亞學刊, 1984, 243–52.

Liu, Yingsheng 劉迎勝. "Yuan dai Menggu zhu han de yuehe ji Wokuotai hanguo de miewang 元代蒙古諸汗的約合及窩闊台汗國的滅亡 [The Peace Agreement of the Mongolian Khans in the Yuan Period and the Destruction of the Khanate of Ögödei]," *Xinjiang daxue xuebao* 新疆大學學報 , 1985, 31–43.

Liu, Yingsheng 劉迎勝. "Zhiyuan chu nian de Chahatai han guo 至元初年的察哈台汗國 [The Chaghadai *ulus* in the early years of the *zhiyuan* period]," *Yuan shi ji beifang minzu shi yanjiu jikan* 元史及北方民族史研究集刊, 9 (1985), 45–56.

Muraoka, Rin. 村風倫. "Haidu yu Tuersidan: lun Talasi hulitai dahui 海都與突兒斯坦，論塔剌思忽里台大會 [Qaidu and Turkestan: The *Quriltai* of Talas]," in *Papers Contributed to the Symphosium for the History of the Yuan Dynasty – Abstracts*, Nanjing, 1986. 189–92.

Nanjing Daxue, Lishi xi, Yuan shi yanjiu shibian 南京大學歷史系, 元史研究室編. *Yuan shi lun ji* 元史論集 [Collected essays on Yuan History]. Beijing, 1984.

Ren, Rongkang 任榮康. "Yuan chu de Yuan- Yi lianmeng yu Zhongya jiaotong 元初的元伊聯盟與中亞交通 [The Yuan-Ilkhanate Coalition and the Communication in Central Asia in the Early Yuan Period]," *Zhongya xuekan* 中亞學刊, 1984, 184–93.

Tan, Qixiang 譚其驤, ed. *Zhongguo lishi ditu ji* 中國歷史地圖集 [Historical Atlas of China]. Vol. 7. Shanghai, 1982.

Wang, Deyi 王德毅, et al. *Yuan ren zhuanji ziliao suoyin* 元人傳記資料索引[Index of Biographical Materials on Yuan Figures]. Taibei, 1979–82. 5 vols.

Wang, Puren 王堉仁, et. al. *Meng-Cang minzu guanxi shilue* 蒙藏民族關系史略 [An Outline History of the Relations between the Mongols and Tibet]. Beijing, 1985.

Wang, Shenrong 王慎榮, ed. *Yuanshi tanyuan* 元史探元 [The Sources of the *Yuan shi*]. Changchun, 1991.

Xiao, Gongqin 蕭功秦. "Lun Da Menggu guo de han wei jicheng weiji, 論大蒙古國的汗位繼承危機 [On the Succession Struggles for the Qa'anate in the Mongol state]," *Yuanshi ji beifang minzu shi yanjiu jikan* 元史與北方民族史研究集刊, 5 (1981), 48–59.

Yao, Dali 姚大力. "Nayan zhi luan kao, 乃顏之亂考 [On Nayan's Rebellion]," *Yuan shi ji beifang minzu shi yanjiu jikan* 元史及北方民族史研究集刊, 7 (1983), 74–82.

Yao, Jingan 姚景安. *Yuanshi ren ming suoyin* 元史人名索引 [Index of Proper Names in the *Yuan shi*]. Beijing, 1982.

Zang, Lihe 臧勵龢 comp. *Zhongguo lishi gujin diming da cidian* 中國歷史古今地名大詞典[Dictionary of Historical and Modern Place Names in China]. Hong Kong, 1982.

Zhou, Liangxiao. 周良霄. *Hubilie* 忽必列 (Qubilai). Jilin, 1986.

Zhu, Feng and Wang, Lu 朱風，王路. "Hubilie de dingxin gegu, 忽必列的鼎新革古 (Qubilai's approach of 'Create the New and Reform the Old')," in Lu Minghui 盧明輝, ed. *Menggu zu lishi renwu luji* 蒙古族歷史人物錄集. Beijing, 1981. 57–67.

Index

Abaqa, 26, 27, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 57, 61, 62, 64, 79, 81, 82, 87, 89, 93, 98, 102, 108
Abbasid Khalifate, 17
Abū Bakr, 98
Abū Ghāzī, 81
Abū Saᶜīd, 62
Afganistan, 45, 58
Aḥmad (s. of Büri, Chaghadaid prince), 31
Ajiqi (Chaghadaid prince), 42, 43, 49
Alans, 49, 155n.109
Alghu, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 29, 32, 33, 34, 37, 38, 40, 41, 43, 49, 54, 57, 63, 73, 76, 93, 97, 98, 101, 102, 107, 108, 110
ᶜAlī Oghul, 93
ᶜAlī (Ögödeid prince), 93
ᶜAlī Qocha (Ögödeid prince), 93
Almaliq, 20, 22, 23, 37, 38, 41, 54, 56, 77, 91, 99, 100, 101, 104, 110
Altai, 9, 23, 34, 47, 48, 51, 52, 54, 56, 73, 74, 75, 76,
An Tong, 39, 40, 41, 63, 64, 95, 96
Ananda (Qubilai's grandson), 49, 71, 86
anda, 26
Andijān, 101, 104, 105
Antioch, 62
aqa, 8, 12, 13, 73, 79
Arigh Böke, 18, 21 22, 23, 37, 38, 41, 46, 47, 48, 50, 66, 71, 82, 88, 97
  and Qaidu, 21, 22, 37, 56, 107, 111–112
  struggle with Qubilai, 18, 21, 23, 107, 112
Arghun, 57, 58, 65
Arghun Aqa, 30, 57
Arulad (tribe), 20, 81, 83
*Asaqtu ridge, 48
Awsh, 101
*Ayachi (s. of Qubilai), 43

Baba (Mongol prince), 43, 66, 75, 77, 84, 87, 173n.186
Badakhshān, 50, 54, 58, 60, 66, 104, 156n.125
Badghīs, 58
Baidu, 59
Balkh, 57, 60, 173n.186
Balkhash, lake, 34
Baraq, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 38, 40, 41, 57, 59, 61, 62, 63, 79, 81, 82, 83, 84, 86, 87, 89, 93, 95, 97, 101, 102, 108, 109
  administration of, 98–99
  and Qubilai, 24, 25
  and Qaidu, 24–32, 108
Barin, 47, 50, 84
Barthold, 4, 6, 28, 69, 99, 106
Basar (Chagadaid prince), 31
Batu, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 23, 63, 64, 88
Bayan (Qubilai's general), 47, 48, 88, 91

Bayan (ruler of the White Horde), 50, 52, 65, 66
Baybars (Mamluk sultan), 62, 64
Beg Temür (Chaghadaid prince), 26
Bekrin (tribe), 19, 23, 81, 83, 84, 88, 94, 95
Berke, 22, 23, 34, 36, 63, 81, 82, 107, 140n.11
Berkecher (Jochid prince), 25, 26
Besüd (tribe), 83
Besh Baliq, 19, 20, 23, 34, 42, 43, 44, 50, 56, 87
Boqa, 57
border defence, 49–50, 87, 90–92
border warfare, 54, 61, 92, 108, 110, 112
branch secretariat, 10, 11, 12, 13, 16, 17, 136n.57
Brother Benedict, 94
'Bry-Gung sect, 45
Bukhara, 9, 21, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 35, 40, 54, 57, 61, 75, 81, 84, 86, 94, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101–103, 110
Buqa Temür, 33
Burhan family (Āl-i Burhān), 99
Büri (Chaghadaid prince), 12, 15, 31, 77, 93
Buzma (Chaghadaid prince), 43, 82

Caizhou, 22
Caucasus, 13
Central Asia, 1, 3, 4, 6, 7, 15, 21, 22, 23, 28, 32, 33, 37, 42, 43, 44, 45, 48, 54, 57, 60, 61, 62, 66, 67, 69, 72, 73, 74, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 84, 91, 92, 93, 96, 99, 103, 104, 105–106, 107, 109, 110, 111, 112, 132n.11
Chabat (Ögödeid prince), 30, 31, 32, 81, 83, 147n.115
Chaghadai, 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 21, 23, 24, 34, 97
Chaghadaids, the house of
  Chaghadai, 1, 6, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 23, 25, 26, 27, 31, 32, 33, 34, 38, 40, 41, 58, 60, 61, 67, 69, 72, 73, 74, 75, 77, 79, 80, 93, 98, 107, 108, 109, 110, 112, 166n.12, 171–72n.159
Chaghadaid Khanate, 3, 112
Chaghadaid *ulus*, 16, 21, 23, 24, 32, 33, 35, 36, 70, 72, 79, 93
Chaghāniyān, 24
Chapar, 60, 63, 64, 66, 70, 71, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 82, 85, 86, 92, 94, 96, 97, 98
  surrender to the Yuan, 77–78
Cherchen, 42, 104
China, 3, 4, 5, 6, 10, 11, 15, 16, 17, 22, 23, 24, 25, 28, 38, 41, 42, 43, 53, 54, 56, 57, 59, 61, 62, 65, 69, 72, 73, 78, 81, 87, 89, 91, 92, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 110, 111
Chinggis, Chinggis Khan, 1, 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 19, 21, 25, 26, 30, 34, 35, 45, 46, 52, 55, 72, 73, 79, 81, 82, 83, 84, 86, 89, 96, 135n.47, 135n.51
*Chong 'ur, 49, 51, 52
Christians, 94, 95, 154n.88
Chu (river), 97
Chübei (Chaghadaid prince), 43, 49, 147n.122

Dadu (Beijing, Khan Baliq), 28, 34, 38, 48, 78, 104
Daifu, 26, 98
Dali, 17
Damascus, 62
Dānishmand, 81
Dardess, 6, 29, 43, 105
Darkhān, 101
darughachi, shaḥna, 98
Datong, 42
Delhi, Sultanate of, 60, 90 *see also* India.
*Dorduka, 48, 50, 82
Du'a, 33, 34, 41, 43, 44, 45, 47, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 57, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 79, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 88, 89, 90, 92, 93, 94, 96, 97, 101, 103, 104, 105, 109, 148n.125

and the peace with the Yuan, 72–74, 79

Ebügen (Mongol prince), 59, 93
Egypt, 3, 23, 63, 104
Emil, 20, 38, 70, 77, 97, 140n.12
Esen Buqa (Chaghadaid prince), 60
Europe, 13, 57, 104

Farghāna, 83, 99, 104, 173n.186
Fārs, 60, 61
Fushang, 59, 84, 85, 89, 90, 93

Gansu, 42, 44
Gansu corridor, 38, 43, 44
Gao Zhiyao, 27, 144n.80
Georgia, 140n.11, 146n.101
Ghazan, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 65, 69, 95, 105, 111
Ghazna, 34, 58
Ghaznīn, 60
Golden Horde, 9, 16, 17, 21, 25, 26, 29, 30, 35, 40, 46, 57, 60, 61, 62, 63–67, 73, 81, 84, 85, 104, 107, 108, 140n.11, 175n.231, 175n.232 *see also* Jochids.
Great Khan, *see* Qa'an.
Güyüg, 11, 12, 13, 14, 16, 19, 30, 35, 36, 38, 43, 70, 77, 79, 82, 83, 86, 97, 109, 112

Hami, 44, 94
Harawī, 30, 59, 85, 88, 89, 93
Henan, 78
Herat, 31, 32, 58, 59, 79, 84, 87, 89, 98, 108
Herat, the battle of, 31–32, 84, 87, 89, 108, 146n.105
Het'um, 55, 62, 85, 86, 92
Hexi, 19, 38, 42, 49, 139n.3 *see also* Tanguts
hizārah, 26, 83, 84, 98, 143n.67
Hoqu (s. of Güyüg), 38, 39, 43, 70, 77, 82, 112
Hormuz, 60
horses, shortage of, 91–92
Hülegü, 16, 17, 23, 45, 54, 82, 107
Hirgis Nuur, 47

Iduq qut (title of the Uighur ruler), 43
Ili (river), 13, 20, 22, 97
Ilkhanate, 4, 47, 50, 80 *see also* Iran, Persia
Ilkhans, 2, 30, 46, 52, 55, 57–63, 64, 65, 67, 72, 73, 82, 84, 85, 87, 106, 108, 110, 111
India, 34, 72 *see also* Delhi, Sultanate of
Iran, 2, 4, 10, 15, 16, 17, 30, 58, 60, 61, 62, 63, 102, 105, 107 *see also* Ilkhanate, Persia
Irtish (river), 9, 20, 34, 47, 50, 53, 56, 74, 76
Islam
  and the Chaghadaids, 77, 93–94, 96, 171–72n.159
  and Nauruz, 57–58
  and Qaidu, 1, 93–95
  and Qubilai, 95, 172n.175

Jabkan (river), 48, 52
Jagchid and Bawden, 92
Jalayir (tribe), 83
Jalayirtai (Baraq's general), 30, 31
Jand, 34, 64, 104, 105
Jangqi, 44, 75, 83
Japan, 49, 56
Jasagh (*Yasa*), 4, 9, 14, 35, 96, 138n.87, 173n.191, 173n.193
Jawharī, 3
Jaxartes, 23, 24, 25, 65
Jin, dynasty, 11
Jingzhou, 78
Jochi, 8, 9, 12, 23, 64
Jochids, 12, 14, 16, 52, 63–67 *see also* Golden Horde.
Jochi Qasar, the house of, 43, 59, 66, 75, 77, 82, 83, 108, 166n.13
John of Monte Carvino, 103
Jungaria, 9, 15
Jurjān, 59
Juwaynī, 4, 13, 14, 20

Kaifeng, 22
Kammala, 46, 47, 49, 51, 52
Kanjak, 101
karkhanah, 26, 143n.68

Kashgar, 3, 34, 38, 44, 94, 98, 99, 100, 101, 103, 104, 105
Kebei, 47
Kebek (Chaghadaid khan), 77, 99, 101, 106, 174n.203, 176n.240
Khamana, 102
khāṣṣa, 83
Khazanov, 100
Khaznadār, wadi, 62
Khojand, 25, 32, 75, 99, 101, 103
Khotan, 25, 34, 38, 42, 43, 44, 87, 93, 99, 100, 103, 104
Khurāsān, 27, 29, 30, 33, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 71, 74, 88, 101
Khusraw Dihlawī, 93
Khwārizm, 66
*Kingshu (Ilkhanid prince), 58
Kirmān, 60, 61
Köchü (s. of Ögödei), 11
Kököchü (s. of Qubilai), 40, 49, 51
Könchek (Chaghadaid khan), 77, 93
Kopal, 20
Körguz Küregen, 49, 51
Köten (s. of Ögödei), 11, 16, 20, 45, 137n.69, 138n.85, 147n.115
Krawulsky, 134–35n.47
Kuch Temür (Ögödeid prince), 173n.186
Kucha, 50
Küilük (Jochid prince), 65
Kuobielie, 52
Küresbe (Ögödeid prince), 93
Kusūi, 59, 84, 85, 89, 90, 93

Li Ting, 91
Liaodong, 46
Liaoyang, 46 *see also* Manchuria.
Lingbei, 76
Liu En, 43
Liu Yingsheng, 6
Lop, 42, 104

Maḥmūd Yalavāch, 97
Malik Naṣīr al-Dīn Kashgarī, 44, 100
Mamluks, 3, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 71, 104
Manchuria, 45, 46, 47 *see also* Liaoyang.
Marghinān, 101
Martinez, 87
Marv, 57, 60
Mashhad, 58
Mas^{c}ūd Beg, 22, 26, 29, 30, 32, 84, 89, 94, 97, 98, 100, 101, 102, 103, 105
Māzandarān, 30, 59, 61, 88
Melik (s. of Ögödei), 19, 20, 138n.85
Melik Temür (s. of Arigh Böke), 41, 44, 47, 48, 66, 71, 76, 79, 82, 83, 85, 88, 91, 94
Merkid (tribe), 8, 83
Ming, dynasty, 5, 6
Mīrkhwānd, 4, 22, 51, 52, 53, 54, 69, 92, 94
Mobei (north of the desert), 37
Moghultai, 25
Möngetü (Ögödeid prince), 20
Möngke, 1, 7, 14, 15, 16, 17, 19, 20, 21, 24, 27, 35, 37, 40, 56, 95, 98, 100, 107, 108, 109
Möngke Temür, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 40, 62, 63, 64, 66, 81, 88
Mongol Empire, 1, 3, 7, 8, 12, 17, 28, 34, 36, 55, 67, 100, 107, 110, 111
  collegial character of, 7, 11, 12, 17
  regional administration of, 10, 12, 17
Mongolia, 9, 12, 13, 15, 21, 28, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 54, 69, 74, 76, 78, 86, 88, 90, 104
Mongols
  native religion of, 92–93
  peace between Mongol states, 27, 60, 62, 66, 71–73
Morgan, 99
Mubārak Shāh (Chaghadaid khan), 16, 23, 24, 32, 93
Mubārak Shāh (Ögödeid prince), 93
Muḥammad (Ögödeid prince), 93

Naiman (tribe), 83
Nangiyadai, 49
Naqu (s. of Güyüg), 13, 15
Nanjing, province of, 22, 37
naphta, 84, 86
Nauruz, 49, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 82, 88, 89, 93

Nayan, 45, 46, 47, 48, 55, 79, 84, 85, 112, 154n.88, 154n.94, 168n.48
Negübei, 31, 33, 39, 147–48n.123
Nīshāpūr, 57, 58
Nomads
  under Qaidu, 56, 61, 95–97, 105–106, 111
nomadic values, 2, 6, 105–106, 111
nomadic warfare, 87–92, 110
Nomuqan, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 54, 63, 64, 65, 91, 110
Noqai (Jochid prince), 64, 65, 66
al-Nuwayrī, 39, 63

Ögödei, 1, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 19, 20, 27, 32, 34, 35, 36, 45, 55, 56, 57, 81, 86, 93, 96, 97, 107, 108, 109, 112, 134–135n.47, 135n.53
Ögödeid *ulus*, 6, 28, 35, 36, 37, 56, 79, 107–110
  purges under Möngke, 15–16
Ögödeids, the house of Ögödei, 1, 9, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 20, 23, 24, 27, 29, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 38, 39, 55, 56, 58, 61, 72, 73, 74, 77, 78, 79, 82, 83, 93, 107, 108, 109, 110, 112, 137n.69, 166n.10
Oghul Qaimish (Güyüg's wife), 13, 14, 15
Öljei Temür (Ögödeid prince), 78
Öljeitu, 60, 62, 66, 71, 72, 74, 79, 83
Olqunu'ud (tribe), 83
Onon-Kerulen region, 13
Orda (s. of Jochi), 64
Orghina, 16, 22, 23, 24, 93, 95
ortogh (ally), 31
Orus (s. of Qaidu), 69, 70, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79
Oxus, 9, 23, 24, 26, 30, 34, 54 ,58, 59, 73, 74, 83, 173n.186

Panjab, 57, 58
Pelliot, 40
Persia, 3, 72, 95, 106, 111 *see also* Iran, Ilkhanate.
Phags Pa, 45
Philippe IV, king of France, 71
Plano Carpini, 86, 88
Polo, Marco, 4, 6, 39, 46, 55, 56, 84, 85, 87, 94, 103
Pope Nicholas IV, 95
psychological warfare, 89, 91
Pūlād, 101

Qa'an, Great Khan, 1, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 14, 15, 20, 21, 22, 27, 28, 29, 31, 32, 35, 36, 37, 39, 40, 49, 54, 55, 56, 60, 62, 65, 66, 67, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 82, 85, 87, 88, 89, 90, 96, 99, 100, 107, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 131n.1, 163n.49
Qaban (Chaghadaid prince), 147n.122
Qachi'un (Chinggis's brother), 46
Qadan (s. of Qachi'un), 46
Qadan (s. of Ögödei), 19, 20, 23, 58, 93, 112, 138n.85
Qaidu
  administration of, 29, 32, 95–106, 111
  and Arigh Böke, 18, 21–22, 37, 56, 107, 111–112
  and Baraq, 24–32, 108
  and the Chaghadaids, 21–23, 24–33, 72, 79–80, 109–110, 112
  and the Golden Horde, 22, 25, 29–30, 63–67, 145n.94
  and the Ilkhans, 31, 35, 57–63, 110–111
  and Islam, 1, 93–95
  and the Mamluks, 62–63
  and Möngke, 16, 19, 20
  and the Ögödeid cause, 1, 15, 16, 35–36, 55–56, 107–109, 112
  and the Qa'anate, 2, 28, 29, 32, 35–36, 37, 39, 40, 48–49, 55–56, 108–109
  and Qubilai, 1, 18, 22, 26, 29, 33, 35, 37–49, 54–56, 107,108, 110–111
  and religion, 92–95
  and the sedentary population, 29, 32, 95, 97–106, 111

and taxation, 98, 100
and trade, 57, 64, 67, 103–105, 110, 177n.273
army of, 81–92
childhood, 19
in the research literature, 2
personal details, 1–2
sources for his study, 3–6
Qaishan, (Wuzong), 51, 52, 53, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 89
qalan, 100
Qalawun, 62
Qanghai mountains, 47, 48
Qangli, 91
Qara Hülegü (Chaghadaid Khan), 12, 13, 16, 22, 24, 93, 138n.85
Qara Khitai, 84, 99, 175n.238
*Qara Qada, 53
Qara Qocho, 34, 42, 43, 44, 49, 50 ,85, 86, 89, 90, 100, 104, 151–153n.65
Qara Qorum, 11, 19, 22, 28, 34, 40, 46, 47, 48, 49, 52, 54, 56, 71, 76, 90, 104, 107, 108, 136n.66
Qarachar (s. of Ögödei), 20
Qarakhanids, 99
Qara'unas, 58, 60, 72, 74, 82
Qari Sairam, 34
Qarluqs, 91
Qarshī, 3, 19, 24, 32, 34, 35, 55, 64, 69, 70, 85, 94, 98, 99, 100, 103, 104, 108
Qāshānī, 4, 36, 69, 70, 71, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 83, 85, 94, 96
Qashi (Qaidu's father), 19, 139n.4
Qatagïn (tribe), 83
Qatwān, 26
Qayaliq, 20, 22, 94, 95, 140n.11, 155n.116, 157n.145
Qi Gongzhi, 42, 44
Qipchaq (Ögödeid prince), 23, 25, 30, 31, 81
Qipchaq steppe, 11, 23
Qipchaqs, 91
Qing, dynasty, 5, 6
Qobdo, 51
Qoja (s. of Güyüg), 13
Qongqotan (tribe), 83
*Qonichi (Qubilai's general), 25
Qonichi (ruler of the White Horde), 65, 161n.246
*Qongqor Temür (Toluid prince), 41
Qorulat/s (tribe), 83
*Qorqatu, 51
Qubilai, 1, 2, 16, 17, 18, 20, 21, 23, 24, 27, 28, 30, 31, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 57, 65, 73, 75, 79, 82, 85, 87, 91, 97, 104, 105, 106, 109, 112
and Baraq, 24, 25
and the Golden Horde, 29–30, 63, 64, 65
and the Ilkhans, 31
and Islam, 95, 172n.175
and Qaidu, 1, 18, 22, 26, 29, 33, 35, 37–49, 54–56, 107, 108, 110–111
struggle with Arigh Böke, 18, 21, 23, 107, 112
Quladai (Ögödeid prince), 78
quriltai, 7,8, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 21, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 32, 35, 61, 63, 66, 74, 75, 77, 81, 86, 95, 96, 99, 102, 108
Qutlugh Qocha (Chaghadaid prince), 45, 60, 62, 74, 85
Qutulun, 2, 61, 70, 76
Qutuchin, 2
Quyās, 77

Rabban Sauma, 33, 38, 95, 97
Raḥba, 62, 69
Rashīd al-Dīn, 4, 6, 9, 10, 11, 12, 19, 20, 21, 22, 24, 25, 27, 30, 31, 32, 35, 40, 41, 43, 44, 45, 46, 49, 50, 51, 52, 54, 55, 57, 64, 65, 69, 70, 81, 82, 83, 86, 88, 93, 96, 100, 107
regional khan(s), 8, 10, 16, 17, 27, 109
Rin Chen, 45
Rubruck, *see* William of Rubruck
Rūm, 62
Runing, 78

Sa Skya sect, 45
ṣadr, ṣadrate, 94, 99

salary, among Mongol troops, 96
Samarkand, 9, 21, 25, 26, 27, 30, 75, 77, 86, 94, 99, 101, 104, 105, 173n.186
Sāmjan, 102
Sarban (s. of Qaidu), 58, 59, 60, 62, 74, 79, 82, 173n.186
Sarban (Chaghadaid prince), 33
Sarban (Toluid prince), 40
*Satilmish Beg, 98
scouts, 88–89
Sebkine (Qaidu's mother), 19
Secret History, 14, 86
sedentarization, 2, 105–106, 111
Semirechye, 101, 102
*Sevinch, 98
Shaanxi, 44
Shabūrghān, 57, 60
Shāh (s. of Qaidu), 66, 75, 77
shaḥna, see *darughachi*
Shams al-Dīn Kart, 98
Shangdu, 22, 28, 34
Shanxi, 42
Shāsh, 75, 99, 101
Shazhou (Dunhuang), 38
Shi Tianlin, 20, 95
Shiban, 39
*Shinqan (Toluid prince), 41, 82
Shiregi (s. of Möngke), 40, 41, 50
Shiremün (Ögödei's grandson), 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 137n.69
siege tactic, 89–90
silk road, 104
sinicization, 27–28, 40
sira ordo, 97
Sīstān, 60
Sögedu (Toluid prince), 40
Song, dynasty, 17, 21, 41, 42
Sorghaghtani Beki (Tolui's wife), 11, 13, 14, 15
Su Tianjue, 87
Succession
among the Mongols, 8, 17, 23
Succession struggles, 34
among the Great Khans, 10, 12–14, 17
among Toluids and Ögödeids, 10, 14–15, 134–35n.47, 137n.69, 138n.84, 138n.87, 138–39n.90
among the Ilkhans, 61
among Qaidu's sons, 69–70, 77–78
among the Chaghadaids, 24, 33, 77, 93
Süldüs (tribe), 83
Sulṭāniyya, 104
Syria, 17, 62, 63, 69

Taihe range, 42
Talas, 23, 25, 26, 27, 28, 32, 33, 34, 38, 70, 75, 81, 86, 95, 96, 97, 99, 101, 104, 105
Talas' *quriltai* (1269), 26–29, 32, 37, 61, 63, 66, 81, 86, 95, 96, 99, 102, 108
Taliqu (Chaghadaid khan), 77, 93
tamma system, 7, 8, 16
Tanguts, 19, 20, 86 *see also* Hexi
Taraghai, 85, 90
Tarim basin, 9, 34, 38, 42, 44, 50, 103
Tarmashirin (Chaghadaid Khan), 63, 93, 96
Tegüder (Chaghadaid prince), 16, 30, 79, 146n.101
Temüge Odchigin (Chinggis's younger brother), 10, 12, 45, 135n.50, 135n.51
Temür, Temür Öljeitu (Chengzong), 1, 49, 50, 51, 52, 54, 56, 64, 66, 71, 74, 75, 76, 79, 86
Temür Buqa (Toluid prince), 45
Temür Lang, 78, 99
Tibet, 20, 45
Tiejiangu mountain, 52, 53
Tirmidh, 24, 177n.274
Tolui, 8, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 27, 35, 37, 134–35n.47, 135n.51, 135n.53
Toluids, House of Tolui, 1, 4, 13, 14, 15, 16, 19, 56, 61, 82, 107, 108, 109, 110
Toqto'a, 64, 65, 66, 71
Töregena (Ögödei's wife), 11, 12, 19, 97
Totaq (Ögödeid prince), 20
trade, 57, 64, 67, 101, 103–105, 110, 177n.273

Transoxania, 9, 16, 21, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 32, 33, 34, 40, 54, 58, 59, 61, 63, 66, 81, 82, 94, 97, 99, 102, 103
Tu Ji, 5, 6
Tübshin (Abaqa's brother), 30
Tugh Temür (Toluid prince), 39, 40
Tugh Temür (Wenzong, Yuan emperor), 78
Tügme (Ögödeid prince), 43, 70, 77
tümen (military unit), 41, 49, 53, 74, 76, 83, 84, 85, 99
tümen (administrative unit), 99–100, 102, 106, 168n.64
tun tian (military-agricultural colonies), 42, 90
*Tuq Tuqa, 47, 48, 49, 91
Turkestan, 9, 10, 16, 17, 21, 22, 28, 31, 34, 45, 54, 55, 61, 71, 74, 78, 86, 93, 94, 97, 102
Tūs, 58

Uighuria, 9, 19, 23, 42, 43, 44, 54, 57, 73, 86, 94, 97, 101, 151–153n.65
Uighurtai, 59, 88
Ulugh Tao, 65
Ulus Buqa (Toluid prince), 41, 50, 51
ᶜUmar Qocha (s. of Qaidu), 93
al-ᶜUmarī, 24, 63, 85, 86, 93, 96, 103, 104
Ürük Temür (Ögödeid prince), 58, 59, 82, 93, 95
Üs Temür, 48
Utrār, 99, 101
Üzgand, 99

Waṣṣāf, 4, 24, 26, 30, 32, 35, 40, 52, 53, 54, 55, 58, 64, 69, 70, 71, 72, 75, 76, 83, 85, 93, 98, 99, 100, 102, 103
waqf, 1299's document, 84, 94, 99, 102–103
weapons, 86–87
wenji, 87
White Horde, 34, 50, 55, 63, 64–66, 73, 82, 90, 104, 161n.246
William of Rubruck, 20, 95, 138–39n.90
Wuertu, 53

Xin Yuan shi, 6, 52
Xu Ting, 19

Yan Fu, 20
*Yangichar (s. of Qaidu), 66, 77, 78
Yao Sui, 86
*Yaqudu, 43, 47, 88
Yarkand, 38, 94, 103
Yasa'ur (Chaghadaid prince), 57, 58, 75, 173n.186
Yelu Chucai, 135n.53, 136n.59, 141n.21
Yenisei, 40, 47, 48, 49, 50, 86, 88
Yesü Möngke (Chaghadaid Khan), 13, 15
*Yochicar, 53, 71
*Yomuqur (s. of Arigh Böke), 41, 47, 48, 50, 51, 82, 88
Yuan, dynasty, 3, 4, 5, 6, 33, 34, 37–57, 59, 62, 64, 65, 67, 69, 71, 73, 74, 75, 76, 78, 79, 80, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 90, 91, 92, 103, 105, 108, 109, 110, 111, 165n.92
Yuan shi, 4, 5, 6, 10, 11, 21, 24, 27, 28, 29, 33, 38, 39, 40, 41, 44, 47, 48, 49, 52, 53, 54, 55, 57, 64, 65, 69, 71, 74, 76, 78, 85, 86, 87, 88, 90, 92, 95, 96